



T5 HEV 使用手册

T5 HEV User Manual

中英
Chinese/English

尊敬的用户：

Dear users,

祝贺您拥有一辆风行T5HEV汽车，感谢您对东风风行品牌的信任。本手册介绍了风行T5HEV汽车的安全驾驶、设备操作和车辆保养方面的信息，这些信息将帮助您正确地使用车辆，使您真正感受到风行T5HEV汽车带给您的驾乘乐趣。

Congratulations on you having Forthing T5HEV, and thanks for your trust in Dongfeng Forthing. The Manual introduces Forthing T5HEV in terms of drive safety, equipment operation and vehicle maintenance. Such information will help you use the vehicle correctly, so that you can really experience the driving pleasure from Forthing T5HEV.

本手册的目录和车辆图解可方便您快速地了解您的车辆。后面的十一个章节的内容详细介绍了车辆各项设施的使用方法。在使用车辆之前，请仔细阅读随车资料，这些资料所提供的信息对保障行车和财产的安全十分重要，请您严格遵守并妥善地保管。

The catalogue and illustrations of vehicle given in the Manual can facilitate you to understand your car quickly. The following eleven chapters describe in detail how to use each facility of the vehicle. Before using the vehicle, please carefully read these documentations delivered with the vehicle. Since information provided in these documentations are very important for guaranteeing the drive and property safety, please strictly observe and properly keep these documentations.

在阅读本手册时，您会发现里面标有“注意”、“警告”等标记及其说明。这些说明有助于保障人身、车辆以及财产的安全，请严格遵守。

When reading the Manual, you will find that there are signs such as "Caution" and "Warning" and their instructions. These instructions are helpful to ensure the safety of people, vehicles and property. Please strictly follow them.

本手册的图形及文字仅用于传递车辆主要功能和设施的使用信息，不能作为产品验收的依据。与实车不符之处，请以实车为准。

Pictures and texts in the Manual are only for the purpose of transmitting use information of main functions and facilities of the vehicle, instead of serving as the basis for the product acceptance. In case of any discrepancy with the real vehicle, the real vehicle shall prevail.

版权说明：本手册中的内容及技术规格在出版时是有效的，但是东风柳州汽车有限公司保留在任何时候不事先通知的情况下更改技术规格和设计的权利。

Copyright note: Content and technical specifications in the Manual were effective at the time of publication, but Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right to change the technical specification and design at any time without advance notice.

技术更新说明：车联网、电子技术产品更新较快，为保证用户体验，请及时升级。

Technical update instructions: IoV and electronic technology products are updated quickly. Please upgrade them in time to ensure user experience.

您如果需要查询有关风行T5HEV汽车的信息，欢迎登录我们的互联网站：

If you want to know more about Forthing T5HEV, welcome to our website:

<http://www.Forthing.com.cn>（官方网站）

<http://www.Forthing.com.cn> (official website)

祝您一路顺风！

Safe Journey!

01

02

03

04

05

06

07

08

09

10

东风柳州汽车有限公司

Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd.

二〇二三年二月

February 2023

版权所有。如未经东风柳州汽车有限公司书面同意，不得转载或复印本手册的任何内容。

All rights reserved. Without the written consent of Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd., any content of the Manual shall not be reproduced or copied.

注：本手册封面及图片仅供参考，具体以实车为准。

Note: The cover and pictures of the Manual are for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

配置说明 Description of Configuration

* 星号

* Asterisk

在标题或名称后出现的星号“*”，表明所描述的装置或功能只在某些车型中配备，您购买的车辆不一定配备。

Asterisk “*” following the title or name indicates that the device or function described is provided only for some models, and may or may not be equipped in your vehicle.

安全说明

Safety instructions

安全标牌 -- 贴于车上。

Safety mark — stuck to the vehicle.

安全提示 -- 标有危险警告符号以及“危险”、“警告”或“注意”三种字样，这些字样的意义是：

 危险

Safety tips — Hazard warning mark and words such as "Danger", "Warning" or "Caution". The meanings of these words are as follows:

 Danger

用于指示可能将造成人身重大伤亡的危险。

It is used to indicate the danger that may cause serious personal injury or death.

 警告

 Warning

用于指示可能造成人身伤害或者其他损坏的危险。

It is used to indicate the danger that may cause personal injury or other damage.

 注意

 Attention

用于指示可能造成轻微人身伤害或车辆损伤的危险。

It is used to indicate the danger that may cause minor personal injury or vehicle injury.

总目录 ▶

Table of Contents ▶

车辆图解索引	5
Vehicle Illustrated Index	5
安全与保护	11
Safety and Protection	11
组合仪表	38
Combination Instrument	38
基本功能操作	55
Operation of Basic Functions	55
影音娱乐系统	108
Entertainment System	108
便利性装置	139
Convenience Device	139
舒适驾驶	149
Comfortable Driving	149
保养与维护	213
Service and Maintenance	213
应急自助处理	238
Emergency self-service treatment	238
车辆规格	268
Vehicle Specifications	268

01

02

03

04

05

06

07

08

09

10

车外 6

Exterior 6

车辆前部 6

Front of Vehicle 6

车辆后部 7

Rear of Vehicle 7

车内 8

Interior 8

车内顶部 8

Interior Roof 8

仪表台 8

Dashboard 8

副仪表台 10

Auxiliary Instrument Panel 10

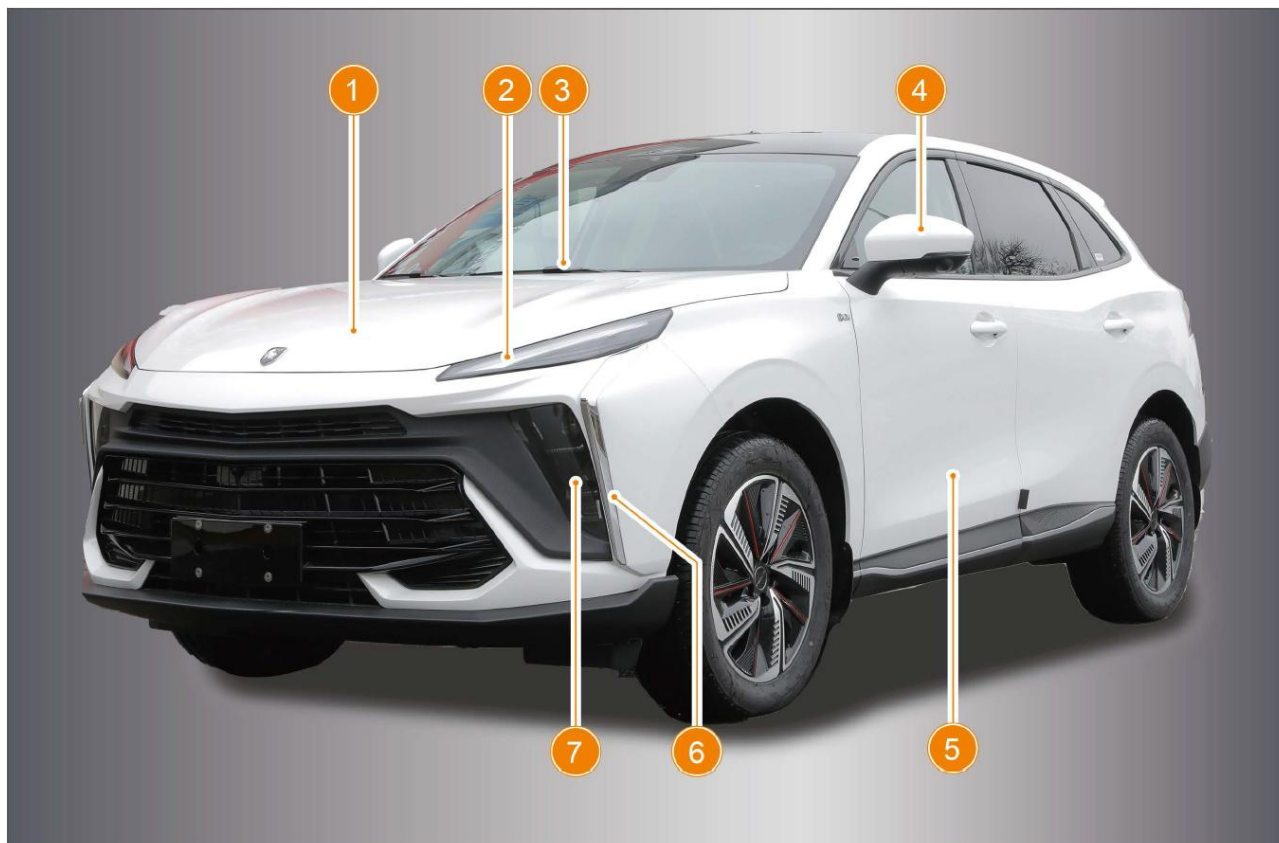
车外

01

Exterior

车辆前部

Front of Vehicle



- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. 发动机舱盖 | 5. 车门 |
| 1. to the engine compartment cover | 5. Doors |
| 2. 前转向灯 / 日行灯 / 位置灯 | 6. 日间行车灯 |
| 2. Front turn signal lamp/daytime running lamp/position lamp | 6. Daytime running lamp |
| 3. 前雨刮 | 7. 近 / 远光灯 |
| 3. Front wiper | 7. Low-beam/high-beam lamp |
| 4. 外后视镜 | |
| 4. Exterior rear-view mirror | |

车辆后部

Rear of Vehicle

01



1. 后背门
1. Trunk lid
2. 后雨刮
2. Rear wiper
3. 高位制动灯
3. High-mounted brake lamp
4. 位置灯
4. Position lamp
5. 转向灯 / 制动灯
5. Turn signal/brake light

6. 加油口盖
6. Fuel filler cap
7. 回复反射器
7. Retro-reflector
8. 倒车灯
8. Reversing lamp
9. 牌照灯
9. License plate light
10. 后雾灯
10. Rear fog lamp

车内

01

Interior

车内顶部

Interior Roof



1. 左侧遮阳板

1. Left sun visor

2. 前排室内灯

2. Front interior lamp

3. 遮阳帘控制按键

3. Sunshade control button

4. 内后视镜

4. Interior rearview mirror

5. 右侧遮阳板

5. Right sun visor

仪表台

Dashboard



1. 主驾侧车窗开关

1. Driver side window switch

8. 显示屏

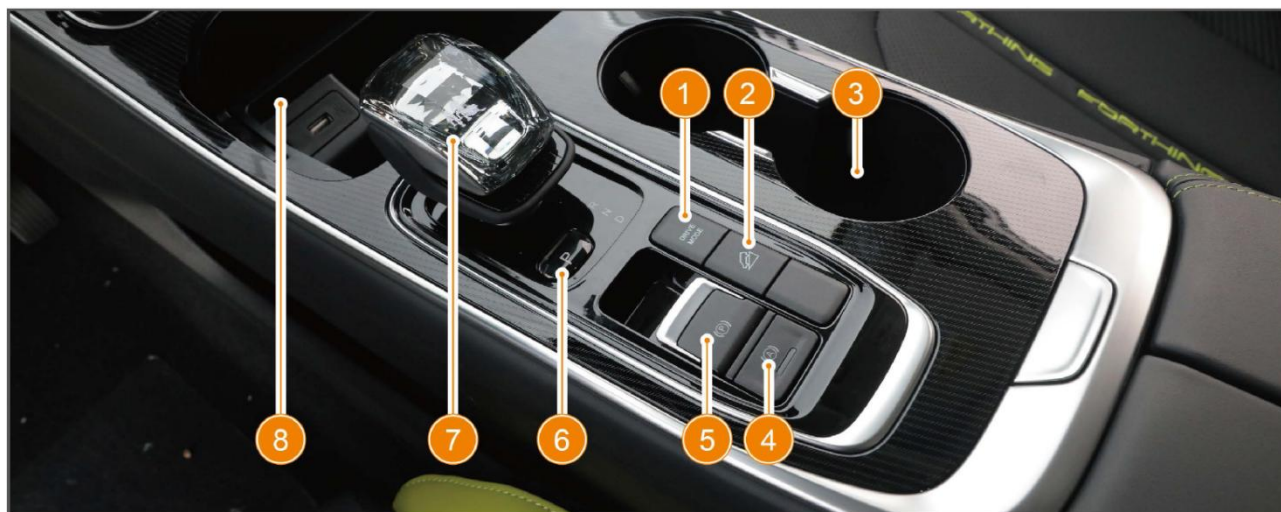
8. Display

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. 中控按键 | 9. 手机支架接口 |
| 2. Central control buttons | 9. Mobile phone bracket interface |
| 3. 仪表台开关组 | 10. 危险警告灯开关 |
| 3. Dashboard switch set | 10. Hazard warning lamp switch |
| 4. 灯光控制手柄 | 11. 空调控制面板 |
| 4. Light control handle | 11. A/C control panel |
| 5. 方向盘 | 12. 手套箱 |
| 5. Steering wheel | 12. Glove box |
| 6. 组合仪表 | 13. 副驾驶车窗开关 |
| 6. Combination instrument | 13. Front passenger window switch |
| 7. 雨刮控制手柄 | |
| 7. Wiper control handle | |

副仪表台

Auxiliary Instrument Panel

01



- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. 驾驶模式按键 | 5. 驻车制动器（EPB）开关 |
| 1. Driving mode button | 5. EPB switch |
| 2. 陡坡缓降（HDC）开关 | 6. P档按键 |
| 2. HDC button | 6. "P" gear button |
| 3. 前排乘客杯架 | 7. 换挡杆 |
| 3. Front passenger cup holder | 7. Shift lever |
| 4. 自动驻车（AUTO HOLD）开关 | 8. 副仪表台上部储物格 |
| 4. AUTO HOLD switch | 8. Upper storage compartment of auxiliary instrument panel |

座椅安全带 13

Seat Belt 13

座椅安全带注意事项 13

Precautions on Seat Belt Using 13

正确使用座椅安全带 14

Correct Use of Seat Belts 14

系紧和松开座椅安全带 15

Fasten and Release the Seat Belt 15

座椅安全带肩带高度调节 15

Seat Belt Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment
..... 15

座椅安全带预张紧器 16

Seat belt pretensioner 16

座椅安全带未系报警 16

Seat belt warning 16

座椅安全带卷收器 16

Seat Belt Retractor 16

安全气囊 17

Airbag 17

安全气囊使用注意事项 17

Precautions for Airbag Application 17

安全气囊的位置及展开 18

Position and Deployment of Airbag 18

前排安全气囊的展开条件 19

Deployment Condition of Front Airbag ... 19

前排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊展开条件 * 19

Deployment Conditions of Front Side Airbag and Side Curtain Airbag * 19

前排安全气囊可能展开（充气）的情形（除碰撞外） 19

Possible deployment (inflation) of front airbag (except collision) 19

前排安全气囊可能不展开的几类碰撞 .. 20

Undeployment Condition of Front Airbag under Several Types of Collisions 20

前排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊可能不展开的几类碰撞 * 21

Several Collisions in Which Front Side Airbags and Side Curtain Airbags May Not Deploy * 21

事件数据记录系统（EDR） 22

Event Data Recorder System (EDR) 22

儿童保护措施 30

Child Protection Measures 30

儿童乘坐安全说明 30

Safety Instructions for Children 30

婴儿的保护措施 31

Baby Restraints 31

幼龄儿童的保护措施 31

Safeguard Procedures for Young Child... 31

大龄儿童的保护措施 31

Safeguard Procedures for Older Children 31

儿童保护装置（用户自备） 31

Child Restraint System (Provided by the User).....	31
儿童座椅适用性	32
Applicability of Child Seat	32
后向式儿童保护装置的安装	34
Installation of Rear-facing Child Restraints	34
前向式儿童保护装置的安装	35
Installation of Forward-facing Child Restraints	35
辅助坐垫的安装	35
Installation of Auxiliary Seat Cushion	35
ISOFIX接口的安装	36
Installation of ISOFIX Interface	36

座椅安全带

Seat Belt

座椅安全带注意事项

Precautions on Seat Belt Using

在驾驶车辆前，请务必阅读本章内容，这将有助于您熟悉车辆安全带的正确操作方法，安全地驾驶车辆。

Before driving the vehicle, be sure to read this chapter, which will help you get familiar with the correct operation method of the vehicle seat belt and drive the vehicle safely.



- 每位乘客在乘坐车辆时都应正确的佩戴座椅安全带。只有正确佩戴座椅安全带，安全气囊才能发挥保护作用，在意外事故中最大限度的保护驾乘人员的安全。
- Each passenger shall wear the seat belt correctly when taking a ride in the vehicle. Only when the seat belt is worn correctly can the airbag play a protective role and protect the safety of the driver and passengers to the greatest extent in an accident.
- 当车辆遇到意外情况紧急制动时，座椅安全带会将驾乘人员束缚在座椅上，防止身体前冲，从而保护驾乘人员免受二次冲撞。
- In case of emergency braking in case of an accident, the seat belt will tie the driver and passengers to the seats to prevent the body from rushing forward, thus protecting the driver and passengers from secondary collision.
- 当座椅上放置了儿童安全座椅或当前座位上的乘客不适合佩戴座椅安全带时，只需要将该座椅安全带保持正常回收状态即可。
- When a child safety seat is placed on the seat or the passenger on the current seat is not suitable to wear the seat belt, it is only necessary to keep the seat belt in a normal retracted state.



- 务必正确佩戴座椅安全带，请勿将座椅安全



带横穿下腹部，否则在发生事故时，座椅安全带会强烈地压向下腹部，增加受伤风险。

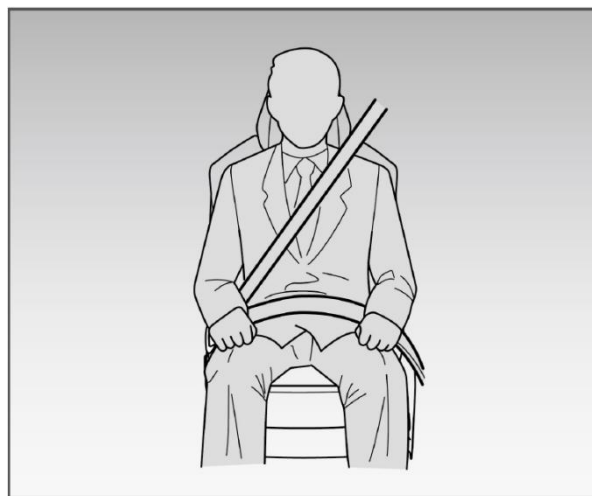
- Be sure to wear the seat belt correctly. Do not cross the seat belt across the lower abdomen. Otherwise, the seat belt will strongly press the lower abdomen in case of an accident, increasing the risk of injury.
- 肩部座椅安全带要调整到最适合自身的位置，请勿将肩部座椅安全带置于手臂下方。应尽量拉紧座椅安全带，否则会降低功效，增加受伤风险。
- The shoulder seat belt shall be adjusted to the most suitable position. Do not place the shoulder seat belt under the arm. Tighten the seat belt as much as possible, otherwise it will reduce the efficacy and increase the risk of injury.
- 孕妇也应像其他乘客一样，将座椅安全带尽可能低地横跨于髋部，肩部座椅安全带沿肩部完全斜向拉伸，并避免座椅安全带触及隆起的腹部。如果未正确系好座椅安全带，在紧急制动或发生碰撞时，可能导致孕妇和胎儿受到伤害。
- Pregnant women should also, like other passengers, place the seat belt across the hip as low as possible, with the shoulder seat belt fully stretched obliquely along the shoulder, and avoid the seat belt touching the raised abdomen. If the seat belt is not fastened correctly, the pregnant woman and the fetus may be injured in case of emergency braking or collision.

**警告****Warning**

- 务必正确佩戴座椅安全带，请勿将座椅安全带横穿下腹部，否则在发生事故时，座椅安全带会强烈地压向下腹部，增加受伤风险。
- Be sure to wear the seat belt correctly. Do not cross the seat belt across the lower abdomen. Otherwise, the seat belt will strongly press the lower abdomen in case of an accident, increasing the risk of injury.
- 肩部座椅安全带要调整到最适合自身的位置，请勿将肩部座椅安全带置于手臂下方。应尽量拉紧座椅安全带，否则会降低功效，增加受伤风险。
- The shoulder seat belt shall be adjusted to the most suitable position. Do not place the shoulder seat belt under the arm. Tighten the seat belt as much as possible, otherwise it will reduce the efficacy and increase the risk of injury.
- 孕妇也应像其他乘客一样，将座椅安全带尽可能低地横跨于髋部，肩部座椅安全带沿肩部完全斜向拉伸，并避免座椅安全带触及隆起的腹部。如果未正确系好座椅安全带，在紧急制动或发生碰撞时，可能导致孕妇和胎儿受到伤害。
- Pregnant women should also, like other passengers, place the seat belt across the hip as low as possible, with the shoulder seat belt fully stretched obliquely along the shoulder, and avoid the seat belt touching the raised abdomen. If the seat belt is not fastened correctly, the pregnant woman and the fetus may be injured in case of emergency braking or collision.
- 儿童乘坐车辆时，一定要使用合适的保护装置，并且禁止让儿童坐在前排座椅上。
- When a child rides in the vehicle, be sure to use a suitable protective device and do not let the child sit on the front seat.
- 每位乘客只允许使用一条座椅安全带。请勿将婴儿或者儿童抱在怀里，然后绕过他们系上座椅安全带，这会导致乘客在事故中受到严重伤害。
- Only one seat belt is allowed for each passenger. Do not hold infants or children in arms, and then bypass them to fasten the seat belt, which will cause serious injury to passengers in an accident.

正确使用座椅安全带

Correct Use of Seat Belts



1. 拉伸肩部座椅安全带，将其斜跨整个肩部，但不要触及颈部或从肩部滑脱。
1. Pull out the shoulder belt diagonally across the entire shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the shoulder.
2. 腰部座椅安全带应尽可能低地横跨于髋部。
2. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips.
3. 调节座椅靠背的位置，使靠背处于相对舒适的位置。
3. Adjust the position of the seat backrest to make it in a relatively comfortable position.
4. 请勿扭曲座椅安全带。
4. Do not twist the seat belt.

系紧和松开座椅安全带

Fasten and Release the Seat Belt



1. 从收缩装置中拉出座椅安全带并将锁舌插入锁扣，直至听到“咔嗒”声，说明座椅安全带已锁紧。

1. Pull out the seat belt from the retractor and insert the tongue into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard, indicating that the seat belt is locked.

2. 如需解开座椅安全带，按下锁扣上的释放按钮即可。

2. To release the seat belt, press the release button on the buckle.

座椅安全带肩带高度调节

Seat Belt Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment



1. 按压座椅安全带肩带高度调节器上部，将其上下移动到所需位置后松开直至听到“咔嗒”声。

1. Press the upper part of the seat belt

shoulder belt height adjuster, move it up and down to the desired position, and then release it until a "click" sound is heard.

2. 在不按压的情况下试着下移调节器，确定其已锁定到位。

2. Try to move the adjuster down without pressing to make sure it is locked in place.

座椅安全带预张紧器

Seat belt pretensioner

车辆受到某些严重的正面或侧面碰撞时，座椅安全带预张紧器会自动收紧，从而快速保护驾驶员及乘客。

When the vehicle suffers from some serious frontal or side collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will automatically tighten to quickly protect the driver and passengers.



注意



Attention

在发生轻微的正面碰撞、侧面碰撞、后面碰撞或翻车时，预张紧器可能不会被激活。

The pretensioner may not be activated in the event of a minor frontal, side, rear or rollover collision.

座椅安全带未系报警

Seat belt warning

车辆配有安全带未系警告灯。当检测到车内驾乘人员安全带未系时，组合仪表上对应警告灯点亮，同时蜂鸣器会持续报警直至车内驾乘人员系好座椅安全带。。

The vehicle is equipped with an unfastened seat belt warning lamp. When it is detected that the driver's seat belt in the vehicle is not fastened, the corresponding warning light on the combination instrument will illuminate, and the buzzer will continue to alarm until the driver and passengers in the vehicle fasten the seat belt. .

座椅安全带卷收器

Seat Belt Retractor

每个座椅安全带均配有一个安全带卷收器。正常驾驶时，卷收器使座椅安全带保持一定的拉力，驾乘人员仍然可在座椅上自由活动。而在遇到紧急事故时，卷收器便会自动收紧，将驾乘人员的身体固定在座椅上，避免受到伤害。如发现卷收器锁止功能异常，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

Each seat belt is equipped with a seat belt retractor. During normal driving, the retractor keeps the seat belt at a certain tension, and the driver and passengers can still move freely on the seat. In case of an emergency, the retractor will automatically tighten to fix the driver's body on the seat to avoid

injury. In case of abnormal locking function of the retractor, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.



警告



Warning

用户不得自行维修、调节和拆装座椅安全带及卷收器，如需维修或更换请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Users are not allowed to repair, adjust, disassemble and assemble the seat belt and retractor by themselves. If maintenance or replacement is required, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

安全气囊

Airbag

当车辆发生正面或侧面碰撞的程度达到安全气囊展开要求时，安全气囊会充气张开，减轻乘客头部及胸部受到的撞击伤害。

When the degree of frontal or side collision of the vehicle meets the deployment requirements of the airbag, the airbag will be inflated and deployed to reduce the impact injury to the passenger's head and chest.

安全气囊使用注意事项

Precautions for Airbag Application



1. 右侧遮阳板上有安全气囊警告标识。请勿在受安全气囊保护（激活状态下）的座椅上放置后向儿童安全座椅，否则在发生碰撞事故时，充气中的正面安全气囊会以巨大的冲力撞击儿童使其受到严重伤害。

1. There is an airbag warning sign on the right sun visor. Do not place a rear-facing child safety seat on the seat protected by the airbag (activated). Otherwise, the inflated frontal airbag will impact the child with great force and cause serious injury in case of a collision accident.

2. 请勿将任何物品放置在仪表台或粘贴在方向盘装饰盖等位置，因为安全气囊展开时，这些物品可能会被弹出导致驾乘人员伤亡。

2. Do not place any object on the dashboard or paste it on the steering wheel trim cover or other positions, because these objects may be ejected when the airbag deploys, resulting in casualties of the driver and passengers.

3. 请勿在衣帽挂钩上悬挂衣架或其他坚硬物体。侧面帘式安全气囊展开时，这些物品可能

会弹出并导致乘客伤亡。

3. Do not hang hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. When the side curtain airbag deploys, these items may eject and cause casualties to passengers.

4. 安全气囊展开后温度很高，请勿立即触摸任何相关部件。

4. The temperature is very high after the airbag is deployed. Do not touch any relevant components immediately.

5. 安全气囊展开时，会伴随较大的响声，可能会暂时影响听力。

5. When the airbag deploys, it will be accompanied by a loud noise, which may temporarily affect hearing.

6. 如果安全气囊展开后感觉呼吸困难，请打开车门或车窗通风或在确保安全的情况下离开车辆，并应尽快冲洗身上的残留物，以免刺激皮肤。

6. If the airbag feels difficult to breathe after deployment, please open the door or window for ventilation or leave the vehicle under the condition of ensuring safety, and flush the residue on the body as soon as possible to avoid skin irritation.

7. 如果安全气囊所在部位已损坏或破裂，请联系东风风行特约服务站进行更换。

7. If the airbag is damaged or broken, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for replacement.

安全气囊的位置及展开

Position and Deployment of Airbag

前排安全气囊

Front airbags



1. 驾驶员侧安全气囊

1. Driver side airbag

2. 副驾驶员侧安全气囊

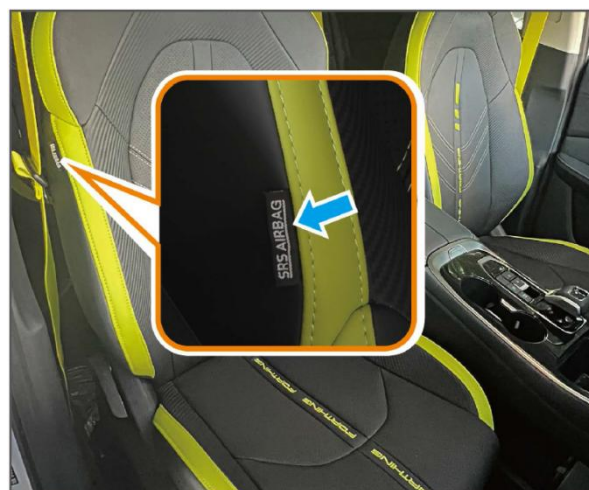
2. Front passenger airbag

前排安全气囊有助于保护驾驶员和前排乘客的头部及胸部免受车内部件的撞击。

The front airbag helps to protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from the impact of interior components.

前排侧气囊

Front-row side airbag



前排侧气囊有助于保护驾驶员和前排乘客的躯干部位免受车内部件的撞击。

The front side airbag helps to protect the driver and front passenger torso from the impact of interior components.

侧面帘式安全气囊 *

Side Curtain Airbag*



侧面帘式安全气囊安装在车内左右两侧的车门上方，其上标有“SRS AIRBAG”字样。侧面帘式安全气囊有助于保护驾驶员、前排乘客和后排外侧乘客的头部。

The side curtain airbags are mounted above the vehicle doors on the left and the right sides, where the signs of “AIRBAG” are marked. The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver, the front passenger and the rear outboard passenger.



警告



Warning

由于前排侧气囊和侧面帘式安全气囊展开时具有相当大的速度和力量，因此车辆在行驶时，禁止将头部靠近侧气囊和侧气帘的展开区域，否则可能会受到人身伤害。

As the front side airbags and side curtain airbags have considerable speed and force when deployed, do not place your head close to the deployment area of the side airbags and side curtain airbags when the vehicle is running; otherwise, you may be injured.

前排安全气囊的展开条件

Deployment Condition of Front Airbag

前排安全气囊在车辆以25km/h及以上车速与实心墙发生正面碰撞时展开。

The front airbags are deployed when the vehicle collides with a solid wall at a speed of 25 km/h or more.

前排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊展开条件

*

Deployment Conditions of Front Side Airbag and Side Curtain Airbag *

当车辆发生中度至重度的侧面碰撞，且达到设计的作用值时，前排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊可以展开。

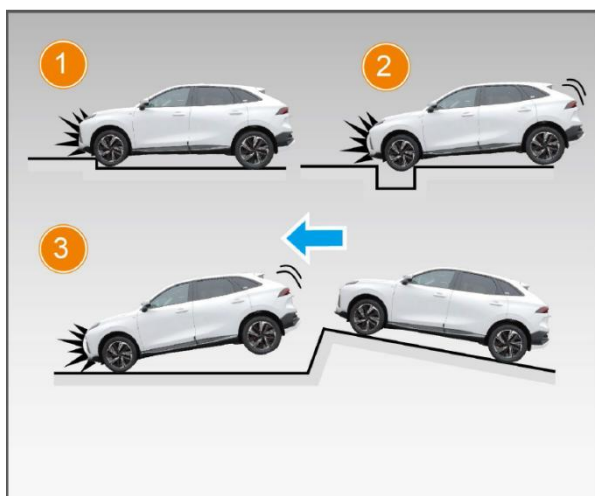
When the vehicle has a moderate to severe side collision and reaches the designed action value, the front side airbags and side curtain airbags can be deployed.

前排安全气囊可能展开（充气）的情形（除碰撞外）

Possible deployment (inflation) of front airbag (except collision)

如果车辆底部遭受严重撞击，前排安全气囊也可能展开。图中列举了一些示例。

The front airbag may deploy if the vehicle bottom is impacted seriously. Some examples are shown in the figure.



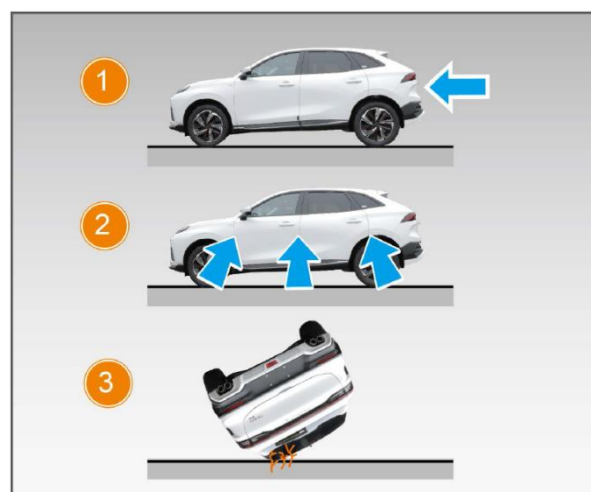
1. 撞到路缘、人行道边缘或坚硬表面
1. Hit a curb, sidewalk edge or hard surface
2. 掉入或跨越深坑
2. Fall into or drive over a deep pit
3. 车轮硬着地或车辆跌落
3. Wheel hard landing or vehicle fall

前排安全气囊可能不展开的几类碰撞

Undeployment Condition of Front Airbag under Several Types of Collisions

如果车辆遭受侧面碰撞、后面碰撞、翻车或低速正面碰撞，前排安全气囊一般不会展开。但是，不管何种类型的碰撞，只要让车辆产生足够的前向减速度，前排安全气囊就可能展开。

If the vehicle suffers from side collision, rear collision, rollover or low-speed frontal collision, the front airbags will generally not deploy. However, regardless of the type of collision, the front airbag may deploy as long as the vehicle generates sufficient forward deceleration.



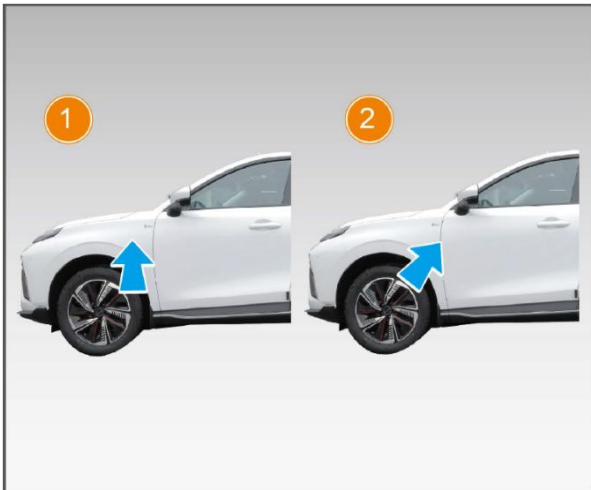
1. 后面碰撞
1. Rear impact
2. 侧面碰撞
2. Side collision
3. 翻车
3. Overturning

前排侧气囊及侧面帘式安全气囊可能不展开的几类碰撞 *

Several Collisions in Which Front Side Airbags and Side Curtain Airbags May Not Deploy *

如果车辆遭受的侧面碰撞与车身成一定夹角，或遭受侧面碰撞的车身部位并非乘客车厢，则前排侧气囊和侧面帘式安全气囊可能不会展开。

The front side airbags and side curtain airbags may not deploy if the vehicle suffers a side collision at an angle to the vehicle body, or if the vehicle body suffers a side collision in a part other than the passenger compartment.



1. 非乘客车厢的车身侧面碰撞

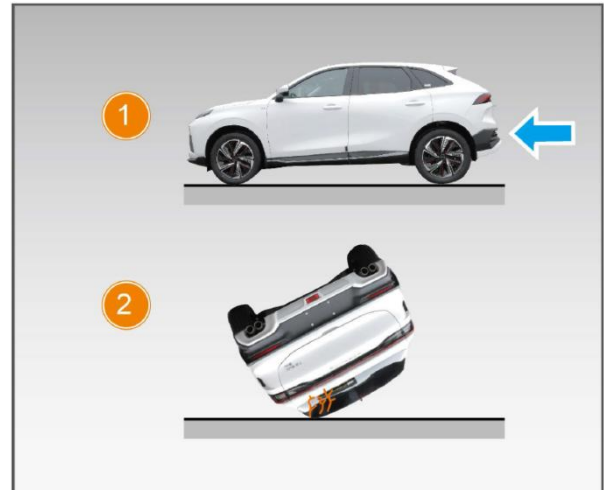
1. Vehicle body side (not passenger compartment) collision

2. 与车身成一定角度的侧面碰撞

2. Side collision at a certain angle with the vehicle body

如果车辆遭受后面碰撞、翻车、低速侧方碰撞或低速正面碰撞，则前排侧气囊和侧面帘式安全气囊可能不会展开。

If the vehicle suffers a rear collision, rollover, low-speed side collision or low-speed frontal collision, the front side airbags and side curtain airbags may not deploy.



1. 后面碰撞

1. Rear impact

2. 翻车

2. Overturning

事件数据记录系统（EDR）

Event Data Recorder System (EDR)

本车配备了事件数据记录系统（EDR），所记录数据可用于碰撞事故分析，具体记录参数见下表：

The vehicle is equipped with an event data recording system (EDR), and the recorded data can be used for collision accident analysis. See the following table for specific recorded parameters:

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
1	纵向delta-V Longitudinal delta-V	车辆纵向速度的变化。 It is the change in longitudinal speed of the vehicle.	km/h
2	最大记录纵向delta-V Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	纵向车辆速度累计变化最大值。 Maximum cumulative change in longitudinal vehicle speed.	km/h
3	最大记录纵向delta-V时间 Maximum recorded longitudinal Delta-V time	达到纵向车辆速度累计变化最大值的时间。 The time when the maximum cumulative change in longitudinal vehicle speed is reached.	ms
4	削波标志 Clipping sign	表示EDR采集加速度（横向、纵向）首次达到传感器量程的时间点。 It indicates the time point when the EDR acquisition acceleration (horizontal and longitudinal) reaches the sensor range for the first time.	ms
5	车辆速度 Vehicle speed	轮边线速度。 Wheel-hub linear speed.	km/h

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
6	行车制动，开启或关闭 Service brake, on or off	用来检测驾驶员是否踩下制动踏板。 Used to detect whether the brake pedal is depressed by the driver.	/
7	驾驶员安全带状态 Driver's seat belt state	驾驶员安全带带扣开关的状态。 Fastened or unfastened state of the driver's seat belt buckle.	/
8	加速踏板位置，全开位置百分比 Percentage of actual position of accelerator pedal to its fully-pressed position	加速踏板实际位置与驾驶员全部踩下位置的百分比。 Ratio of the actual position of accelerator pedal to the position of accelerator pedal fully depressed by the driver in percentage.	/
9	每分钟转数 Rotation per minute	车辆发动机主曲轴的分钟转速。 Revolutions per minute of main crankshaft of the vehicle's engine.	r/min
10	事件中上电周期 Power-on cycle during event	从记录EDR数据的ECU首次使用以来，到事件发生时记录EDR数据的ECU动力循环次数。 Number of power cycles of the ECU for recording EDR data from the first service time of the ECU to the event occurrence time.	/

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
11	读取时上电周期 Power-on cycle during data reading	从记录EDR数据的ECU首次使用以来，到读取时记录EDR数据的ECU动力循环次数。 Number of power cycles of the ECU for recording EDR data from the first service time of the ECU to the data reading time.	/
12	事件数据记录完整状态 Integrity state of event data record	事件是否被完整记录。 Whether the event is completely recorded.	/

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
13	本次事件距离上次事件时间间隔 Time interval between current event and previous event	两次事件时间间隔。 Time interval between two events.	s
14	车辆识别代号 Vehicle identification number	车辆VIN码。 Vehicle VIN	/
15	记录EDR数据的ECU硬件编号 Hardware No. of ECU for recording EDR data	EDR装置的硬件编号。 Hardware number of the EDR device.	/
16	记录EDR数据的ECU序列号 Serial number of ECU for recording EDR data	EDR装置的产品序列号。 Product serial number of the EDR device.	/
17	记录EDR数据的ECU软件编号 Software No. of ECU for recording EDR data	EDR装置的软件编号。 Software number of the EDR device.	/
18	纵向加速度 Longitudinal acceleration	车辆上某点的矢量加速度在X轴方向上的分量。 It is the component of vector acceleration at a point on the vehicle in the X-axis direction.	g
19	横向加速度 Horizontal acceleration	车辆上某点的矢量加速度在Y轴方向上的分量。 It is the component of vector acceleration at a point on the vehicle in the Y-axis direction.	g

20	横向delta-V Horizontal delta-V	车辆横向速度的变化。横向delta-V仅为总delta-V在Y轴方向上的分量。 Variation of lateral vehicle speed. Lateral delta-V is only the component of total delta-V in the Y-axis direction.	km/h
21	最大记录横向delta-V Maximum recorded horizontal delta-V	EDR记录Y轴方向车辆速度累计变化的最大值。 Maximum value of cumulative change in the vehicle velocity along Y-axis direction recorded by EDR.	km/h
22	最大记录合量delta-V的平方 Square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	EDR记录的纵向delta-V与横向delta-V的平方和的最大值。 Maximum value of the sum of squares of longitudinal delta-V and lateral delta-V recorded by EDR.	km/h* km/h
23	达到最大记录横向delta-V时间 The time to reach the maximum recorded horizontal delta-V	EDR记录Y轴方向车辆速度累计变化达到最大值所用时间。 EDR records the time taken for the cumulative change of vehicle speed in Y-axis direction to reach the maximum value.	ms

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
24	达到最大记录合量delta-V的平方的时间 The time to reach the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	EDR记录的纵向delta-V与横向delta-V的平方和达到最大值所用时间。 The time taken for the sum of the squares of the longitudinal delta-V and the transverse delta-V recorded by the EDR to reach the maximum value.	ms
25	横摆角速度 Yaw rate	事件前和事件中车辆相对Z轴角度的变化，适用于具有电子稳定控制系统的车辆。 The change of vehicle angle relative to Z-axis before and during the event, which is applicable to vehicles with electronic stability control system.	度 /s Degree/s
26	转向角度 Steering angle	转向盘的角坐标，适用于具备采集转向角度传感器的车辆。 The angular coordinates of the steering wheel are applicable to vehicles equipped with steering angle sensors.	度 Degree

27	Tend	碰撞事件终点，如果直至记录周期的终点，该条件还未满足，Tend可被定义为最后记录的数据点的时刻。 It is the end point of the impact event. If the condition is not met until the end of the recording period, Tend can be defined as the time of the last recorded data point.	ms
28	年 YY	事件发生的年份。 Year of event.	/
29	月 MM	事件发生的月份。 Month of event.	/
30	日 Routine	事件发生的日期。 Date of event.	/
31	时 Hour	事件发生当天的时间。 Time of event.	/
32	分 Minute	事件发生当天的时间。 Time of event.	/
33	秒 Second	事件发生当天的时间。 Time of event.	/
34	档位 Gear position	实际档位，适用于该信号上总线的车辆。 It is the actual gear, which is applicable to the vehicle with this signal transmitted through the Bus.	/
35	发动机节气门位置，全开位置的百分比 Engine throttle position, ratio of this position to full open position in percentage	发动机节流阀开启的百分比。 Opening percentage of engine throttle.	%

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
36	制动踏板位置 Brake pedal position	制动踏板实际位置，适用于具有制动踏板位置传感器的车辆。 Actual position of brake pedal, applicable to vehicles with brake pedal position sensor.	%
37	驻车系统状态 Parking system state	用来探测驻车制动是否激活的状态，适用于驻车系统状态上总线的车辆。 It is used to detect whether the parking brake is activated. It is applicable to vehicles with their parking system states transmitted through the Bus.	/
38	转向信号开关状态 Turn signal switch state	用来表示车辆转向或变换车道意图的开关的状态，适用于转向信号上总线的车辆。 State indicating the turning or lane changing intent of a vehicle, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting the turning signal.	/
39	驾驶员安全带预紧装置展开时间 Deployment time of driver's seat belt pretensioner	从事件起点到驾驶员安全带预紧装置发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the ignition command of the driver's seat belt pretensioner.	ms

40	驾驶员正面气囊展开时间（第一阶段） Driver's front airbag deployment time (first stage)	从事件起点到驾驶员正面气囊第一阶段发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the first stage of the driver frontal airbag issuing the ignition command.	ms
41	驾驶员正面气囊展开时间（第二阶段） Driver's front airbag deployment time (second stage)	从事件起点到驾驶员正面气囊第二阶段发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the second stage of the driver frontal airbag issuing the ignition command.	ms
42	驾驶员侧面气囊展开时间 Deployment time of driver's side airbag	从事件起点到驾驶员侧面气囊发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the driver side airbag.	ms
43	驾驶员侧面气帘展开时间 Deployment time of driver's side curtain airbag	从事件起点到驾驶员侧面气帘装置发出点火指令所用时间。 Time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the driver side curtain airbag device.	ms
44	前排乘客安全带状态 Front passenger seat belt state	前排乘客安全带扣开关的状态，适用于具有安全带提醒装置的车辆。 It is the state of the front passenger seat belt buckle switch, which is applicable to vehicles with seat belt reminders.	/

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
45	前排乘客安全带预紧装置展开时间 Deployment time of front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	从事件起点到前排乘客安全带预紧装置发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the front passenger seat belt pretensioner.	ms
46	前排乘客正面气囊抑制状态 Front passenger's front airbag suppression state	前排乘员正面气囊显示的抑制状态，适用于具有正面气囊抑制开关的车辆。 It is the suppression state displayed by the front passenger front airbag, and the state is applicable to vehicles with a front airbag suppression switch.	/
47	前排乘客正面气囊展开时间（第一阶段） Deployment time of the front passenger's front airbag when a collision event occurs (first stage)	从事件起点到前排乘客正面气囊第一阶段发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the first stage of the ignition command of the front passenger frontal airbag.	ms
48	前排乘客正面气囊展开时间（第二阶段） Front passenger's front airbag deployment time (second stage)	从事件起点到前排乘客正面气囊第二阶段发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the second stage of the ignition command of the front passenger frontal airbag.	ms

49	前排乘客侧面气囊展开时间 Deployment time of front passenger's side airbag	从事件起点到前排乘客侧面气囊发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the front passenger side airbag.	ms
50	前排乘客侧面气帘展开时间 Deployment time of front passenger's side curtain airbag	从事件起点到前排乘客侧面气帘装置发出点火指令所用时间。 The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the front passenger side curtain airbag device.	ms
51	乘员保护系统报警状态 Passenger protection system alarm state	乘员保护系统故障状态，适用于乘员保护系统报警状态上总线的车辆。 It is the fault state of the passenger protection system, which is applicable to vehicles with their passenger protection system alarm states transmitted through the Bus.	/
52	轮胎压力检测系统报警状态 Alarm state of the tyre pressure monitoring system	当车载轮胎压力监测系统监测到一个或多个轮胎胎压低时的报警状态，适用于该报警状态上总线的车辆。 It is the alarm state when the on-board tyre pressure monitoring system detects low pressure of one or more tyres, which is applicable to vehicles with this alarm state transmitted through the Bus.	/

53	制动系统报警 状态 Braking system alarm state	制动系统故障状态，适用于该报警状态上总线的车辆。 It is the fault state of the braking system, which is applicable to vehicles with this alarm state transmitted through the Bus.	/
----	--	---	---

序号 S/N	参数名称 Parameter name	含义 Meaning	单位 Unit
54	定速巡航系统状态 Cruise control system state	定速巡航系统的操作状态。 It is the operating state of cruise control system.	/
55	防抱死系统状态 ABS status	防抱制动系统的操作状态，适用于防抱制动系统状态上总线的车辆。 Operating state of anti-lock brake system, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting the anti-lock brake system state.	/
56	自动紧急制动系统状态 Automatic emergency brake system (AEBS) State	自动紧急制动系统的操作状态。 It is the operating state of the automatic emergency braking system.	/
57	电子稳定性控制系统状态 State of electronic stability control system	电子稳定性控制系统的操作状态。 It is the operating state of the electronic stability control system.	/
58	牵引力控制系统状态 State of traction control system	牵引力控制系统的操作状态。 It is the operating state of the traction control system.	/

59	事件前同步计时时间 Time synchronization before event	T0前最后一个数据采样点到T0的相对时间，适用于具有事件前同步计时功能的车辆。用于不同数据在时间上对齐。 The relative time from the last data sampling point before T0 to T0, which is applicable to vehicles with pre-event synchronization timing function. It is used for time alignment of different data.	ms
----	--	---	----

EDR系统集成于安全气囊控制器中，记录的数据可以通过东风风行特约服务站专用诊断设备提取。

The EDR system is integrated in the airbag controller, and the recorded data can be extracted through the special diagnostic equipment of the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

EDR系统记录的车辆速度来自于本车配备的防抱死制动系统（ABS）的车轮线速度。

The vehicle speed recorded by the EDR system comes from the wheel linear speed of the anti-lock braking system (ABS) equipped on this vehicle.

EDR系统记录的数据分为非锁定事件数据和锁定事件数据。其中，前者为达到EDR记录条件，但未达到安全气囊系统展开条件时记录的数据。后者为达到安全气囊系统展开条件时记录的数据。非锁定事件数据按照时间先后顺序覆盖之前非锁定事件数据；锁定事件数据无法被后续事件的数据覆盖，总共能够记录三次事件数据。

The data recorded by the EDR system is divided into unlocked event data and locked event data. Among them, the former refers to the data recorded when the EDR recording conditions are met but the SIR deployment conditions are not met. The latter is the data recorded when the SIR deployment conditions are met. The unlocked event data overwrites the previous unlocked event data in chronological order; the locked event data cannot be overwritten by the data of subsequent events, and a total of three event data can be recorded.

儿童保护措施

Child Protection Measures

儿童乘坐安全说明

Safety Instructions for Children

儿童乘坐车辆时，请务必阅读本章内容。

Be sure to read this chapter when children ride in the vehicle.

儿童应使用合适的保护装置。

Children should use appropriate protective devices.

儿童因太小不能佩戴座椅安全带时，应将其安置在后排被认可的儿童保护装置中。

If a child is too young to wear the seat belt, he/she shall be placed in a rear approved child restraint system.

大龄儿童必须佩带三点式座椅安全带来加以保护，必要时，还应加装辅助安全坐垫。

Older children must wear a three-point seat belt for protection, and if necessary, an auxiliary safety cushion shall be installed.

建议儿童坐在后排座椅上。行驶过程中，请使用后门儿童安全锁和车窗锁止开关，以防儿童打开车门或意外操作电动车窗。

It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats. During driving, please use the rear door child safety lock and window lock switch to prevent children from opening the door or accidentally operating the power window.

在密闭的车内因为过高的气温而伤亡。

- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle, which may cause casualties due to excessively high temperature in a closed vehicle.



警告

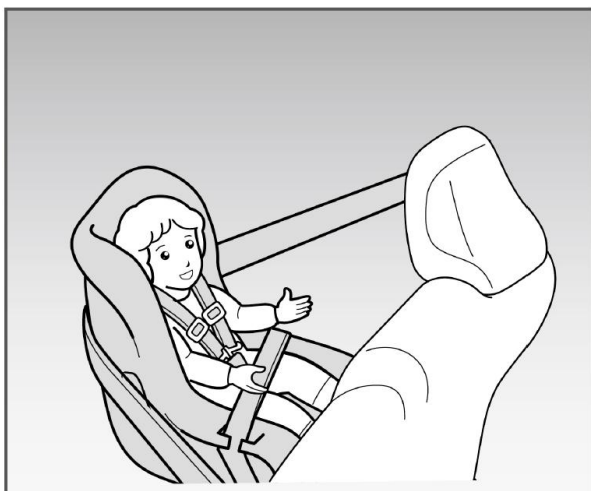


Warning

- 请勿让儿童携带或使用智能钥匙。
- Do not allow children to carry or use the smart key.
- 儿童可能会启动车辆或将换挡杆换至N档。儿童在玩耍车窗、天窗、全景天窗或其他车辆装备时，还可能会伤到自己。
- Children can start the car or put the shift lever in neutral. Children may also hurt themselves when playing with windows, sunroofs, panoramic sunroofs or other vehicle equipment.
- 请勿将儿童单独留在车内，这可能导致儿童

婴儿的保护措施

Baby Restraints



一周岁以下婴儿的颈部非常脆弱，如果面朝前方乘坐，当发生正面碰撞时容易造成颈部伤害，因此建议使用后向式儿童保护装置。

The neck of an infant under one year old is very fragile. If you ride facing forward, it is easy to cause neck injury in case of a frontal collision. Therefore, it is recommended to use a rear-facing child restraint system.

幼龄儿童的保护措施

Safeguard Procedures for Young Child



根据儿童保护装置制造厂家规定的体重和身高要求，一周岁以上的儿童在乘坐时，应使用前向式儿童保护装置。

According to the weight and height requirements specified by the child restraint manufacturer, children over one year old should use forward-facing child restraints when riding.

大龄儿童的保护措施

Safeguard Procedures for Older Children



建议所有12岁以下的儿童乘坐于后排座椅上，并加以保护。如果座椅安全带不合身，可为儿童安装辅助坐垫。

It is recommended that all children under 12 years of age be seated in the rear seat and protected. If the seat belt does not fit properly, an auxiliary seat cushion can be installed for children.

儿童保护装置（用户自备）

Child Restraint System (Provided by the User)

儿童保护装置需要用户自备，请使用符合当地法规标准的儿童保护装置。

The child restraint system needs to be provided by the user. Please use a child restraint system that meets local regulations and standards.

儿童座椅适用性

Applicability of Child Seat

本车除采用三点式安全带为儿童提供保护外，后排座椅还提供两个标准“ISOFIX”接口的儿童约束系统，可根据需要选择合适的儿童约束系统。

In addition to three-point seat belts for child protection, the rear seats are also provided with two child restraint systems with standard "ISOFIX" interfaces, and appropriate child restraint systems can be selected as required.

本车适用的儿童约束系统（CRS）及安装位置如下表。

The child restraint system (CRS) applicable to this vehicle and its installation position are shown in the table below.

质量组 Mass Group	乘坐位置 Seating Position			
	前排乘客 Front passenger	后排左 Rear left	后排右 Rear right	后排中 Rear Middle Seat
0组（小于10KG） Group 0 (less than 10 kg)	X	U	U	X
0+ 组（小于13KG） Group 0+ (less than 13KG)	X	U	U	X
I 组（9KG到18KG） Group I (9KG to 18KG)	X	U	U	X
II 组（15KG到25KG） Group II (15KG to 25KG)	X	U	U	X
III组（22KG到36KG） Group III (22KG to 36KG)	X	U	U	X

上表的关键词含义如下：

The means of the keys in the above table are as follows:

U：适用于获得本质量组认证的通用类儿童约束系统。

U: It is applicable to the general child restraint system certified by the mass group.

X：本座椅位置不适用于本质量组的儿童约束系统。

X: This seat is not suitable for use with child restraint systems in this weight class.

如果采用“ISOFIX”标准的儿童约束系统，该系统与车辆的适应性信息如下表所示。

If the "ISOFIX" child restraint system is adopted, the adaptability information of the system to the vehicle is shown in the table below.

质量组 Mass Group	尺码分类 Size category	固定模块 Fixing Module	车上ISOFIX位置 ISOFIX Position in Vehicle			
			前排乘客 Front passenger	后排左 Rear left	后排右 Rear right	后排中 Rear Middle Seat
手提婴儿床	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X

Carry-cot	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
0组 Group 0	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X	X
0+ 组, 小于 13KG Group 0+ (less than 13 Kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X	X
I 组 Group I	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	X	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	X	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	X	X

上表的关键词含义如下:

The means of the keys in the above table are as follows:

IUF: 适用于获得本质量组认证的前向通用类ISOFIX儿童约束系统。

IUF: The seat is suitable for universal ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.

IL: 适用于特殊的ISOFIX儿童约束系统。这些约束系统可能是特殊车辆类、受限制类或半通用性。

IL: Applicable to special ISOFIX child restraint systems. These restraint systems may be special vehicle, restricted or semi-universal.

X: 该位置不适用于本质量组或尺寸类别的ISOFIX儿童约束系统。

X: This position is not applicable to ISOFIX child restraint systems of this mass group or size category.

A—ISO/F3: 全高度前向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

A—ISO/F3: Full-height forward-facing toddler restraint system.

B—ISO/F2: 降低高度前向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

B—ISO/F2: Reduced-height forward-facing toddler restraint system.

B1—ISO/F2X: 降低高度前向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

B1—ISO/F2X: Reduced-height forward-facing toddler restraint system.

C—ISO/R3: 全高度后向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

C—ISO/R3: Full-height rearward-facing toddler restraint system.

D—ISO/R2: 降低高度后向初学走路儿童用约束系统。

D—ISO/R2: Reduced-height rearward-facing toddler restraint system.

E—ISO/R1: 后向婴儿用约束系统。

E—ISO/R1: Rearward facing infant child restraint system.

F—ISO/L1: 面向左侧位置的儿童约束系统（手提婴儿床）。

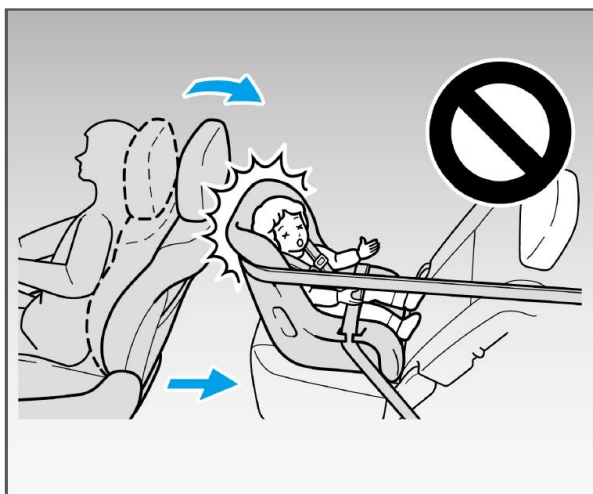
F—ISO/L1: Left lateral facing position child restraint system (carry-cot).

G—ISO/L2: 面向右侧位置的儿童约束系统（手提婴儿床）。

G—ISO/L2: Right lateral facing position child restraint system (carry-cot).

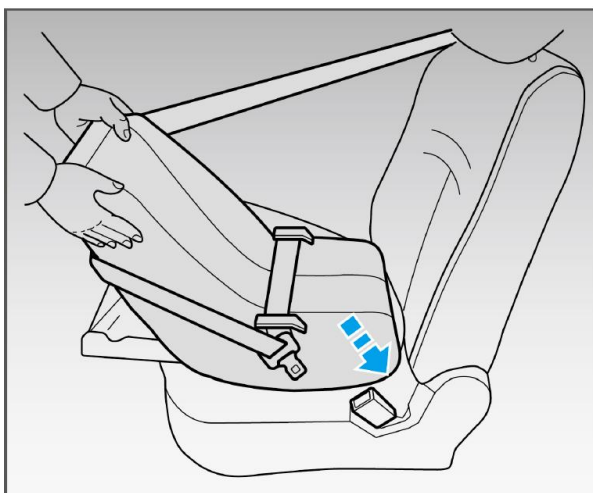
后向式儿童保护装置的安装

Installation of Rear-facing Child Restraints



如果主驾座椅妨碍后向式儿童保护装置的正确安装，则应该将后向式儿童保护装置安装在后排右侧座椅上。

If the rear-facing child restraint system is obstructed by the driver's seat and thus cannot be installed correctly, the rear-facing child restraint system should be installed on the right rear seat.



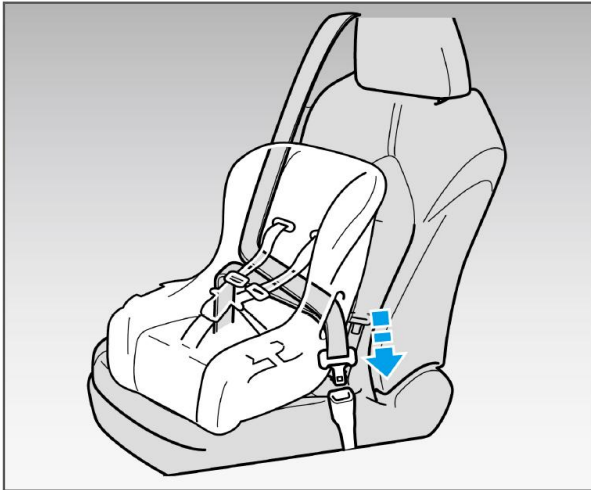
根据制造厂提供的说明，将座椅安全带穿过或绕过后向式儿童保护装置，再把锁舌插入锁扣，确保座椅安全带未扭曲并保持紧绷，确认锁舌和锁扣牢固锁定，左右晃动确保儿童保护装置固定牢靠。

According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through or around the rear-facing child restraint system, and then insert the tongue into the buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not twisted and remains tight. Make sure that the tongue and buckle are firmly locked, and shake left and right to ensure that the child restraint system is

firmly fixed.

前向式儿童保护装置的安装

Installation of Forward-facing Child Restraints



根据制造厂提供的说明，将座椅安全带穿过前向式儿童保护装置并将锁舌插入锁扣，确保安全带未扭曲并保持紧绷。确认锁舌和锁扣牢固锁定，将儿童保护装置向座垫和座位靠背按压，让座椅安全带完全收缩，使儿童保护装置紧紧固定，左右晃动确保儿童保护装置固定牢靠。

According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through the forward-facing child restraint system and insert the tongue into the buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not twisted and remains tight. Confirm that the tongue and buckle are firmly locked, press the child restraint system against the seat cushion and seat backrest to fully retract the seat belt, so that the child restraint system is firmly fixed, and shake it left and right to ensure that the child restraint system is firmly fixed.

辅助坐垫的安装

Installation of Auxiliary Seat Cushion



将辅助坐垫放置在座椅上，让儿童坐在辅助坐垫上，根据制造厂提供的说明，将座椅安全带正确跨过儿童肩部，腰部安全带尽可能低至儿童的臀部位置，再把锁舌插入锁扣，确保安全带未扭曲并保持紧绷。

Place the auxiliary cushion on the seat and let the child sit on the auxiliary cushion. According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, correctly cross the seat belt over the child's shoulder, lower the lap belt as low as possible to the child's hip position, and then insert the latch plate into the buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not twisted and kept tight.

ISOFIX接口的安装

Installation of ISOFIX Interface

标准ISO规格的儿童安全装置可以由ISOFIX接口来固定。在安装和使用时请遵照儿童保护装置制造商的操作说明与安全提示，否则可能影响保护效果。

Child safety devices complying with standard ISO specifications can be fixed by ISOFIX interfaces. Please follow the child restraint system manufacturer's operating instructions and safety tips during installation and use, otherwise the protection effect may be affected.



1. 找到后排座椅座垫与靠背夹缝中的ISOFIX接口位置。

1. Locate the ISOFIX interface in the gap between the rear seat cushion and the backrest.



2. 将儿童安全装置的ISOFIX接口对准座垫底端的对应ISOFIX接口，刚性接口插入即可，弹性接口扣上即可。

2. Align the ISOFIX interface of the child safety device with the corresponding ISOFIX interface at the bottom of the seat cushion, insert the rigid interface and buckle the elastic interface.



3. 抬起头枕至最高位置，直至听到“咔哒”声，确保头枕锁定到位。

3. Lift the headrest to the highest position until a "click" sound is heard, and make sure that the headrest is locked in place.



4. 将儿童安全装置的卡钩从座椅头枕穿过，紧扣到座椅背部的固定锚支座上，并紧固顶部系带，确保扣牢。

4. Pass the hook of the child safety device through the seat headrest, fasten it to the fixed anchor support on the back of the seat, and tighten the top tether to ensure that it is fastened firmly.

警告灯和指示灯	39
---------------	----

Warning Lamp and Indicator	39
----------------------------------	----

警告灯	39
-----------	----

Warning Lamp	39
--------------------	----

指示灯	43
-----------	----

Indicator	43
-----------------	----

组合仪表概览	47
--------------	----

Overview of Combination Instrument	47
--	----

组合仪表控制	49
--------------	----

Combination Instrument Control	49
--------------------------------------	----

行车电脑	49
------------	----

Trip Computer	49
---------------------	----

小计里程	49
------------	----

Trip Mileage	49
--------------------	----

续航里程	50
------------	----

Driving Mileage	50
-----------------------	----

平均油耗	50
------------	----

Average Fuel Consumption	50
--------------------------------	----

平均车速	50
------------	----

Average Vehicle Speed	50
-----------------------------	----

综合信息	51
------------	----

Comprehensive Information	51
---------------------------------	----

车辆信息	51
------------	----

Vehicle Information	51
---------------------------	----

驾驶辅助信息	52
--------------	----

Driving Assist Information	52
----------------------------------	----

报警信息	52
------------	----

Alarm Information	52
-------------------------	----

设置	53
----------	----

Settings	53
----------------	----

疲劳驾驶提醒	54
--------------	----

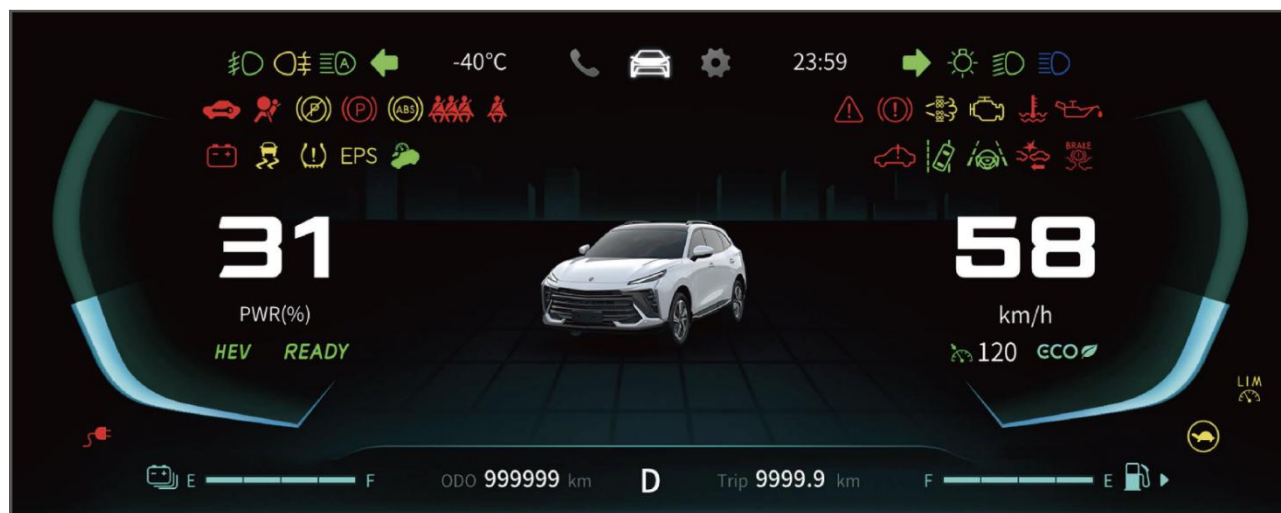
Fatigue driving reminder	54
--------------------------------	----

警告灯和指示灯

Warning Lamp and Indicator

警告灯和指示灯提示驾驶员车辆各系统的状态。

Warning lamps and indicators indicate the state of each system of the driver's vehicle.



03

警告灯

Warning Lamp

警告灯提示驾驶员车辆部分系统可能出现故障。

The warning lamp reminds the driver that some systems of the vehicle may be faulty.

燃油油位低警告灯（黄色）

Low fuel level warning lamp (yellow)

当燃油即将耗尽时，此灯点亮，提示燃油过少，请尽快加注燃油。

When the fuel is about to run out, this indicator will illuminate to indicate that the fuel is too little. Please refuel as soon as possible.

冷却液温度高警告灯（红色）

Warning indicator of high-temperature coolant (red)

发动机冷却液温度过高时，此灯电亮。此时请降低车速并安全的停靠到路边，打开发动机舱盖并停车休息一段时间，待冷却液温度下降后再行驶，行驶过程中车速不要超过40km/h。如果警告灯依然点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

This lamp lights up when the coolant temperature is too high. At this time, please slow down and park the vehicle safely on

the roadside. Open the engine hood and stop the vehicle for a while. After the coolant temperature drops, drive the vehicle at a speed not exceeding 40 km/h. If the warning light is still on, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

变速器系统故障警告灯（黄色）

Transmission system fault warning lamp (yellow)

当变速器有故障时，此灯点亮，此时请重新启动车辆，如果此灯依然点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the transmission is faulty, this indicator will illuminate. In this case, please restart the vehicle. If this indicator is still on, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

胎压系统故障警告灯（黄色）

TPMS fault warning lamp (yellow)

当胎压胎温异常或胎压监测功能出现故障时，此灯点亮。

This indicator will illuminate when the tire pressure and temperature abnormal or the tire pressure monitoring function fails.

1. 如果此灯点亮是因为胎压过高或过低，请及时将轮胎气压调整至标准胎压。如果调整后此灯依然点亮，请及时联系东风风

EPS

EPS

行特约服务站。

1. If this indicator is on because the tire pressure is too high or too low, please adjust the tire pressure to the standard tire pressure in time. If the indicator is still on after adjustment, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

2. 如果此灯点亮是因为胎压系统未匹配或传感器信号丢失, 请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

2. If this indicator illuminates because the tire pressure system does not match or the sensor signal is lost, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

驻车故障警告灯 (黄色)

Parking fault warning lamp (yellow)

当驻车系统存在故障时, 此灯点亮。此时驻车系统仍有驻车能力, 但是无法自动驻车, 请向上拉起EPB开关进行驻车, 并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

When parking system is faulty, the lamp is lit. At this time, the parking system still has the parking ability, but it cannot park automatically. Please pull up the EPB switch to park the vehicle and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

12V低压蓄电池充电 / 故障警告灯 (红色)

12V LV battery charging/fault warning lamp (red)

当启动开关置于“ON”档时, 发动机未运转时, 此灯点亮, 发动机启动后此灯熄灭, 表明充电系统工作正常。

When the Start switch is turned to "ON" position, this indicator will light up when the engine is not running, and will go out after the engine is started, indicating that the charging system works normally.

发动机启动后, 此灯点亮, 表示充电系统工作不正常, 需要修理, 此时应关闭所有不必要的电气附件, 并及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

After the engine is started, if this indicator illuminates, it indicates that the charging system does not work normally and needs to be repaired. At this time, all unnecessary electrical accessories should be turned off and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

转向系统故障警告灯 (黄色)

Steering system fault warning lamp (yellow)

当电动助力转向系统出现故障时, 此灯点亮。如果车辆行驶时此灯点亮, 请及时降低车速并安全地停靠到路边, 关闭电源5分钟后重启车辆, 如果此灯不再点亮, 即可正常行驶, 如果此灯仍然持续点亮, 请尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the electric power steering system is faulty, this indicator will illuminate. If this indicator

illuminates when the vehicle is running, please reduce the speed in time and park the vehicle safely on the roadside. Turn off the power supply and restart the vehicle 5 minutes later. If this indicator no longer illuminates, the vehicle can run normally. If this indicator still illuminates continuously, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

ABS系统故障警告灯（黄色）

ABS system fault warning lamp (yellow)



如果车辆行驶时此灯点亮，说明防抱死制动装置（ABS）出现了故障。此时车辆虽然具有正常的制动能力，但没有防抱死功能，请小心驾驶，并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。



If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle is running, it indicates that the anti-lock brake system (ABS) is faulty. At this time, although the vehicle has normal braking capacity, it does not have anti-lock braking function. Please drive carefully and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

制动液面过低 / 制动系统故障警告灯（红色）

Low brake fluid level / brake system fault warning lamp (red)



当制动液液位下降到低位时，此灯点亮。如果车辆行驶时此灯点亮，可能是制动系统出现了故障，请谨慎驶离道路安全停车，并及时联系东风风行特约服务站。



When the brake fluid level drops to a low level, this indicator will illuminate. If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle is running, the brake system may be faulty. Please drive the vehicle away from the road carefully and stop the vehicle safely, and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

发动机排放故障（MIL）警告灯（黄色）

Engine Emission Fault (MIL) Warning Lamp (Yellow)



当启动开关置于“ON”档时，此灯点亮，车辆启动后，此灯熄灭，属于正常状态。如果此灯持续点亮，说明发动机控制系统可能出现故障，请重新启动车辆并查看该警告灯，如果此灯仍然持续点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。



When the Start switch is turned to "ON" position, this indicator will light up. After the vehicle is started, this indicator will go out, which is a normal state. If this indicator stays on, it indicates that the engine control system may be faulty. Please restart the vehicle and check this warning indicator. If this indicator still stays on, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

安全气囊系统故障警告灯（红色）

Airbag system fault warning light (red)



如果此灯在行驶时持续点亮，说明安全气囊系统存在故障，请联系东风风行特约服务站。



If this indicator stays on during driving, it indicates that the SRS is faulty. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

安全带未系警告灯（红色）

Warning indicator of unfastened seat belt (red)



当启动开关置于“ON”档时，如果驾驶员或前排乘客未系好座椅安全带，则此灯点亮并伴随警报声，当驾驶员或前排乘客全部系上座椅安全带后，此灯熄灭，报警解除。



When the Start switch is turned to "ON" position, if the driver or front passenger fails to fasten the seat belt, this indicator will illuminate and an alarm will sound. When the driver or front passenger fastens all seat belts, this indicator will go out and the alarm will be cleared.

后排安全带未系警告灯（红色）

Warning indicator of unfastened rear seat belt (red)



指示后排安全带未系状态。根据车辆配置不同，该指示灯的表现方式略有不同。



indicates the unfastened state of the rear seat belt. Depending on the vehicle configuration, the indicator will behave slightly differently.



机油压力低警告灯（红色）

Low oil pressure warning light (red)



如果在行驶中此灯持续点亮或者闪烁，说明发动机机油量过少，继续驾驶可能会损坏发动机，请立即安全地停靠路边并及时联系东风风行特约服务站。



If this lamp keeps being on or flashing during driving, it indicates that the engine oil level is too low and the engine may be damaged if you continue driving. Please park the vehicle at the roadside immediately and safely and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

前碰撞预警系统警告灯（红色）*

FCW warning lamp (red)*

当前碰撞预警系统监测到可能会碰撞到前方物体时，会通过声音、画面进行报警提示，此时警告灯闪烁，属于正常状态。

When the front collision warning system detects that it may collide with the object ahead, it will give an alarm through sound and screen. At this time, the warning light flashes, which is in a normal state.

自动紧急制动系统警告灯（红色）*

AEB system warning lamp (red)*

当自动紧急制动系统启动时，会通过声音、画面进行报警提示，此时警告灯会闪烁，属于正常状态。

When the automatic emergency braking system is started, an alarm will be given through sound and screen. At this time, the warning light will flash, which is in a normal state.

主警告灯

Main warning lamp

该警告灯亮起时，可进入组合仪表报警查询界面进行具体故障查询，如进行处理后仍无法解除报警，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the warning light is on, enter the combination instrument alarm query interface for specific fault query. If the alarm still cannot be cleared after handling, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

动力系统故障警告灯

Powertrain fault warning light



当车辆出现动力系统（动力电池、电动

机）故障时，此灯点亮，此时请谨慎驶离道路安全停车，并联系东风风行特约服务站。



When the power system (power battery and motor) of the vehicle fails, this indicator will illuminate. At this time, please drive the vehicle away from the road safely and stop the vehicle, and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

指示灯

Indicator

指示灯用于告知驾驶员车辆各系统的工作状态，点亮或闪烁时多数情况下属于正常状态，车辆并无故障。

The indicator is used to inform the driver of the working state of each system of the vehicle. When it is on or flashing, it is in normal state in most cases, and the vehicle is not faulty.

运动模式指示灯（红色）

Sports mode indicator (red)



当变速箱处于运动模式（SPORT）时，此灯点亮。



This indicator will illuminate when the transmission is in SPORT mode.

经济模式指示灯（绿色）

ECO mode indicator (green)



当变速箱处于经济模式（ECO）时，此灯点亮。



This indicator will illuminate when the transmission is in ECO mode.

常规模式指示灯（白色）

Normal mode indicator (white)



当变速箱处于常规模式（NORMAL）时，此灯点亮。



When the transmission is in NORMAL mode, this indicator will light up.

驻车状态指示灯（红色）

Parking status indicator (red)



当EPB开关拉起时，此灯点亮。如果驻车后此灯未点亮或是在EPB开关按下后仍持续点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。



When EPB switch is pulled up, this lamp lights up. If this indicator does not illuminate after parking or remains on after the EPB switch is pressed, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

自动驻车工作指示灯（绿色）

AVH working indicator (green)



当自动驻车系统正在工作时，此灯点亮。

This indicator will illuminate when the AUTO HOLD system is working.

陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯（绿色）

HDC system working indicator (green)



当陡坡缓降功能处于开启状态时，此灯持续点亮。当陡坡缓降系统工作时，此灯闪烁。



When the HDC function is activated, this indicator will stay on. When the hill descent control system works, this indicator flashes.

定速巡航开启指示灯（白色）

Cruise control ON indicator (white)



当定速巡航系统开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。



This indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is activated but not activated.

定速巡航工作指示灯（绿色）

Cruise control indicator (green)



当定速巡航系统开启并激活巡航功能时，此灯点亮，并在指示灯旁边显示目标车速。



When the cruise control system is turned on and the cruise control function is activated, this indicator lights up and displays the target speed next to the indicator light.

转向和危险信号指示灯（绿色）

Turn signal and hazard warning indicator (green)



当操作转向灯时，对应的转向指示灯点

亮或熄灭。当按下危险警告灯开关时，指示灯与左、右转向灯同时闪烁。如果此时不闪烁或快速闪烁，说明转向灯灯泡可能存在异常，应立即确认转向灯灯泡是否损坏，并联系东风风行特约服务站。



When the turn signal lamp is operated, the corresponding turn indicator will be on or off. When the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed, the indicator lamp and the left and right turn signals will flash at the same time. If it does not flash or flashes quickly at this time, it indicates that the turn signal lamp bulb may be abnormal. In this case, immediately confirm whether the turn signal lamp bulb is damaged and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.



位置灯指示灯（绿色）

Indicator of on position lamp (green)



打开位置灯时，此灯点亮。

When the position lamp is turned on, this lamp lights up.

近光灯指示灯（绿色）

Low beam indicator (green)



打开近光灯时，此灯点亮。

When the low beam lamp is turned on, this lamp lights up.

远光灯指示灯（蓝色）

High-beam indicator (blue)



打开远光灯时，此灯点亮。

When the high beam lamp is turned on, this lamp lights up.



后雾灯指示灯（黄色）

Indicator of rear fog lamp (yellow)



打开后雾灯时，此灯点亮。

When the rear fog lamp is turned on, this lamp lights up.

ESP电子稳定系统关闭指示灯（黄色）

Electronic stability program (ESP) shutdown indicator lamp (yellow)

按下ESP开关时，ESP系统关闭，此灯点亮。再次按下此开关，ESP系统重新开启，此灯熄灭。

When the ESP switch is pressed, the ESP system will be turned off and this indicator will illuminate. Press this switch again, the ESP system will be turned on again, and this indicator will go out.

ESP电子稳定系统工作指示灯（黄色）

Electronic stability program (ESP) operation indicator lamp (yellow)

当ESP系统正在工作时，此灯闪烁。如果在行驶过程中此灯持续点亮，说明ESP系统可能有故障，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

This indicator flashes when the ESP system is working. If this indicator stays on during driving, it indicates that the ESP system may be faulty. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

防盗指示灯（红色）

Anti-theft indicator (red)

当启动开关置于“ON”档时，此灯闪烁，说明智能钥匙不合法或者防盗认证未通过，请检查智能钥匙是否正确。当启动开关置于“ACC”档或者“OFF”档时，此灯闪烁，说明车辆进入防盗状态。

When the Start switch is turned to "ON" position, this indicator flashes, indicating that the smart key is illegal or the anti-theft authentication fails. Please check whether the smart key is correct. When the Start switch is turned to "ACC" or "OFF" position, this indicator flashes, indicating that the vehicle has entered the anti-theft state.

GPF状态指示灯（黄色）

GPF status indicator (yellow)

当GPF载碳量较高时，此灯持续点亮，此时建议进行高速工况驾驶，主动进行GPF再生。如果此灯与发动机排放故障（MIL）警告灯同时亮起，说明GPF的载碳量达到了极高级别，高速工况主动再生也难以消除，请及时联系东风风行特约服

务站。

When the carbon load of GPF is relatively high, this lamp will keep on. At this time, it is recommended to drive at high speed and actively regenerate GPF. If this lamp and the engine emission fault (MIL) warning lamp illuminate at the same time, it indicates that the carbon load of GPF has reached an extremely high level and it is difficult to eliminate active regeneration under high-speed working conditions. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

车道偏离系统开启指示灯（白色）*

Lane departure system ON indicator (white)*



当车道偏离系统开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。



This indicator will illuminate when the lane departure warning system is activated but not activated.

车道偏离系统工作指示灯（绿色）*

Lane departure system indicator (green)*



当车速条件满足，系统激活时，此灯点亮。



When the vehicle speed conditions are met and the system is activated, this indicator will illuminate.

车道保持系统开启指示灯（白色）*

Lane keeping system ON indicator (white)*



当车道保持功能开启但未激活时，此灯点亮。



This indicator will illuminate when the lane keeping function is activated but not activated.

车道保持系统工作指示灯（绿色）*

Lane keeping system indicator (green)*



当车道保持系统工作时，此灯点亮。

This indicator will illuminate when the lane keeping system works.

前碰撞预警系统关闭指示灯（黄色）*

FCW OFF indicator (yellow)*



当前碰撞预警系统关闭时，此灯点亮。

When the FCW is turned off, this indicator lights up.

自动紧急制动系统关闭指示灯（黄色）*

AEB OFF indicator (yellow)*



当自动紧急制动系统关闭时，此灯点亮。

This indicator illuminates when the AEBS is turned off.

智能远光灯控制系统激活指示灯（绿色）*

Intelligent high beam control system activation indicator (green)*



当智能远光灯控制功能激活时，此灯点亮。

When the intelligent high beam control function is activated, this indicator will light up.

跛行模式指示灯

Limp mode indicator



当车辆进入跛行（限功率）模式时，此灯点亮，此时应小心、减速驾驶或停车检查，清除故障后方可继续行驶。



When the vehicle enters the limp home



(limited power) mode, this lamp will light up. At this time, drive carefully, slow down or stop the vehicle for inspection, and continue driving only after the fault is cleared.



系统就绪（READY）指示灯（绿色）

System READY indicator (green)



当车辆启动后，此灯点亮，表示车辆处于可行驶状态。



When the vehicle is started, this indicator will illuminate, indicating that the vehicle is in a driving state.

剩余电量低指示灯（黄色）

Low remaining battery indicator (yellow)

当动力电池剩余电量低时，此灯点亮，此时需启动发动机对动力电池进行充电。

When the remaining power of the power battery is low, this indicator will light up. At this time, it is necessary to start the engine to charge the power battery.

HEV状态指示灯（绿色）

HEV status indicator (green)



当车辆处于混合动力驱动模式时，此灯点亮。



This indicator will illuminate when the vehicle is in hybrid drive mode.

EV状态指示灯（绿色）

EV status indicator (green)



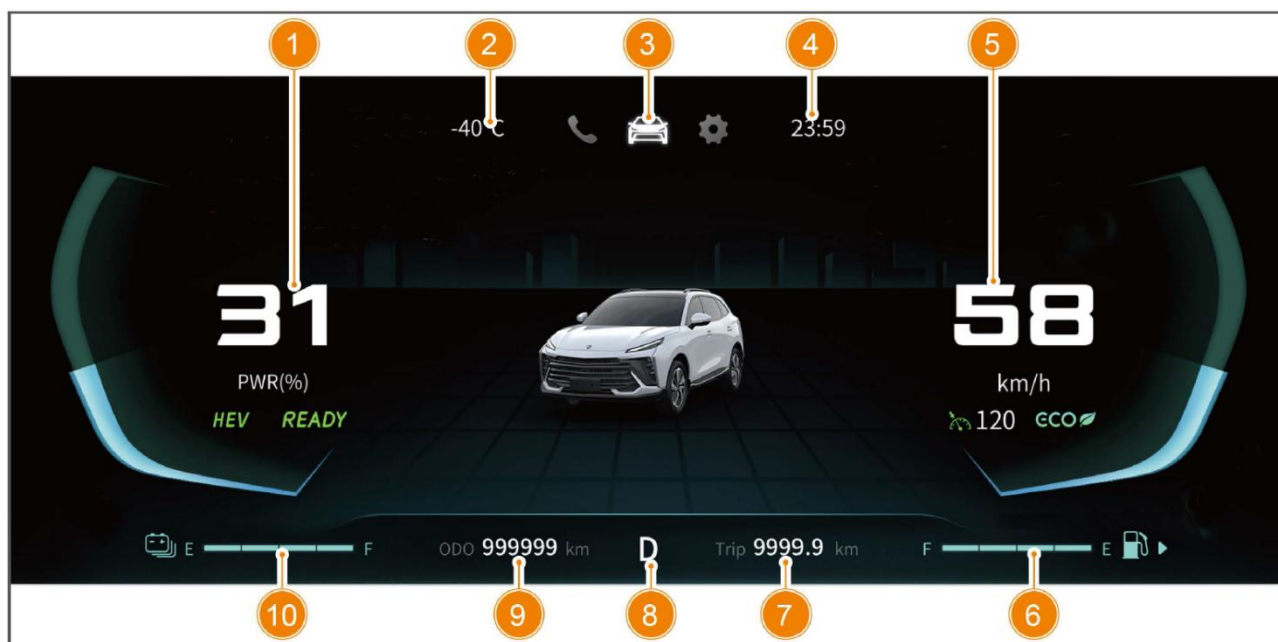
当车辆处于纯电驱动模式时，此灯点亮。



When the vehicle is in the pure electric drive mode, this indicator lights up.

组合仪表概览

Overview of Combination Instrument



1. 功率表

1. Power meter

显示动力电池的能量输出与回收的功率百分比。能量输出时按实际输出功率显示0% ~ 100%，能量回收时按实际回收功率显示0% ~ 60%。

It displays the energy output of the power battery and the percentage of power recovered. In case of energy output, 0% ~ 100% is displayed according to the actual output power, and in case of energy recovery, 0% ~ 60% is displayed according to the actual recovery power.

2. 车外温度

2. Exterior temperature

显示当前的车外温度。显示范围为：-40℃~87℃。车外温度传感器可能受道路、发动机热量、风向和其它行驶条件的影响，显示温度可能与实际车外温度、各种标识或公告上显示的温度不同。

Display the current temperature outside the vehicle. The display range is -40 °C ~ 87 °C . The exterior temperature sensor may be affected by road, engine heat, wind direction and other driving conditions, and the displayed temperature may be different from the actual exterior temperature, and the temperature displayed on various signs or bulletins.

3. 综合信息

3. Comprehensive information

此界面显示车辆信息、驾驶辅助信息、报警信息和设置。可通过方向盘上的向上键和向下键对显示内容进行切换。

This interface displays vehicle information, driving assist information, alarm information and settings. The display content can be switched by the up and down keys on the steering wheel.

4. 时间

4. Time

显示当前时间。

Displays the current time.

5. 车速表

5. Speedometer


显示车辆当前的车速。受胎压、路况、气候等因素的影响，指示的车速与实际车速可能会出现误差。

Display the current speed of the vehicle. Due to the influence of tire pressure, road conditions, climate and other factors, there may be an error between the indicated speed and the actual speed.

6. 剩余燃油量

6. Remaining fuel quantity

显示油箱的存油量，燃油油位低警告灯点亮时，应尽快补给燃油。

It indicates the amount of fuel stored in the fuel tank. When the low fuel level warning lamp illuminates, the fuel shall be replenished as soon as possible.

7. 行车电脑

7. Trip computer

显示车辆小计里程、续航里程、平均油耗和平均车速。可短按方向盘上的OK键切换查看。

It displays the trip mileage, driving mileage, average fuel consumption and average vehicle speed of the vehicle. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to switch the view.

8. 档位

8. Gear position

显示当前的档位。

Display the current gear.

9. 总里程


9. Total mileage


显示车辆总计里程，累计到999999公里停止累计。

It displays the total mileage of the vehicle, and stops accumulating when the accumulated mileage reaches 999999 km.

10. 剩余电量表

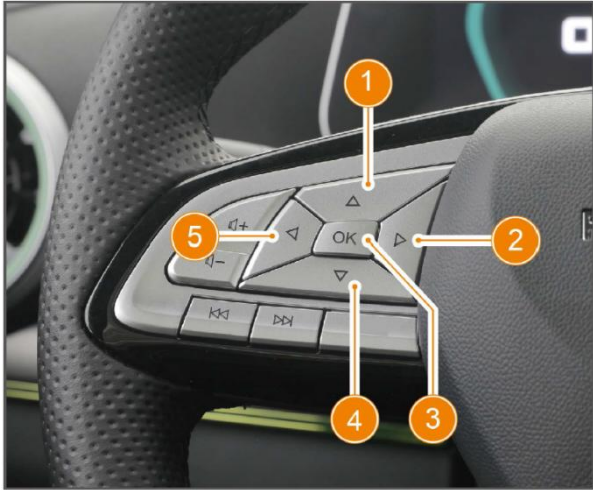
10. Remaining SOC meter

显示当前动力电池的剩余电量，低温等特殊环境行驶时显示值会与实际电量稍有偏差。当动力电池剩余电量较低时，剩余电量低指示灯点亮。

It displays the current remaining power of the power battery, and the displayed value will slightly deviate from the actual power when driving in special environments such as low temperature. When the remaining power of the power battery is low, the low remaining power indicator will illuminate.

组合仪表控制

Combination Instrument Control



1. 向上键：同级页面向上切换选择。

1. Up key: select the page of the same level by switching up.

2. 向右键：切换选择主页。

2. Right button: switch to select the homepage.

3. OK键：在设置界面中选择确认或关闭当前显示的文字提醒界面；在行车电脑界面中短按可切换查看小计里程、续航里程、平均油耗、平均车速。

3. OK button: Select OK in the setting interface or close the currently displayed text prompt interface; short press in the trip computer interface to switch to view the trip mileage, driving mileage, average fuel consumption and average vehicle speed.

4. 向下键：同级页面向下切换选择。

4. Down key: select the page of the same level by switching down.

5. 向左键：切换选择主页或返回上一层页面。

5. Left button: Switch to the home page or return to the previous page.



注意



Attention

● 长按：按键时间大于或者等于2秒。

● Long press: The button time is greater than or equal to 2 seconds.

● 短按：按键时间小于2秒。

● Short press: The button-pressed time is < 2s.

行车电脑

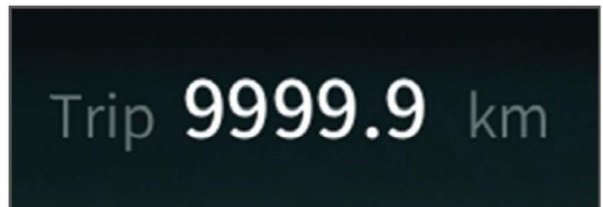
Trip Computer

此界面显示车辆小计里程、续航里程、平均油耗和平均车速。短按方向盘上的OK键可切换查看。

This interface displays the trip mileage, driving mileage, average fuel consumption and average vehicle speed of the vehicle. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to switch to view.

小计里程

Trip Mileage



显示小计里程的范围为0 ~ 9999.9公里，超出后自动清零并从0开始重新累计，也可在车辆信息界面通过长按方向盘上的OK键20秒清零。

The range of trip mileage displayed is 0 ~ 9999.9 km. If the mileage exceeds this range, the mileage will be reset automatically and accumulated again from 0. You can also press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel for 20s to reset the mileage on the vehicle information interface.

组合仪表 Combination instrument

续航里程

Driving Mileage



显示当前可以继续行驶的最大里程。显示范围为：50 ~ 999公里。当低于50公里时，显示“__”。

It displays the maximum mileage that can be continued currently. Display range: 50 - 999km. When it is less than 50 km, "__" will be displayed.



注意

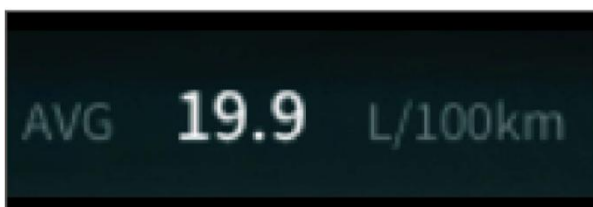


Attention

- 车辆加油后，续航里程将重新计算。
- After refueling, the driving mileage will be recalculated.
- 显示的续航里程值会根据近期综合油耗情况产生变化。
- The displayed driving mileage value will change according to the recent comprehensive fuel consumption.
- 如果燃油油位低警告灯点亮，即使显示车辆能够行驶较长里程，也需要及时添加燃油。
- If the low fuel level warning lamp illuminates, it is necessary to add fuel in time even if it indicates that the vehicle can travel for a long mileage.

平均油耗

Average Fuel Consumption



平均油耗显示范围为：0 ~ 19.9L/100km。清除小计里程后，该数值清零。

The display range of average fuel consumption is 0 ~ 19.9L/100km. After the trip mileage is cleared, the value will be reset.

平均车速

Average Vehicle Speed



平均车速显示范围为：0 ~ 200km/h。清除小计里程后，该数值清零。

The display range of average vehicle speed is 0 ~ 200 km/h. After the trip mileage is cleared, the value is reset to zero.

综合信息

Comprehensive Information

此界面显示车辆信息、驾驶辅助信息、报警信息和设置。可通过方向盘上的向左键和向右键对显示内容进行切换。

This interface displays vehicle information, driving assist information, alarm information and settings. The display content can be switched by pressing the left and right buttons on the steering wheel.

车辆信息

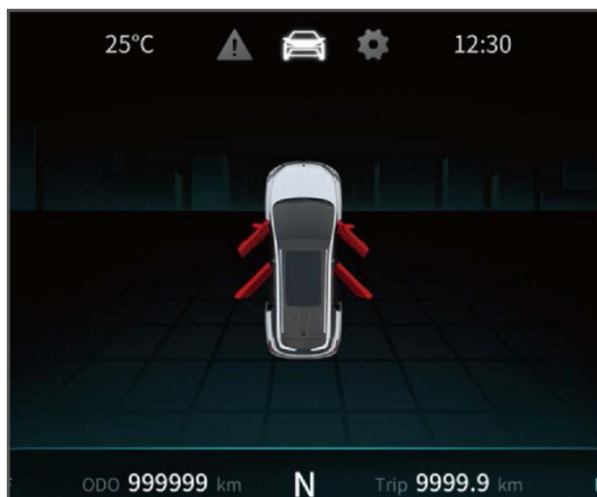
Vehicle Information

车辆信息包含车辆状态和胎压信息。可以通过方向盘上的向上键和向下键对显示内容进行切换。

The vehicle information includes vehicle status and tire pressure information. The display content can be switched by the up and down keys on the steering wheel.

车辆状态

Vehicle status



此界面显示车门（含后背门）及安全带的使用状态。

This interface displays the service status of doors (including trunk lid) and seat belts.

胎压信息

Tire pressure information



此界面显示轮胎对应的压力值和温度值。当轮胎压力值出现异常时，显示界面会进行相应的提醒。

This interface displays the pressure value and temperature value corresponding to the tire. When the tire pressure value is abnormal, the display interface will give a corresponding reminder.



- 请保持胎压在标准压力值附近，当胎压显示“--”且指定轮胎位置点亮时，表明胎压监测系统丢失了此位置的传感器，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。
- Please keep the tire pressure near the standard pressure value. When the tire pressure is displayed as "--" and the designated tire position is on, it indicates that the tire pressure monitoring system has lost the sensor at this position. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.
- 因补胎、拆卸轮胎等原因，只要没有更换或者损坏胎压传感器的，无需重新匹配胎压传感器。但如果轮胎位置调换或因更换轮胎中的胎压传感器，则需要重新进行胎压匹配，请联系东风风行特约服务站。
- As long as the tire pressure sensor is not replaced or damaged due to tire repair, tire removal and other reasons, it is not necessary to re-match the tire pressure sensor. However, if the tire position is changed or the tire pressure sensor in the tire is replaced, the tire pressure needs to be matched again. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.
- 在静止情况下显示的胎压信息为车辆最后运行时的信息。因此轮胎在进行放气或充气操作后，需将车辆行驶到30km/h以上的速度并持续1分钟，胎压信息界面才会更新数据。
- The tire pressure information displayed when the vehicle is stationary is the information when the vehicle is last running. Therefore, after the tire is deflated or inflated, it is necessary to drive the vehicle to a speed of more than 30 km/h for 1 minute before the tire pressure information interface updates the data.

驾驶辅助信息

Driving Assist Information

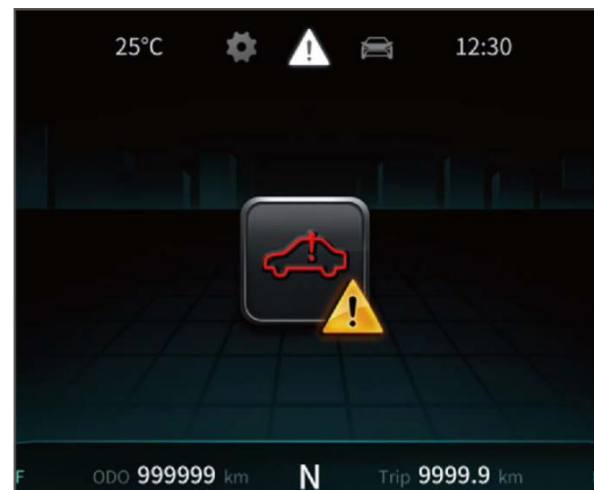
根据车型配置定义不同，此界面下可显示的功能不同。关于驾驶辅助的详细内容详见第七章“舒适驾驶”中的相关说明。

Different functions can be displayed on this interface according to different vehicle model configuration definitions. For details about driving assistance, please refer to the relevant instructions in

Chapter VII "Comfortable Driving".

报警信息

Alarm Information



此界面显示部分需要进行报警或者提醒的车辆信息。当存在多个信息时，可通过方向盘上的向上键和向下键对显示内容进行切换查询。

This interface displays some vehicle information that needs to be alarmed or reminded. When there are multiple pieces of information, you can switch and query the displayed contents by pressing the Up and Down keys on the steering wheel.

设置

Settings

该界面可设置亮度调节和音量调节。可通过方向盘上的向上键、向下键和OK键进入相应的菜单界面。

The brightness and volume can be adjusted on this interface. The corresponding menu interface can be entered by pressing the Up, Down and OK keys on the steering wheel.

亮度调节

Brightness adjustment



可对组合仪表背光亮度进行调节。通过方向盘上的向上键、向下键和OK键对信息进行确认；通过向左键退出亮度调节界面。

The brightness of the combination instrument backlight can be adjusted. Confirm the information by pressing the up, down and OK keys on the steering wheel; exit the brightness adjustment interface by pressing the left key.

音量调节

Volume adjustment

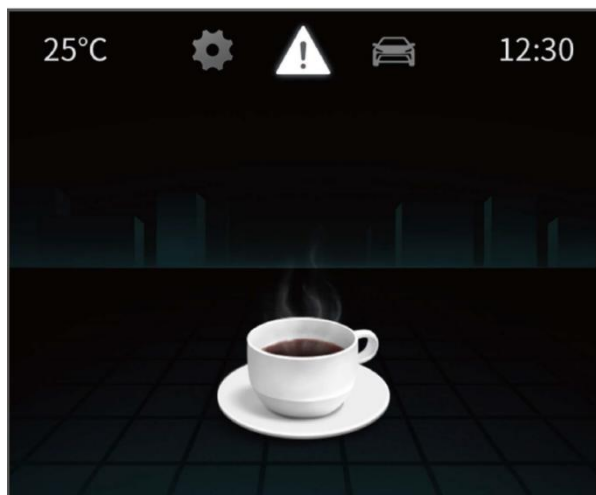


可对组合仪表音量大小进行调节。通过方向盘上的向上键、向下键和OK键对信息进行确认；通过向左键退出音量调节界面。

The volume of the combination instrument can be adjusted. Press the Up, Down and OK buttons on the steering wheel to confirm the information; press the Left button to exit the volume adjustment interface.

疲劳驾驶提醒

Fatigue driving reminder



如果持续驾驶超过4个小时后会触发疲劳驾驶提醒，此时短按方向盘上的OK键并将车辆停靠在安全的地方休息20分钟，即可解除该提示信息。

If the fatigue driving reminder will be triggered after continuous driving for more than 4 hours, short press the OK button on the steering wheel and park the vehicle in a safe place for 20 minutes to release the prompt message.

钥匙信息 58

Key Information 58

智能钥匙 58

Smart key 58

机械钥匙 58

Mechanical Key 58

更换智能钥匙电池 58

Replace the Smart Key Battery 58

防盗启动锁止系统 59

Immobilizer System 59

打开、关闭和锁止车门 59

Opening, Closing and Locking of Door ... 59

从车外解锁和锁止车门 59

External Door Locking and Unlocking 59

从车内解锁和锁止车门 61

Internal Door Locking and Unlocking 61

后门儿童安全锁 63

Child's safety lock at rear door 63

车门自动锁止 63

Automatically Locking of Door 63

碰撞强制解锁 63

Forced unlocking on collision 63

打开和关闭后背门 64

Opening and Closing Trunk Lid 64

从车外打开后背门 64

Opening the liftgate from the outside 64

从车外关闭后背门 66

Closing the trunk lid from the outside 66

从车内打开和关闭后背门 67

Opening and closing trunk lid from inside the vehicle 67

车内应急打开后背门 67

Interior emergency opening of trunk lid .. 67

后背门开启高度设置 68

Trunk lid opening height settings 68

调节座椅 70

Seat Adjustment 70

前排座椅 70

Front Seat 70

后排座椅 76

Rear Seat 76

座椅加热、通风与按摩 * 78

Seat heating, ventilation and massage* 78

座椅记忆 * 78

Seat Memory* 78

头枕调节 78

Headrest adjustment 78

方向盘 80

Steering Wheel 80

方向盘调节 80

Steering wheel adjustment 80

喇叭	80	遥控打开 / 关闭车窗	86
Horn	80	Opening/closing windows by remote control	86
方向盘左侧按键	81	车窗锁止开关	86
Steering wheel left button	81	Window locking switch	86
方向盘右侧按键	81	车窗热保护	86
Steering wheel right button	81	Window thermal protection	86
内后视镜	82	车窗防夹保护	86
Interior Rearview Mirror	82	Window anti-pinch protection	86
内后视镜防眩目调节	82	车窗初始化	86
Anti-dazzling Adjustment of Interior Rearview Mirror	82	Window initialization	86
外后视镜	83	天窗	87
Exterior Rearview Mirror	83	Sunroof	87
外后视镜电动调节	83	天幕	87
Electric adjustment of outside rearview mirror	83	Canopy	87
外后视镜折叠和展开	84	天幕操作面板	88
Folding and Unfolding Side Mirrors	84	Canopy operation panel	88
外后视镜加热除霜	84	遮阳帘打开 / 关闭	88
Outside rearview mirror with defrosting by heating	84	Sunshade opening/closing	88
电动车窗	85	遮阳帘遥控关闭功能	88
Power Window	85	Remote closing function of sunshade	88
手动打开 / 关闭车窗	85	遮阳帘防夹保护功能	88
Manually open/close the window	85	Anti-pinch protection function of sunshade	88
自动打开 / 关闭车窗	85	遮阳帘热保护	89
Automatic opening/closing of windows ..	85	Thermal protection of sunshade	89
		初始化	89

Initialization	89
灯光	90
Lighting	90
车外灯光	90
Exterior Lights	90
车内灯光	92
Interior lighting	92
雨刮	94
Wiper	94
前手动雨刮	94
Front manual wiper	94
前自动雨刮 *	95
Front automatic wiper*	95
后雨刮	96
Rear wiper	96
USB接口	97
USB Interface	97
副仪表台前部USB接口	97
Front USB interface of auxiliary dashboard	97
副仪表台下部USB接口 *	98
USB interface at lower part of auxiliary dashboard*	98
副仪表台后部USB接口	98
Rear USB interface of auxiliary dashboard	98
12V车载电源	99

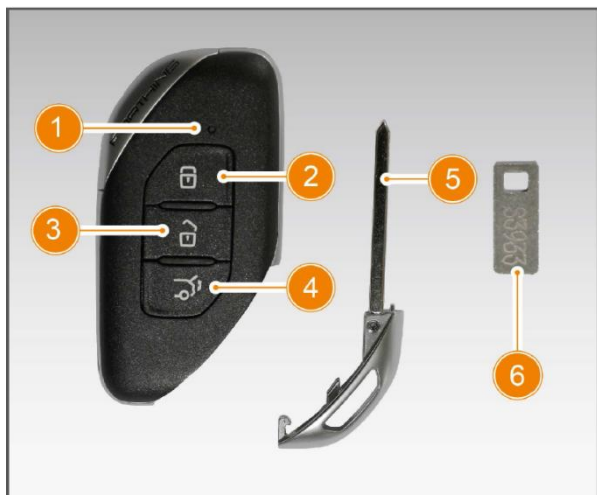
12V on-board power supply	99
副仪表台前部车载电源	99
Front on-board power supply of auxiliary dashboard	99
行车记录仪 *	100
Driving Recorder*	100
内存卡插入与取出	100
Insertion and Extraction of Memory Card	100
行车记录仪的操作	100
Operation of driving recorder	100
行车记录仪的状态显示	100
Status display of vehicle travelling data recorder	100
空调系统	102
A/C System	102
自动空调	102
Automatic A/C	102
出风口位置	104
Position of air outlet	104
空气净化系统 *	106
Air purification system*	106

钥匙信息

Key Information

智能钥匙

Smart key



1. 按键指示灯
1. Button indicator
2. 上锁键
2. Lock button.
3. 解锁键
3. Unlock button
4. 后背门解锁键
4. Trunk lid unlock button
5. 机械钥匙
5. Mechanical key
6. 智能钥匙号码牌
6. Smart key number tag

机械钥匙

Mechanical Key



按压智能钥匙侧面的机械钥匙释放按钮即可取出机械钥匙。

Press the mechanical key release button on the side of the smart key to take out the mechanical key.

更换智能钥匙电池

Replace the Smart Key Battery

如果智能钥匙电量不足，可能会导致遥控距离变近或无法遥控车辆，甚至可能会出现车辆无法识别智能钥匙的情况，此时需要更换智能钥匙内的电池。

If the smart key battery is low, the remote control distance may become shorter or the vehicle cannot be remotely controlled, or even the vehicle may fail to recognize the smart key. In this case, the battery in the smart key needs to be replaced.

防盗启动锁止系统

Immobilizer System

如果携带编码不正确的智能钥匙进入车内，按下启动开关，组合仪表上的防盗指示灯就会闪烁，系统判定智能钥匙不合法或防盗认证未通过，此时发动机不会启动。

If the smart key with incorrect code is carried into the vehicle, press the Start switch, and the anti-theft indicator on the combination instrument will flash. The system will determine that the smart key is illegal or the anti-theft certification fails, and the engine will not start at this time.

打开、关闭和锁止车门

Opening, Closing and Locking of Door

从车外解锁和锁止车门

External Door Locking and Unlocking

无钥匙进入

Keyless entry



解锁

Unlocking

携带智能钥匙握住主驾车门把手内侧解锁区域，所有车门解锁。

Carry the smart key and hold the inner unlocking area of the driver's door handle to unlock all doors.

锁止

Locking

携带智能钥匙，关闭所有车门，按下主驾车

门把手上的上锁区域，所有车门锁止。

Carry the smart key, close all doors, and press the locking area on the driver's door handle to lock all doors.

智能钥匙解锁和锁止

Unlock and lock with smart key



解锁

Unlocking

短按智能钥匙上的解锁键，四车门及加油口盖解锁，转向灯闪烁；长按智能钥匙上的解锁键，四车门玻璃打开。

Short press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock the four doors and the fuel filler cap, and the turn signal lamp will flash; long press the unlock button on the smart key to open the glass of the four doors.

锁止

Locking

短按智能钥匙上的上锁键，四车门及加油口盖上锁，转向灯闪烁，喇叭鸣响一声，室内灯逐渐熄灭，影音娱乐系统关闭；长按智能钥匙上的上锁键，四车门玻璃关闭。

Short press the lock button on the smart key to lock the four doors and the fuel filler cap, the turn signal lamp flashes, the horn sounds once, the interior lamp gradually goes out, and the audio and video entertainment system is turned off; long press the lock button on the smart key to close the glass of the four doors.

机械钥匙解锁和锁止

Unlocking and locking doors with mechanical key

1. 从智能钥匙内取出机械钥匙。

1. Take out the mechanical key from the smart key.



2. 车门关闭后，拉动主驾车门把手到最大开度，将食指伸入把手内部按压前端卡扣，取出锁芯盖，露出锁芯孔。

2. After the door is closed, pull the driver's door handle to the maximum opening, put the index finger into the handle and press the front clip, and take out the lock cylinder cover to expose the lock cylinder hole.



3. 将机械钥匙插入锁芯孔内，顺时针旋转钥匙，车门解锁；逆时针旋转钥匙，车门锁止。

3. Insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder hole, and turn the key clockwise to unlock the door; turn the key counterclockwise to lock the door.

4. 取出钥匙将锁芯盖扣回至车门外把手上。

4. Take out the key and buckle the lock cylinder cover back to the exterior door handle.

从车内解锁和锁止车门

Internal Door Locking and Unlocking

车门内拉手解锁

Unlocking with the Interior Door Handle



车门处于锁止状态时，拉动两次车门内拉手，可打开车门。

When the door is locked, pull the interior door handle twice to open the door.

车门处于解锁状态时，拉动一次车门内拉手，

可打开车门。

When the door is unlocked, pull the interior door handle once to open the door.



注意



Attention

如果后车门儿童安全锁为锁止状态时，无法从车内打开后车门。

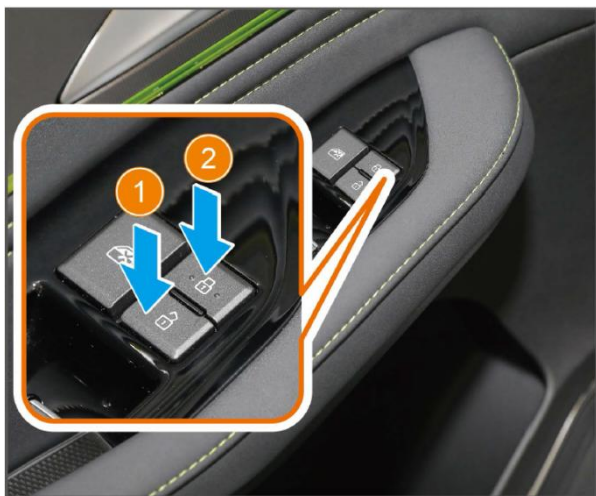
If the rear door child safety lock is locked, the rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

基本功能操作

Operation of basic functions

中控解锁和锁止

Central door lock unlocking and locking



1. 按下解锁所有车门
1. Press to unlock all doors
2. 按下锁止所有车门
2. Press to lock all doors.



注意



Attention

须在所有车门、后背门和加油口盖都关闭的情况下，才能进行中控锁止。

The central door lock can only be performed when all doors, trunk lid and fuel filler cap are closed.

副驾车门及后车门解锁和锁止

Unlocking and Locking of Front Passenger Door and Rear Door



如果遇到车辆断电的情况，可按压门锁内侧

开关，关闭车门后可完成锁止；从车内拉动车门内拉手2次后车门可解锁。

If the vehicle is powered off, press the inner switch of the door lock to close the door, and then the door can be locked. Pull the inner door handle from the inside of the vehicle twice to unlock the door.

后门儿童安全锁

Child's safety lock at rear door



1. 锁止
1. Locking
2. 解锁
2. Unlocking

后门儿童安全锁启用后，后车门无法从车内打开，这样有助于防止儿童意外打开后车门。

After the child's safety lock at rear door is activated, the rear door cannot be opened from the inside of the vehicle, which helps to prevent children from accidentally opening the rear door.

车门自动锁止

Automatically Locking of Door

车门解锁状态下，当车速提高到10km/h以上时，四车门自动锁止。

With the doors unlocked, when the vehicle speed increases to more than 10 km/h, the four doors will be locked automatically.

碰撞强制解锁

Forced unlocking on collision

车门处于锁止状态下，启动开关在“ON”档位置，如果车辆遭受强烈撞击，所有车门将自动解锁。根据撞击的力度或事故的类型，该系统可能不工作。

When the car doors are locked and the start switch is in the "ON" position, if the vehicle is subjected to a strong impact, all doors will automatically unlock. Depending on the intensity of the impact or the type of accident, the system may

not function.

打开和关闭后背门

Opening and Closing Trunk Lid

从车外打开后背门

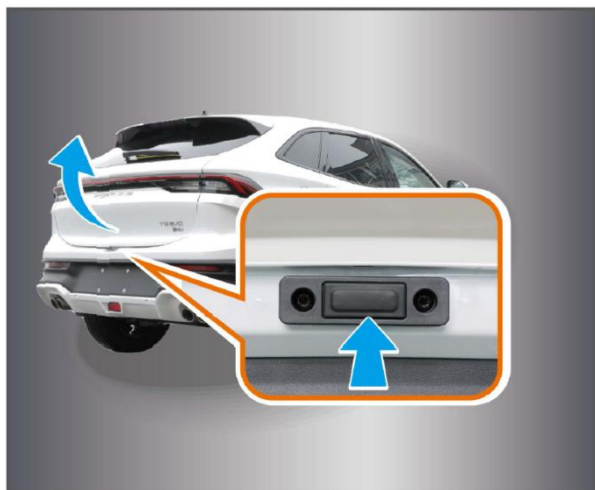
Opening the liftgate from the outside

无钥匙打开后背门

Keyless opening of trunk lid

When the trunk lid is closed, press and hold the trunk lid unlock button on the smart key, and the trunk lid will open automatically.

04



电动后背门

Electric Back Door

携带智能钥匙至后背门旁边，按下微动开关，后背门会自动打开。

Carry the smart key to the side of the trunk lid and press the microswitch to automatically open the trunk lid.

智能钥匙打开后背门

Opening trunk lid with smart key



后背门关闭时，长按智能钥匙上的后背门解锁键，后背门自动打开。

感应打开后背门 *

Opening of trunk lid by induction*



携带智能钥匙站在车辆后方，在后保险杠的中部下方做踢腿动作，待感应到踢腿动作后，后背门将自动打开。

Stand behind the vehicle with the smart key and kick at the middle lower part of the rear bumper. When the kicking action is sensed, the trunk lid will open automatically.



注意



Attention

● 只有当车辆未启动时，感应打开后背门功能才能生效。

● Only when the vehicle is not started, the function of inductively opening the trunk lid will take effect.

● 使用此功能需要携带智能钥匙或将智能钥匙放置在距离后背门约1米的有效控制范围内。

● To use this function, you need to carry the smart key or place the smart key within an effective control range about 1m away from the trunk lid.

● 为保证操作有效性，请采用前后踢腿操作，踢腿时间控制在1 ~ 2秒。操作过程中，脚面 / 小腿与后保险杠底部 / 后部距离分别控制在2 ~ 10厘米。请根据实际多次踢腿操作后，采用最适合的操作方式。

● In order to ensure the effectiveness of the operation, please use front and rear kicking operation, and the kicking time shall be controlled within 1 ~ 2 seconds. During operation, the distance between the foot/lower leg and the bottom/rear part

of the rear bumper shall be controlled within 2 ~ 10 cm respectively. Please use the most suitable operation method after several kicking operations according to the actual situation.

● 请保持感应器表面清洁。如果感应器表面附着冰、雪、污垢等障碍物，可能会造成功能失效。

● Please keep the sensor surface clean. If obstacles such as ice, snow and dirt are attached to the sensor surface, it may cause functional failure.

● 踢腿感应区域位于后保险杠中部下方左右共50厘米的宽度范围内，请在此区域内操作。

● The kick sensing area is located within the width range of 50 cm on the left and right sides below the middle part of the rear bumper. Please operate in this area.

● 如果短时间内多次尝试感应打开后背门功能，该功能可能会暂时停用且短时间内不可恢复。

● If the trunk lid opening function is attempted for several times in a short time, this function may be temporarily disabled and cannot be restored in a short time.



警告



Warning

- 使用此功能时，请确保后背门运动区域无其他人员或障碍物。操作后请注意避开后背门运动区域，以免对人体或车辆造成伤害。
- When using this function, please ensure that there are no other persons or obstacles in the movement area of the trunk lid. After operation, please keep away from the movement area of the trunk lid to avoid injury to human body or vehicle.
- 自动清洗车辆时，请确保智能钥匙不在后背门附近。如果后背门意外打开，可能会损坏后背门。
- When the vehicle is cleaned automatically, please make sure that the smart key is not near the trunk lid. If the trunk lid is opened accidentally, it may be damaged.



此外，还可以通过长按智能钥匙上的后背门解锁键自动关闭后背门。

In addition, the trunk lid can be closed automatically by long pressing the trunk lid unlock button on the smart key.

从车外关闭后背门

Closing the trunk lid from the outside

电动后背门

Electric Back Door



按下后背门护板开关可自动关闭后背门。如果在关闭过程中，再次按下此开关，后背门停止关闭。

Press the trunk lid shield switch to automatically close the trunk lid. If this switch is pressed again during closing, the trunk lid will stop closing.

从车内打开和关闭后背门

Opening and closing trunk lid from inside the vehicle

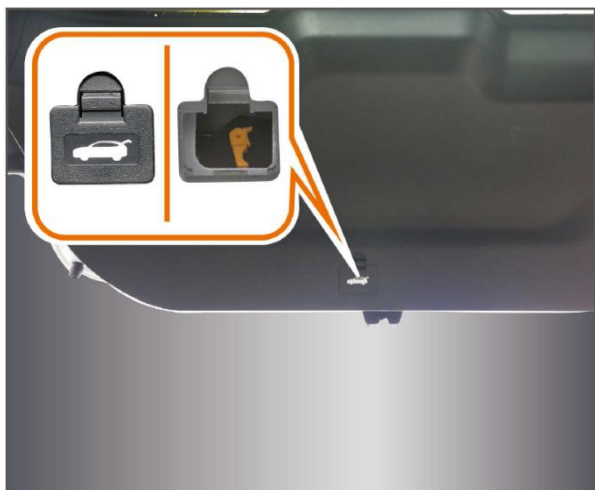


后背门解锁状态下，按下车内后背门开关，后背门自动开启或关闭。在后背门运动过程中，再次按下此开关，后背门停止运动。

When the trunk lid is unlocked, press the interior trunk lid switch, and the trunk lid will open or close automatically. When the trunk lid is moving, press this switch again to stop the movement of the trunk lid.

车内应急打开后背门

Interior emergency opening of trunk lid



如果闭锁器失效无法打开后背门，可先取下后背门护板上的应急开启盖板，拉动后背门应急开启拉环，同时用另一只手向后顶住后背门，即可从车内打开后背门。

If the lock fastener fails and the trunk lid cannot be opened, remove the emergency opening

cover plate from the trunk lid shield, pull the emergency opening pull ring of the trunk lid, and hold the trunk lid backward with the other hand to open the trunk lid from inside the vehicle.

后背门开启高度设置

Trunk lid opening height settings



设置后背门开启高度

Set the opening height of trunk lid

通过后背门护板开关可设置后背门的开启高度：

1. 手动打开后背门至所需高度。

The opening height of the trunk lid can be set through the trunk lid shield switch:

1. Manually open the trunk lid to the required height.

2. 长按后背门护板开关，直至听到声音信号，表示开启高度设置成功。

2. Press and hold the trunk lid shield switch until a sound signal is heard, indicating that the opening height is set successfully.

3. 将后背门关闭，重新打开后背门，即可打开到所设置的高度。

3. Close the trunk lid and reopen it to the set height.

还原最大开启高度

Restore the maximum opening height

1. 手动打开后背门至最高位置。

1. Manually open the trunk lid to the highest position.

2. 长按后背门护板开关，直至听到声音信号，表示最大开启高度还原成功。

2. Press and hold the trunk lid shield switch until a sound signal is heard, indicating that the maximum opening height is restored successfully.

3. 将后背门关闭，重新打开后背门，即可

打开到最大高度。

3. Close the trunk lid and reopen it to the maximum height.



- 在非必要情况下，请勿手动开闭电动尾门。
- Do not open or close the power liftgate manually unless necessary.
- 在断电或发生故障需手动操作电动尾门时，应以均匀速度开启或关闭，时间不应低于2秒。如果快速进行手动开闭操作，可能会造成电动撑杆或控制器损坏。
- When the power liftgate needs to be manually operated in case of power failure or fault, it shall be opened or closed at a uniform speed for not less than 2 seconds. Quick manual opening and closing operations may cause damage to the electric stay bar or controller.

通过影音娱乐系统设置后背门开启角度

Set the opening angle of trunk lid through the audio-visual entertainment system

1. 依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】-【尾门最大开启角度】进入后背门高度设置页面。

1. Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Attachment]-[Maximum Opening Angle of Liftgate] on the display screen in turn to enter the tailgate height setting page.

2. 根据实际需求，在设置页面点击所需的后背门开启高度值后，系统发出声音提示，表示设置成功。

2. According to the actual needs, after clicking the required opening height value of the trunk lid on the setting page, the system will give an audible prompt, indicating that the setting is successful.

**注意****Attention**

影音娱乐系统中后背门开启高度仅作参考，具体高度请根据实际操作进行设置。

The opening height of the trunk lid in the audio-visual entertainment system is for reference only. Please set the specific height according to the actual operation.

防夹保护

Pinch protection system

后背门自动打开时，如果检测到有障碍物，后背门会停止打开；自动关闭时，如果系统检测到有障碍物，后背门会停止关闭并返回预先设置的最大开启高度。

When the trunk lid opens automatically, if an obstacle is detected, the trunk lid will stop opening; when the system closes automatically, if an obstacle is detected, the trunk lid will stop closing and return to the preset maximum opening height.

调节座椅

Seat Adjustment

前排座椅

Front Seat

电动调节主驾座椅

Electric adjustment of driver's seat

十向座椅

Ten-way Seat



1. 腰托前后调节按键

1. Forward/backward adjustment button of lumbar support

按压此键，可调节腰托前后移动，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Press this button to adjust the lumbar support to move forward and backward. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

2. 腰托上下调节按键

2. Up/down adjustment button of lumbar support

按压此键，可调节腰托上下移动，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Press this key to adjust the lumbar support to move up and down. After adjusting to a proper position, release the key.

3. 座椅前后及高度调节按键

3. Seat back/forth and height adjustment button

前后轻轻推动整个按键，可调节座椅前后移动，上下轻轻推动按键后部，可调节座椅升高或降低，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Push the whole button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat to move forward and backward. Push the rear part of the button upward and downward gently to raise or lower the seat. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

4. 靠背角度调节按键

4. Backrest angle adjustment button

前后轻轻推动此键，可调节座椅靠背角度，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Push the button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat backrest angle. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

5. 按摩功能调节按键

5. Massage function adjustment button

按压此键，可切换腰托调节与按摩调节两种功能，当切换到按摩功能时，按压1键可调节按摩强度，按压2键可选择不同按摩模式（强度及模式可参见第六章影音娱乐系统中座椅设置的相关内容）。

Press this button to switch between lumbar support adjustment and massage adjustment. When switching to the massage function, press button 1 to adjust the massage intensity, and press button 2 to select different massage modes (for the intensity and modes, please refer to the relevant contents of seat settings in Chapter VI Audio and Video Entertainment System).

八向座椅

Eight-way Seat



1. 腰托前后调节按键
1. Forward/backward adjustment button of lumbar support
2. 座椅前后及高度调节按键
2. Seat back/forth and height adjustment button
3. 靠背角度调节按键
3. Backrest angle adjustment button

八向座椅调节方式与十向座椅一致。

The adjustment method of the octagonal seat is the same as that of the ten-directional seat.

驾驶员座椅学习功能 *

Learning function of the driver's seat

车辆出厂前已完成座椅学习，使得座椅具有记忆功能。如重新更换座椅或座椅ECU，需要进行座椅学习，具体方法为（以下学习方法不分先后）：

The seat learning has been completed before the vehicle leaves the factory, so that the seat has a memory function. If the seat or seat ECU is replaced, seat learning is required. The specific learning method is (the following learning methods are in no particular order):

1. 先将座椅调节至最后，向后推动座椅前后及高度调节按键5秒，再将座椅调节至最前，向前推动座椅前后及高度调节5秒。反复操作两次，完成座椅前后滑动功能学习。

1. Adjust the seat to the end, push the seat forward/backward and height adjustment buttons backward for 5s, then adjust the seat to the foremost position, and push the seat forward/backward and height adjustment buttons forward for 5s. Repeat the operation twice to complete the learning of seat forward and backward sliding function.

2. 将座椅高度调节至最低，向下推动座椅前后及高度调节按键后部5秒，再将座椅高度调节至最高，向上推动座椅前后及高度调节按键后部5秒。反复操作两次，完成座椅升降功能学习。

2. Adjust the seat height to the minimum, push down the seat forward/backward and the rear part of the height adjustment button for 5s, then adjust the seat height to the maximum, and push up the seat forward/backward and the rear part of the height adjustment button for 5s. Repeat the operation twice to complete the learning of seat lifting function.

3. 将座椅靠背调节至最前，向前推动靠背角度调节按键5秒，再将座椅靠背调节至最后，向后推动

靠背角度调节按键5秒。反复操作两次，完成座椅靠背调节功能学习。

3. Adjust the seat backrest to the foremost position, push the backrest angle adjustment button forward for 5s, then adjust the seat backrest to the rearmost position, and push the backrest angle adjustment button backward for 5s. Repeat the operation twice to complete the learning of seat backrest adjustment function.

电动调节副驾座椅

Electric adjustment of front passenger's seat



1. 靠背角度调节按键

1. Backrest angle adjustment button

前后轻轻推动此键，可调节座椅靠背角度，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Push the button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat backrest angle. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

2. 座椅前后调节按键

2. Seat front-back adjustment button

前后轻轻推动整个按键，可调节座椅前后移动，调整至合适位置后，松开按键即可。

Push the whole button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat forward and backward. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

老板键

Boss Key

04



1. 靠背角度调节按键

1. Backrest angle adjustment button

2. 座椅前后调节按键

2. Seat front-back adjustment button

此按键可方便后排座椅乘客调节副驾座椅，调节方式和电动调节副驾座椅一致。

This button can facilitate the rear seat passenger to adjust the front passenger's seat in the same way as the electric adjustment of the front passenger's seat.



- 驾驶过程中，驾驶员请勿调节座椅。
- The driver shall not adjust the seat during driving.
- 调节座椅时应小心，确保移动座椅时不会伤及其他乘客。
- Be careful when adjusting the seat to ensure that it will not hurt other passengers when moving the seat.
- 调节座椅时请勿将手放在座椅下方或移动的零件附近以免受伤。

- When adjusting the seat, do not put your hands under the seat or near moving parts to avoid injury.
- 请勿过度倾斜座椅，否则腰部座椅安全带可能会滑过髋部而直接勒住腹部，或使肩部座椅安全带触及颈部，在发生事故时，会造成严重的伤害，甚至增加死亡的风险。
- Do not tilt the seat excessively; otherwise, the waist seat belt may slip over the hip and directly strangle the abdomen, or make the shoulder seat belt touch the neck, which will cause serious injury or even increase the risk of death in case of an accident.

后排座椅

Rear Seat

后排座椅靠背调节及放平

Rear seat backrest adjustment and flattening



1. 将后排座椅肩部安全带放入导向带中，并扣合按扣，使安全带固定不会左右滑动。

1. Put the rear seat shoulder belt into the guide belt and buckle the snap fastener so that the seat belt will not slide left and right.

2. 用力向上抬起座垫前端并向前拉出至与前排座椅靠背接触的位置，然后翻转座垫，使座垫前端朝下，与地板接触，并与地板呈大约垂直的角度。

2. Lift the front end of the seat cushion upward with force and pull it forward to the position where it contacts the front seat backrest, and then turn over the seat cushion so that the front end of the seat cushion faces downward and contacts the floor at an approximately vertical angle to the floor.

3. 向上拉起靠背顶端的锁止锁扣，让座椅靠背锁解锁，再将座椅靠背轻轻向前折叠即可。

3. Pull up the lock catch at the top of the backrest to unlock the seat backrest lock, and then gently fold the seat backrest forward.

复位后排座椅

Restoration of rear seat



1. 向后翻转座椅靠背并用力向后推动，使其锁定，再抬起座垫，轻轻下压坐垫前端，使坐垫自然向后、向下运动，直至坐垫后端插入到靠背下方。再向下按压坐垫前端，使坐垫锁锁入锁槽。

1. Turn the seat backrest backward and push it backward hard to lock it, then lift the seat cushion, and gently press down the front end of the seat cushion to make the cushion move backward and downward naturally until the rear end of the seat cushion is inserted below the backrest. Then press down the front end of the cushion to lock the cushion lock into the lock slot.

2. 解开导向带按扣，将安全带释放。

2. Release the guide belt buckle and release the seat belt.



警告



Warning

- 行驶过程中，请勿折叠座椅靠背。
- Do not fold the seat backrest during driving.
- 放平后排座椅时，小心不要卡住手。
- Be careful not to get your hands stuck when laying flat the rear seats.
- 有乘客坐在后排座椅上或行李放在座椅上时，请勿折叠后排座椅靠背。
- Do not fold the rear seat backrest when a passenger sits on the rear seat or the luggage is placed on the seat.
- 复位后排座椅时，要前后轻轻晃动座椅及其靠背，确保其牢固锁定到位。
- When resetting the rear seat, gently shake the seat and its backrest back and forth to ensure that it is firmly locked in place.
- 检查并确认座椅安全带未扭曲或卡在座椅靠背内。
- Check and confirm that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck in the seat backrest.
- 扣合解开导向带的时候，按住按扣附近轻扣轻开，请勿用力拉扯，以免损坏座椅。
- When buckling and unbuckling the guide belt, press and hold the button near the button to gently unbuckle it. Do not pull it hard to avoid damaging the seat.

座椅加热、通风与按摩 *

Seat heating, ventilation and massage*

通过显示屏控制

Control via display screen

具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“座椅设置”章节。

Refer to Chapter 5 "Seat Settings" of "Audio-visual Entertainment System" for specific operation methods.



警告



Warning

如果身体因服用药物、瘫痪、麻痹等疾病无法感知疼痛及温度时，请勿使用座椅加热功能，否则可能造成身体灼伤。

If the body cannot sense pain and temperature due to medication, paralysis, paralysis and other diseases, do not use the seat heating function, otherwise it may cause body burns.



注意



Attention

- 请勿跪在座椅上或使座椅承受集中负荷，以免损坏座椅加热元件。
- Do not kneel on the seat or make the seat bear concentrated load, so as not to damage the seat heating element.
- 请勿用湿洗方式清洁座椅。
- Do not clean the seat with wet cleaning method.
- 座椅加热功能开启时请勿放置座椅坐垫。
- Do not place the seat cushion when the seat heating function is turned on.

座椅记忆 *

Seat Memory*

部分车型主驾座椅具有记忆功能，具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“用户个性化记忆”章节。

The driver's seat of some models has a memory function. For specific operation methods, please refer to the chapter "User Personalized Memory" in

Chapter V "Audio-visual Entertainment System".

头枕调节

Headrest adjustment

前排座椅

Front seat



前排座椅头枕为一体式不可调节。

The front seat headrest is integrated and non-adjustable.

后排座椅

Rear seat



1. 如需升高头枕，可以直接抬起头枕至所需位置，直至听到“咔哒”声，确保头枕锁定到位。

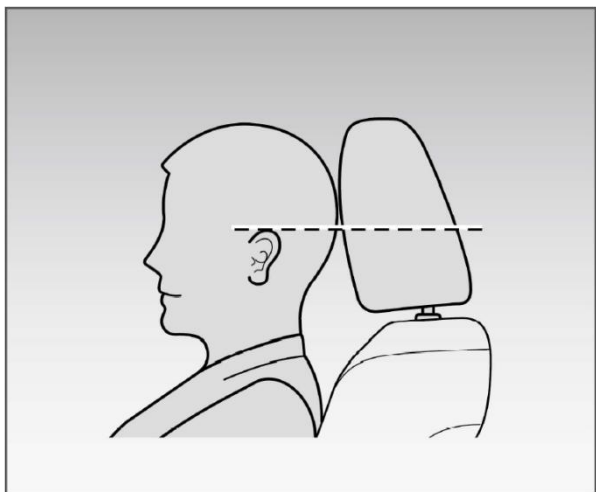
1. To raise the headrest, directly lift the headrest to the desired position until a "click" sound is heard to ensure that the headrest is locked in place.

2. 如需降低头枕，按住位于座椅头枕侧面的调节开关，向下按压头枕至所需高度，然后松开开关，直至听到“咔哒”声，确保头枕锁定到位。

2. To lower the head restraint, press and hold the adjustment switch on the side of the seat head restraint, press the head restraint downward to the required height, and then release the switch until a "click" sound is heard to ensure that the head restraint is locked in place.

头枕高度

Height of headrest



调节头枕时，确保头枕中心与耳朵上部齐平，

这样头枕才能发挥最大的保护作用。

When adjusting the headrest, make sure that the center of the headrest and the upper part of the ear Qi Ping, so that the headrest can play the greatest protective role.

方向盘

Steering Wheel

方向盘调节

Steering wheel adjustment



一只手握住方向盘，另一只手向下扳动调节手柄后，可沿水平和垂直方向移动方向盘，将其调节至理想位置。调整结束后拉起调节手柄，并确认其已锁止到位。

After holding the steering wheel with one hand and pulling the adjustment handle downward with the other hand, you can move the steering wheel horizontally and vertically to adjust it to the desired position. After adjustment, pull up the adjustment handle and confirm that it is locked in place.

喇叭

Horn



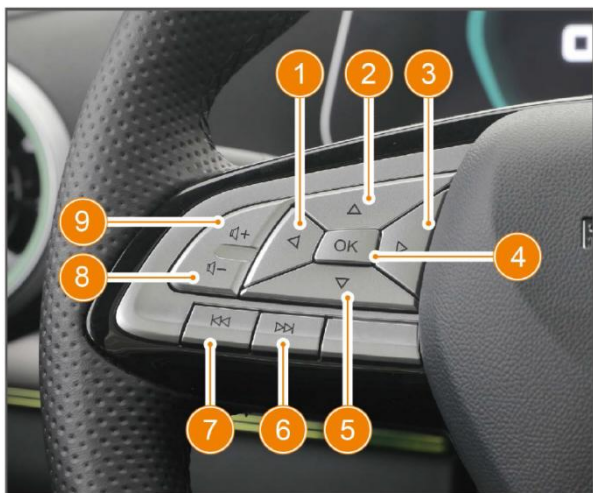
喇叭位于方向盘中部，按压喇叭可提醒车外行人及车辆。合理地使用喇叭将有助于保障驾驶

安全，减少事故发生的频率。

The horn is located in the middle of the steering wheel. Pressing the horn can remind pedestrians and vehicles outside the vehicle. Reasonable use of horns will help to ensure driving safety and reduce the frequency of accidents.

方向盘左侧按键

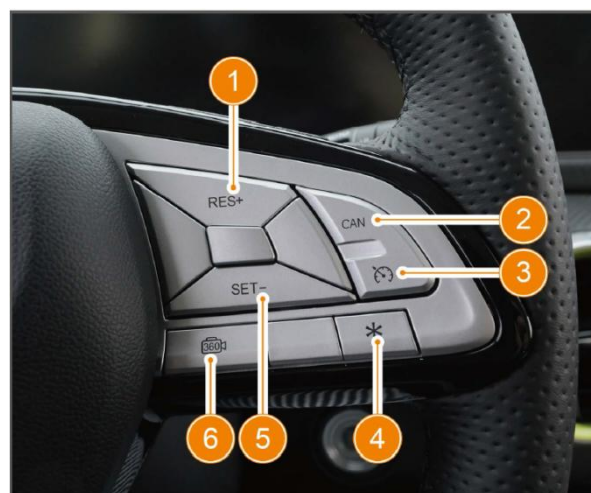
Steering wheel left button



1. 向左键
1. Leftward button
2. 向上键
2. Up button
3. 向右键
3. Rightward button
4. OK键
4. OK button
5. 向下键
5. Down button
6. 前进键
6. Forward button
7. 后退键
7. Backward button
8. 音量减小键
8. Volume down button
9. 音量增大键
9. Volume up button

方向盘右侧按键

Steering wheel right button



1. 巡航恢复 / 加速键
1. Cruise recovery/acceleration button
2. 巡航暂停键
2. Cruise pause button
3. 定速巡航键
3. Cruise control button

4. 自定义键
4. Custom button
5. 车速设置 / 减速键
5. Vehicle speed setting/deceleration button
6. 360°全景键 *
6. 360° panoramic button*

内后视镜

Interior Rearview Mirror



握住内后视镜右侧，上下左右调节镜体，直至可从镜面中充分看清后方的视野。

Hold the right side of the interior rearview mirror and adjust the mirror body up, down, left and right until the rear view can be fully seen from the mirror surface.



注意



Attention

由于内后视镜结构限制，调整内后视镜时，请务必轻力慢速调整，以防调节过度，导致后视镜镜体脱出。

Due to the structural limitation of the interior rearview mirror, please adjust the interior rearview mirror gently and slowly to prevent the exterior rearview mirror body from coming off due to over-adjustment.

内后视镜防眩目调节

Anti-dazzling Adjustment of Interior Rearview Mirror

手动防眩目内后视镜

Manual anti-glare inside rearview mirror



轻轻地扳动内后视镜底部边缘的凸舌，可切换镜片反射状态以防眩目。

Gently pull the tab at the bottom edge of the interior rearview mirror to switch the mirror reflection state to prevent dazzling.



警告



Warning

驾驶过程中请勿调节后视镜位置，否则可能因操控失误而引发事故，从而导致严重伤害甚至死亡。

Do not adjust the position of the rearview mirror during driving; otherwise, an accident may be caused due to incorrect control, resulting in serious injury or even death.

外后视镜

Exterior Rearview Mirror

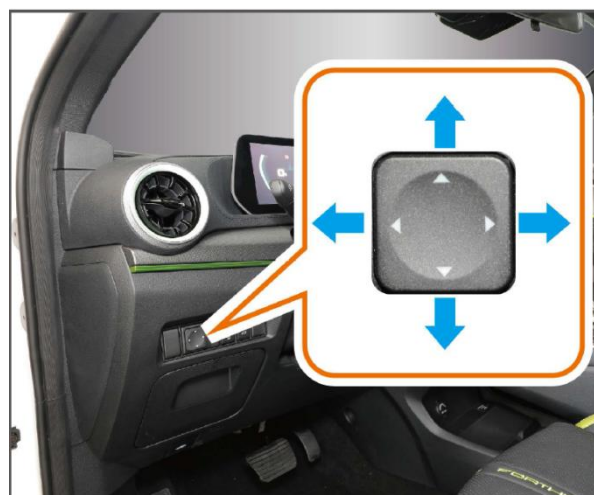
外后视镜电动调节

Electric adjustment of outside rearview mirror



左右推动切换开关可以选定对应一侧的后视镜进行镜面角度调控。

Push the change-over switch left and right to select the rearview mirror on the corresponding side for mirror angle control.

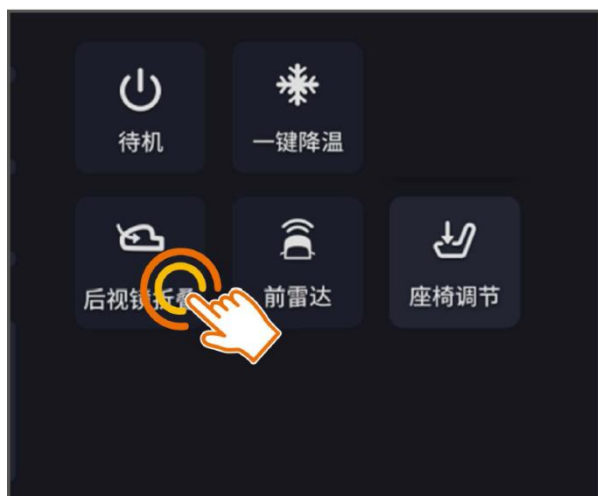


上下左右按动镜面调节开关，可以调整外后视镜到最佳视野角度。

Press the mirror adjustment switch up, down, left and right to adjust the exterior rearview mirror to the best view angle.

外后视镜折叠和展开

Folding and Unfolding Side Mirrors



在显示屏顶端进行下划操作可唤出下拉栏快捷菜单，点击【后视镜折叠】，即可实现外后视镜折叠或展开。

Draw down the button at the top of the display screen to call out the shortcut menu in the drop-down bar. Click [Rearview Mirror Folding] to fold or unfold the exterior rearview mirror.

自动折叠和展开外后视镜

Automatic folding and unfolding of exterior rearview mirrors

依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】，选择开启【后视镜自动折叠】功能。在启动开关置于“OFF”档，四车门关闭时，按下智能钥匙上锁或解锁键，即可实现外后视镜自动折叠或展开。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Attachment] on the display screen in turn, and select to enable the [Automatic folding of rearview mirror]. With the Start switch at "OFF" position and the four doors closed, press the lock or unlock button on the smart key to automatically fold or unfold the exterior rearview mirrors.

外后视镜记忆 *

Side mirror memory*

部分车型配有外后视镜记忆功能，具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“用户个性化记忆”章节。

Some models are equipped with exterior rearview mirror memory function. For specific operation methods, please refer to "User Personalized Memory" in Chapter V "Audio-visual

Entertainment System".

外后视镜倒车自动下翻 *

Exterior rear-view mirror automatic tilting-down in reversing*

依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】，开启【倒车后视镜下翻】功能，当车辆倒车时外后视镜可自动下翻一定的角度，方便驾驶员查看路面情况。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Attachment] on the display screen in turn to enable the [Reversing rearview mirror tilt-down] function. When the vehicle is reversing, the exterior rearview mirror can automatically tilt down by a certain angle, which is convenient for the driver to check the road conditions.

外后视镜加热除霜

Outside rearview mirror with defrosting by heating

车辆启动后，按下空调控制面板上的后风窗除霜按键，可打开或关闭除霜功能，此功能可除去外后视镜上的雾、霜及薄冰。

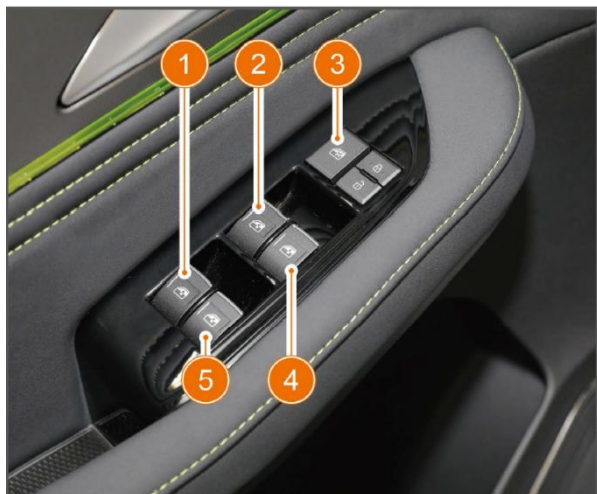
After the vehicle is started, press the rear windshield defrosting button on the A/C control panel to turn on or off the defrosting function, which can remove the fog, frost and thin ice on the exterior rearview mirrors.



- 驾驶前为保证行车安全，需确保外后视镜复位后再进行镜面角度调节。
- Before driving, in order to ensure driving safety, it is necessary to ensure that the exterior rearview mirror is reset before adjusting the mirror angle.
- 驾驶过程中请勿调节外后视镜。
- Do not adjust the exterior rearview mirror while driving.
- 如外后视镜未折叠或展开，可能是外后视镜被碰撞后未复位，需手动将镜头向前推动直至发出“哒”的一声，再操作外后视镜折叠或展开两三次即可。
- If the exterior rearview mirrors are not folded or unfolded, it may be that the exterior rearview mirrors are not reset after collision. In this case, manually push the lens forward until a "click" sound is heard, and then fold or unfold the exterior rearview mirrors for two or three times.
- 如果外后视镜上有积雪时，请先清除积雪后再调节外后视镜，避免损坏外后视镜。
- If there is snow on the exterior rearview mirror, please remove the snow before adjusting the exterior rearview mirror to avoid damaging the exterior rearview mirror.

电动车窗

Power Window



1. 左后车窗开关

1. Left rear window switch
2. 左前车窗开关
2. Left front window switch
3. 车窗锁止开关
3. Window locking switch
4. 右前车窗开关
4. Right front window switch
5. 右后车窗开关
5. Right rear window switch

手动打开 / 关闭车窗

Manually open/close the window

向上拉起或向下长按车窗开关并保持住，可手动控制车窗上升或下降。

Pull up or press and hold the window switch downward to manually control the window to rise or fall.

自动打开 / 关闭车窗

Automatic opening/closing of windows

向上拉起或向下短按车窗开关，车窗可自动上升或下降，如需中途停止，再次拉起或按压此开关即可。

Pull up or short press the window switch downward to automatically raise or lower the window. If you need to stop halfway, pull up or press this switch again.

遥控打开 / 关闭车窗

Opening/closing windows by remote control

当车辆停止且整车车门关闭时，长按智能钥匙上的解锁键，四扇车窗会同时下降直至完全开启，长按智能钥匙上的上锁键，四扇车窗会同时上升直至完全关闭。

When the vehicle stops and the vehicle doors are closed, press and hold the unlock button on the smart key, and the four windows will descend at the same time until they are fully opened. Press and hold the lock button on the smart key, and the four windows will ascend at the same time until they are fully closed.

车窗锁止开关

Window locking switch

为防止儿童意外打开或关闭车窗，按下车窗锁止开关可禁用前排乘客侧车窗和后车窗操作，此时车窗只能由驾驶员控制，如需恢复可再次按下此开关。

To prevent children from accidentally opening or closing the window, pressing the window lock switch can disable the operation of the front passenger side window and the rear window. At this time, the window can only be controlled by the driver. If it needs to be restored, press this switch again.

车窗热保护

Window thermal protection

如果在短时间内反复操作车窗，会触发电机保护功能而导致电动车窗控制开关失效。要恢复车窗操作，需稍等一段时间后再次操作。

If the window is operated repeatedly in a short time, the motor protection function will be triggered and the power window control switch will fail. To resume window operation, wait for a while and then operate again.

车窗防夹保护

Window anti-pinch protection

在车窗关闭过程中，如果遇到障碍物，车窗会停止关闭并往反方向运行一段距离。如果出现冲击或与车窗障碍物类似的情况，自动防夹功能也会起作用。

During window closing, if an obstacle is encountered, the window will stop closing and move in the opposite direction for a certain distance. The

automatic anti-pinch function will also work in case of impact or similar conditions to window obstacles.

防夹电动车窗的激活条件

Anti-pinch Power Window Activation Conditions

当启动开关置于“ON”档或车辆熄火后约60秒内。

Within about 60s after the Start switch is turned to "ON" position or the vehicle is shut down.

车窗初始化

Window initialization

1. 当车辆12V低压蓄电池断开、亏电、重新充电后。

1. After the 12V low-voltage battery of the vehicle is disconnected, undervoltage and recharged.

2. 当门控模块刷写软件后。

2. After the door control module flashes the software.

3. 当车窗机构更换后，如更换升降器、胶条、玻璃、水切、导槽等影响车窗升降行程的零部件后。

3. After the window mechanism is replaced, such as replacing parts and components that affect the window lifting stroke, such as regulator, rubber strip, glass, weather strip and guide slot.

4. 当车门护板和门控模块更换后。

4. After the door shield and door control module are replaced.

需要对带有防夹功能的电动车窗进行初始化学习，以便可以正常使用。

It is necessary to initialize and learn the power window with anti-pinch function for normal use.

初始化学习步骤

Steps of initialization learning

1. 向上拉起车窗开关并保持住，直至车窗完全关闭后，继续保持2秒以上。

1. Pull up the window switch and hold it until the window is completely closed, and then hold it for more than 2s.

2. 向下按住车窗开关并保持住，直至车窗完全打开后，继续保持2秒以上。

2. Press and hold the window switch downward until the window is fully opened, and continue to hold it for more than 2 seconds.

3. 再次向上拉起车窗开关，直至车窗关闭。

3. Pull up the window switch again until the window is closed.

4. 初始化学习结束。

4. Initialization learning ends.

以上步骤需连贯操作，以保证学习成功。如果上述操作后电动车窗仍不能正常工作，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The above steps need to be operated in a coherent manner to ensure successful learning. If the power window still cannot work normally after the above operations, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.



天幕采用整体式玻璃，无法开启。部分车型全景天幕带有星空图案。

The canopy is made of integral glass and cannot be opened. The panoramic canopy of some models has starry patterns.

04



注意



Attention

- 操作车窗时，要确保不会夹住乘客身体的任何部位。
- When operating the window, make sure that no part of the passenger's body is pinched.
- 请勿让儿童操作电动车窗。
- Do not allow a child to operate the window.
- 请勿故意以夹住身体任何部位的方式来测试防夹功能。
- Do not deliberately test the anti-pinch function by pinching any part of the body.
- 如果车窗即将完全关闭时夹住物体，防夹功能可能不起作用。
- If an object is clamped when the window is about to be fully closed, the anti-pinch function may not work.

天窗

Sunroof

天幕

Canopy

基本功能操作 Operation of basic functions

天幕操作面板

Canopy operation panel



1. 遮阳帘开启按钮
1. Sunshade opening button
2. 遮阳帘关闭按钮
2. Sunshade closing button

遮阳帘打开 / 关闭

Sunshade opening/closing

当需要改善车内光线时，可打开天窗遮阳帘。当启动开关置于“ON”档时，遮阳帘处于关闭状态下，点按遮阳帘开启按钮，天窗遮阳帘一键打开至全开状态。点按遮阳帘关闭按钮，天窗遮阳帘一键关闭至关闭状态。

When it is necessary to improve the light in the vehicle, the sunroof sunshade can be opened. When the Start switch is at "ON" position and the sunshade is closed, press the sunshade opening button, and the sunroof sunshade will be opened to the full-open state with one button. Press the sunroof sunshade closing button to close the sunroof sunshade.

在遮阳帘一键打开 / 关闭过程中，再次点按遮阳帘操作按钮，遮阳帘停止在当前位置。

In the process of opening/closing the sunshade with one button, press the sunshade operation button again, and the sunshade will stop at the current position.

遮阳帘遥控关闭功能

Remote closing function of sunshade

在发动机关闭状态下，遮阳帘无法操作，如果此时发现遮阳帘处于打开状态，可通过智能钥匙关闭遮阳帘。

When the engine is shut down, the sunshade cannot be operated. If the sunshade is found to be open at this time, the sunshade can be closed with the smart key.

如果显示屏上【遥控关窗设置】选择的是【短按】，则短按智能钥匙上锁键，遮阳帘会自动关闭。

If [Short press] is selected for [Remote Window Closing Setting] on the display screen, short press the lock button on the smart key, and the sunshade will be closed automatically.

如果显示屏上【遥控关窗设置】选择的是【长按】，则需按下智能钥匙上锁键3秒以上，遮阳帘才会自动关闭。

If [Long press] is selected for [Remote Window Closing Setting] on the display screen, press the lock button on the smart key for more than 3s to automatically close the sunshade.

遮阳帘防夹保护功能

Anti-pinch protection function of sunshade

当遮阳帘在自动关闭的过程中受到异常阻力或障碍物，遮阳帘将在中途自动停止并退回一段距离，防止人员受伤。

When the sunshade is subject to abnormal resistance or obstacles during automatic closing, the sunshade will automatically stop halfway and retract for a certain distance to prevent personal injury.

遮阳帘热保护

Thermal protection of sunshade

为防止遮阳帘电机过热导致功能异常，在连续操作遮阳帘120秒后（正常阻力状态下），遮阳帘会开启热保护功能，此时操作遮阳帘将暂时无法运动，大约过40秒等电机冷却后可再次操作遮阳帘。由于电机还未恢复到室温状态，此时如果持续操作遮阳帘，遮阳帘会第二次开启热保护功能，需要等待120秒后，操作遮阳帘才会运动。

In order to prevent abnormal function caused by overheating of the sunshade motor, the thermal protection function of the sunshade will be activated after continuous operation of the sunshade for 120 seconds (under normal resistance state). At this time, the sunshade cannot be operated temporarily. The sunshade can be operated again after the motor cools down for about 40 seconds. Since the motor has not returned to the room temperature state, if the sunshade is operated continuously at this time, the thermal protection function of the sunshade will be turned on for the second time. The sunshade will not move until 120 seconds later.

初始化

Initialization

当遮阳帘出现无法关闭到位的情况时，可通过以下操作恢复：

When the sunshade cannot be closed in place, it can be restored by the following operations:

1. 持续按住遮阳帘关闭按键，当遮阳帘碰到前端挡点并回退后，此时松开按键，遮阳帘位置初始化完成。

1. Press and hold the sunshade closing button continuously. When the sunshade touches the front stop point and retracts, release the button to complete the initialization of the sunshade position.

2. 松开按键4秒内再次长按遮阳帘关闭按键约4秒，遮阳帘会先打开一小段后，再自动反转关闭到全关位置（过程中开关不允许松开），此次松开遮阳帘按键，遮阳帘初始化完成。

2. Press and hold the sunshade curtain closing button again for about 4s within 4s after releasing the button. The sunshade curtain will be opened for a short period of time, and then automatically closed to the fully closed position in reverse rotation (the switch is not allowed to be released during the process). Release the sunshade curtain button this time, and the initialization of the sunshade curtain is completed.

警告

Warning

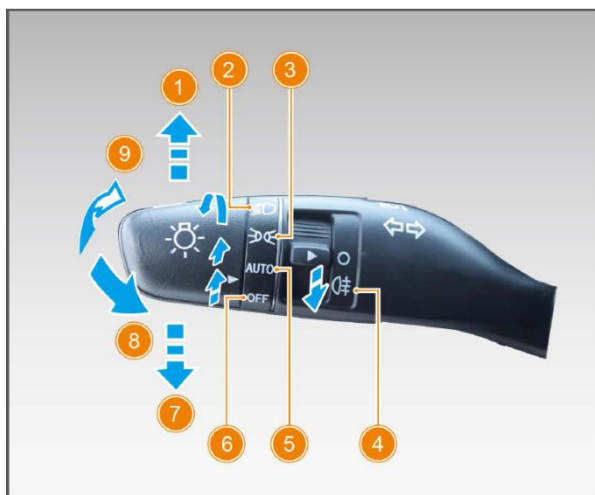
- 操作遮阳帘时，要确保不会夹住身体的任何部位。
- When operating the sunshade, make sure that it will not clamp any part of the body.
- 遮阳帘运动时，严禁将头或身体其他部位伸到天幕玻璃面处，以免造成严重伤害。
- When the sunshade moves, it is strictly prohibited to extend the head or other parts of the body to the glass surface of the canopy to avoid serious injury.
- 请勿将小孩单独留在车内。启动开关打开时，他们可能会因玩弄遮阳帘按键而造成严重的意外事故发生。
- Please do not leave children in the car without companion. When the Start switch is turned on, they may cause serious accidents by playing with the sunshade button.

灯光

Lighting

车外灯光

Exterior Lights



1. 右转向灯
1. Right turn signal light
2. 近光灯
2. Passing beam
3. 位置灯
3. Position lamp
4. 后雾灯
4. Rear fog lamp
5. 自动灯光
5. Automatic light
6. 大灯关闭状态
6. Headlamp OFF state
7. 左转向灯
7. Left turn signal light
8. 远光灯闪烁
8. High beam headlamp flashes
9. 远光灯
9. Driving beam

转向灯开关

Turn signal light switch

向上或向下拨动灯光控制手柄，右侧或左侧转向灯闪亮，转向完成后，手柄回位，转向灯关

闭。

Pull the light control handle upward or downward, and the right or left turn signal lamp will flash. After the steering is completed, the handle will return to its original position and the turn signal lamp will be turned off.

远 / 近光灯切换

Switch between high and low beams

当近光灯打开时，将灯光控制手柄向前推至极限位置，远光灯开启；向后拨回，远光灯关闭。

When the low beam is turned on, push the light control handle forward to the limit position to turn on the high beam; pull it back to turn off the high beam.

位置灯

Position lamp

灯光开关处于ATUO档，系统检测到环境光照强度较暗时，按下智能钥匙解锁键解锁车门，位置灯自动点亮；闭锁、启动车辆或休眠后位置灯熄灭。

When the light switch is in ATUO position and the system detects that the ambient light intensity is dark, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock the door, and the position light will automatically illuminate; after locking, starting the vehicle or sleeping, the position light will go out.

雾灯开关

Fog lamp switch

在近光灯打开时，拨动调节环使 ► 指向后雾灯，后雾灯打开；再次拨动调节环使 ► 指向O，后雾灯关闭。

When the low beam is turned on, toggle the adjusting ring to point ► to the rear fog lamp, and the rear fog lamp will be turned on; toggle the adjusting ring again to point ► to O, and the rear fog lamp will be turned off.

日间行车灯

Daytime running lamp

日间行车灯主要在白天使用，可自动点亮，使其他驾驶员更清楚地看到您的车辆，保障行车安全。

The daytime running lamp is mainly used in the daytime and can be automatically turned on, so that other drivers can see your vehicle more clearly and ensure driving safety.

自动灯光

Automatic light

拨动调节环使 ► 指向AUTO时，前大灯和其它车外灯将根据环境亮度自动打开或关闭。

When the adjusting ring is toggled to point ► to AUTO, the headlights and other exterior lights will be automatically turned on or off according to the ambient brightness.

伴我回家

Follow me home

车辆熄火后5分钟内来回拨动一次灯光控制手柄，伴我回家功能开启，此时近光灯自动打开。

Turn the light control handle back and forth once within 5 minutes after the vehicle is shut down, and the "Follow Me Home" function will be turned on. At this time, the low beam will be turned on automatically.

车门上锁30秒后或者伴我回家功能开启5分钟后近光灯自动关闭。

After the door is locked for 30 seconds or the "Follow Me Home" function is turned on for 5 minutes, the low beam will be automatically turned off.

大灯高度调节

Headlight height adjustment

当车辆承载较重时，车身后部会下沉，使近光灯光束被抬高，影响驾驶员的视线，引起安全隐患，此时应该找个安全的地方停车，然后对大灯高度进行调节。

When the vehicle is heavily loaded, the rear part of the vehicle body will sink, so that the low beam will be raised, affecting the driver's sight and causing potential safety hazards. At this time, you should find a safe place to stop the vehicle and then adjust the headlamp height.

具体方法如下：

The detailed methods are as follows:

1. 启动开关置于“ON”档时，打开大灯。

1. Turn on the headlamp when the Start switch is at "ON" position.

2. 依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】，选择【大灯高度调节】的合适档位，共有4个档位可选择。

2. Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Attachment] on the display screen in turn, and select the appropriate gear of [Headlamp Height Adjustment]. There are 4 gears to select.

基本功能操作 Operation of basic functions



迎宾灯 *

Courtesy lamp*



迎宾灯位于车辆外后视镜下方，用于夜晚照亮地面，拉开车门时，迎宾灯点亮；关闭发动机后，推开车门时，迎宾灯点亮，车门关上后，迎宾灯熄灭。

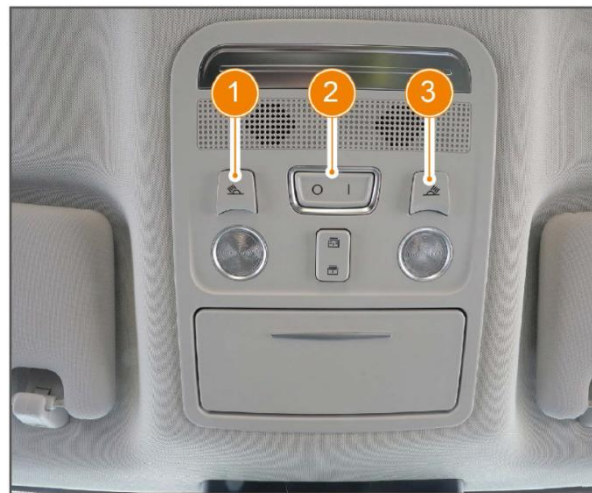
The courtesy light is located below the exterior rearview mirror of the vehicle and is used to illuminate the ground at night. When the door is opened, the courtesy light will be on; after the engine is shut down and the door is pushed open, the courtesy light will be on; after the door is closed, the courtesy light will be off.

车内灯光

Interior lighting

前排室内灯

Front interior lamp



1. 左前室内灯开关
1. Switch for front left interior light
2. 门控开关
2. Door control switch
3. 右前室内灯开关
3. Switch for front right interior light

门控开关操作

Door Control Switch Operation

按下门控开关“O”时，门控功能关闭。

When the door control switch "O" is pressed, the door control function is turned off.

按下门控开关“I”时，所有室内灯点亮。

When the door control switch "I" is pressed, all interior lights will be on.

当门控开关与面板平行时，室内灯会随着四车门的开启和关闭而点亮或熄灭。

When the door control switch is parallel to the panel, the interior lamps will light up or go out with the opening and closing of the four doors.

室内灯开关

Interior Light Switch

当门控开关与面板平行或按下“O”时，室内灯受对应的室内灯开关控制，按下时点亮，弹出时熄灭。

When the door control switch is parallel to the panel or the "O" button is pressed, the interior lamp is controlled by the corresponding interior lamp switch. When the button is pressed, the lamp will be on, and when the button pops up, the lamp will be off.

后排室内灯

Rear indoor lamp



基本功能操作

Operation of basic functions

后排室内灯位于后排拉手侧边，当门控开关与面板平行或按下“O”时，后排室内灯的点亮或熄灭受后排室内灯开关控制。

The rear saloon lights are located on the side of the rear handle. When the door control switch is parallel to the panel or "O" is pressed, the ON or OFF of the rear saloon lights is controlled by the rear saloon light switch.

行李箱灯

Trunk light



打开后背门时，行李箱灯自动点亮。关闭后背门后，自动熄灭。

When the trunk lid is opened, the trunk lamp will automatically be on. After the trunk lid is closed, it will go out automatically.

雨刮

Wiper

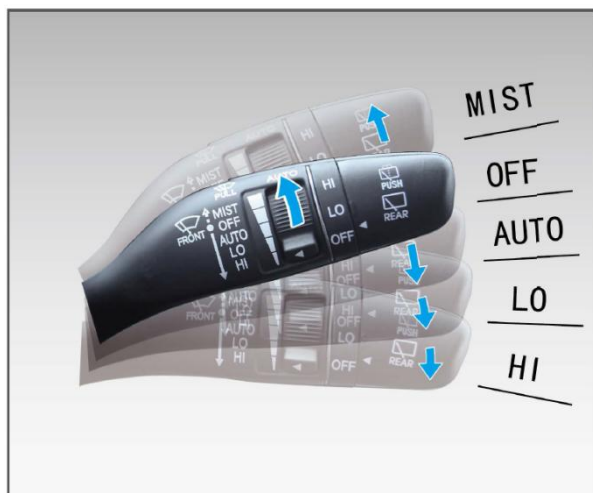
前手动雨刮

Front manual wiper



前自动雨刮 *

Front automatic wiper*



MIST: 点动模式。向上拨动雨刮控制手柄，雨刮刮刷一次，松手后手柄自动回位。

MIST: point wiping. Pull the wiper control handle upwards to wipe the wiper once, and the handle will automatically return to its original position after release.

OFF: 关闭雨刮。雨刮控制手柄在OFF档时，停止刮水。此档位为默认档位。

OFF: Turn off the wiper. When the wiper control handle is at OFF position, stop wiping. This gear is the default gear.

INT: 间歇刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至INT档，雨刮间歇刮刷，调节环可调整间歇时间。从上往下，间歇时间逐渐减小，刮水速度逐渐加快。

INT: Intermittent wiper. Pull the wiper control handle downward to the INT position, the wiper will wipe intermittently, and the intermittent time can be adjusted by adjusting the ring. From top to bottom, the intermittent time gradually decreases and the wiping speed gradually increases.

AUTO*: 自动刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至AUTO档，雨刮自动刮刷，调节环可调整灵敏度。从上往下，灵敏度逐渐增大，刮水速度逐渐加快。

AUTO*: automatic wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to the AUTO position, the wiper will wipe automatically, and the sensitivity can be adjusted by adjusting the ring. From top to bottom, the sensitivity gradually increases and the wiping speed gradually increases.

LO: 低速刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至LO档，进行低速连续刮水。

LO: low-speed wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to LO position for low-speed continuous wiping.

HI: 高速刮水。向下拨动雨刮控制手柄至HI档，进行高速连续刮水。

HI: high-speed wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to HI position for high-speed continuous wiping.



当拨动雨刮控制手柄至AUTO档，雨刮自动刮水功能打开时，在下列情况下，雨刮可能会产生刮刷，属于正常现象：

- 经过光线明显变化的区域，如树林、天桥等。

When the wiper control handle is turned to AUTO position and the automatic wiping function of wiper is activated, the wiper may wipe under the following conditions, which is normal:

- Areas where the light changes significantly, such as woods and overpasses.
- 有异物掉落在传感器区域，如树叶等。
- Foreign objects, such as leaves, fall on the sensor area.
- 车辆经过灰尘较大的区域，如在大型车辆后面跟车或者经过施工路段。
- Vehicles pass through dusty areas, such as following large vehicles or passing through construction sections.



注意



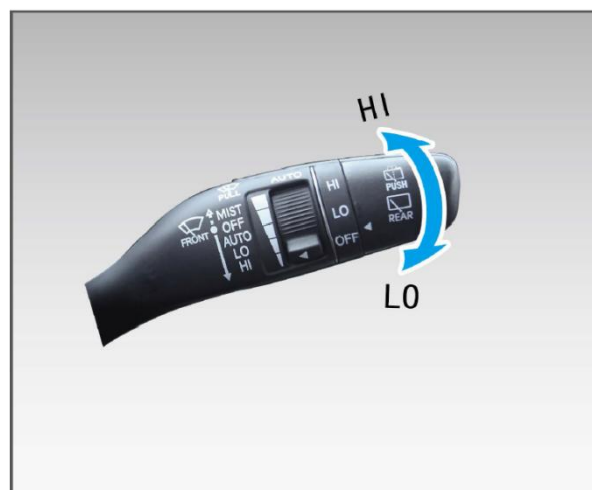
Attention

以下情况可能会导致自动刮水功能失效：

- 雨量传感器表面附着异物。

The following conditions may cause the automatic wiping function to fail:

- Foreign matters are attached to the surface of the rain sensor.
- 车上加装或连接其他电子设备，使用中可能也会影响此系统功能。
- If other electronic equipment is added or connected to the vehicle, the system function may also be affected during use.



HI: 后雨刮高速刮水。扭动雨刮控制手柄后端到HI档位，后雨刮进行高速刮水。

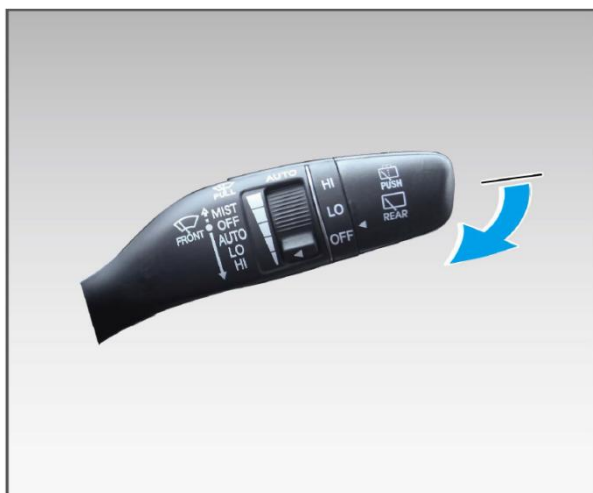
HI: High-speed wiping of rear wiper. Turn the rear end of the wiper control handle to the HI position, and the rear wiper performs high-speed wiping.

LO: 后雨刮低速刮水。扭动雨刮控制手柄后端到LO档位，后雨刮进行低速刮水。

LO: Low-speed wiping of rear wiper. Turn the rear end of the wiper control handle to the LO position, and the rear wiper performs low-speed wiping.

前挡风玻璃洗涤

Front windshield washer



往回拨动雨刮控制手柄并保持住，前挡风玻璃洗涤器开始喷水，同时前雨刮进行低速刮刷，松开雨刮控制手柄后停止喷水和刮刷。

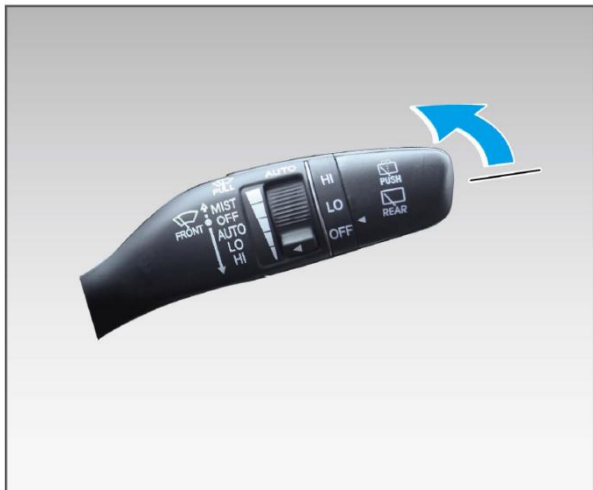
Pull back and hold the wiper control handle, and the front windshield washer starts to spray water, and the front wiper performs low-speed wiping at the same time. Release the wiper control handle and stop spraying water and wiping.

后雨刮

Rear wiper

后挡风玻璃洗涤

Rear windshield washer



向前推动雨刮控制手柄并保持住，后挡风玻璃洗涤器开始喷水，同时后雨刮进行低速刮刷，松开雨刮控制手柄后停止喷水和刮刷。

Push and hold the wiper control handle forward, and the rear windshield washer starts to spray water. At the same time, the rear wiper performs low-speed wiping. Release the wiper control handle to stop spraying water and wiping.

USB接口

USB Interface

USB接口只有当启动开关置于“ON”档或“ACC”档时才能工作。此接口可供手机充电使用。

The USB interface can work only when the Start switch is at "ON" or "ACC" position. This interface can be used for mobile phone charging.

副仪表台前部USB接口

Front USB interface of auxiliary dashboard



前部USB接口位于副仪表台上部储物格内。

The front USB interface is located in the upper storage compartment of the auxiliary dashboard.

副仪表台下部USB接口 *

USB interface at lower part of auxiliary dashboard*



下部USB接口位于副仪表台下部储物槽内。

The lower USB interface is located in the storage tank at the lower part of the auxiliary dashboard.

副仪表台后部USB接口

Rear USB interface of auxiliary dashboard



后部USB接口位于副仪表台后部出风口下方。

The rear USB interface is located below the rear air outlet of the auxiliary dashboard.



注意



Attention

- 不使用USB接口时，盖紧防尘盖。
- When the USB interface is not used, cover the

dust cover tightly.

- 请勿把金属异物插入接口内，以免短路而导致起火。
- Do not insert metal foreign objects into the interface to avoid fire caused by short circuit.
- USB接口只提供充电功能，充电最大电流为2.3A，请勿插入大电流用电器，以免引起火灾。
- The USB interface only provides charging function, and the maximum charging current is 2.3A. Do not insert high-current electrical appliances to avoid fire.



注意



Attention

- 插拔USB数据线时，插拔方向尽量保持与USB接口同一个方向不要倾斜，以免损坏USB接口。
- When plugging and unplugging the USB data cable, try not to tilt it in the same direction as the USB interface, so as not to damage the USB interface.

12V车载电源

12V on-board power supply

12V车载电源只有当启动开关置于“ON”档或“ACC”档时才能工作。

The 12V on-board power supply can work only when the Start switch is turned to "ON" or "ACC" position.

副仪表台前部车载电源

Front on-board power supply of auxiliary dashboard



前部12V车载电源位于副仪表台下部储物槽内。

The front 12V on-board power supply is located in the storage tank at the lower part of the auxiliary dashboard.



注意



Attention

- 不使用USB接口及车载电源时，盖紧防尘盖。

- When the USB interface and on-board power supply are not used, cover the dust cover tightly.
- 12V车载电源最大输出功率为120W，请勿插入大功率用电器，以免引起火灾。
- The maximum output power of the 12V on-board power supply is 120W. Do not insert high-power electrical appliances to avoid fire.
- 请勿让儿童使用或接触12V车载电源，以免发生触电。
- Do not allow children to use or contact the 12V on-board power supply to avoid electric shock.
- 请勿把金属异物插入电源接口内，以免因短路而导致起火。
- Do not insert metal foreign objects into the power interface to avoid fire caused by short circuit.
- 12V车载电源只作为取电使用，请勿将点烟器插入12V车载电源插座，以免因短路而引起火灾。
- The 12V on-board power supply is only used for power supply. Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the 12V on-board power socket to avoid fire caused by short circuit.

行车记录仪 *

Driving Recorder*

内存卡插入与取出

Insertion and Extraction of Memory Card



行车记录仪内存卡卡槽位于行车记录仪左侧，首次使用前请先确认卡槽内是否有内存卡。

The memory card slot of the vehicle travelling data recorder is located on the left side of the vehicle travelling data recorder. Please confirm whether there is a memory card in the card slot before the first use.

用一字起撬开行车记录仪左侧的堵盖即可看到内存卡槽的橡胶塞，拔出橡胶塞即可插拔内存卡，插卡时请将内存卡文字标识面朝上。插入卡后将橡胶塞重新装回，并将堵盖扣紧。

Pry up the plug on the left side of the vehicle travelling data recorder with a straight screwdriver to see the rubber plug of the memory card slot. Pull out the rubber plug to insert and pull out the memory card. When inserting the card, please make the text identification side of the memory card face upward. After inserting the card, reinstall the rubber plug and fasten the plug.

建议新卡先在“AI风行”APP行车记录仪的设置中进行格式化操作，行车记录仪支持内存为8G ~ 64G，内存卡速率等级要求Class10以上。

It is recommended that the new card be formatted in the settings of the vehicle traveling data recorder on the "AI Wind" APP. The vehicle traveling data recorder supports a memory of 8G ~ 64G, and the memory card rate is required to be above Class 10.

行车记录仪的操作

Operation of driving recorder

开启

ON

当启动开关置于“ACC”档或“ON”档时，行车记录仪开始工作，进入录像状态。

When the Start switch is turned to "ACC" or "ON" position, the vehicle travelling data recorder starts to work and enters the recording state.

关闭

OFF

当启动开关由“ACC”档或“ON”档转到“OFF”档时，行车记录仪自动关闭或延时关闭（延时时间可在设置菜单中选择）。

When the Start switch is turned from "ACC" or "ON" to "OFF", the vehicle travelling data recorder will be automatically turned off or delayed (the delay time can be selected in the setting menu).

行车记录仪的状态显示





Status display of vehicle travelling data recorder

行车记录仪录像状态在显示屏的状态栏上可以查看到。

The recording status of the vehicle travelling data recorder can be viewed on the status bar of the display screen.

具体含义如下：

Specific meanings:

	行车记录仪录像中 Driving recorder recording
	行车记录仪异常 Abnormal driving recorder
	存储卡异常 SD card abnormal
	存储卡满 SD card full

行车记录仪可通过“AI风行”APP进行操作。具体操作方式详见第五章“影音娱乐系统”中的“行车

记录仪”部分。

The vehicle traveling data recorder can be operated through the "AI Forthing" app. Please refer to "Driving Recorder" in Chapter V "Audio-visual Entertainment System" for specific operation methods.



禁止在驾驶车辆时，操作行车记录仪，以免分散注意力，造成意外事故发生。请在驾驶前做好各项设置。

Do not operate the vehicle traveling data recorder when driving the vehicle, so as not to distract your attention and cause accidents. Please properly set relevant items before driving.

空调系统

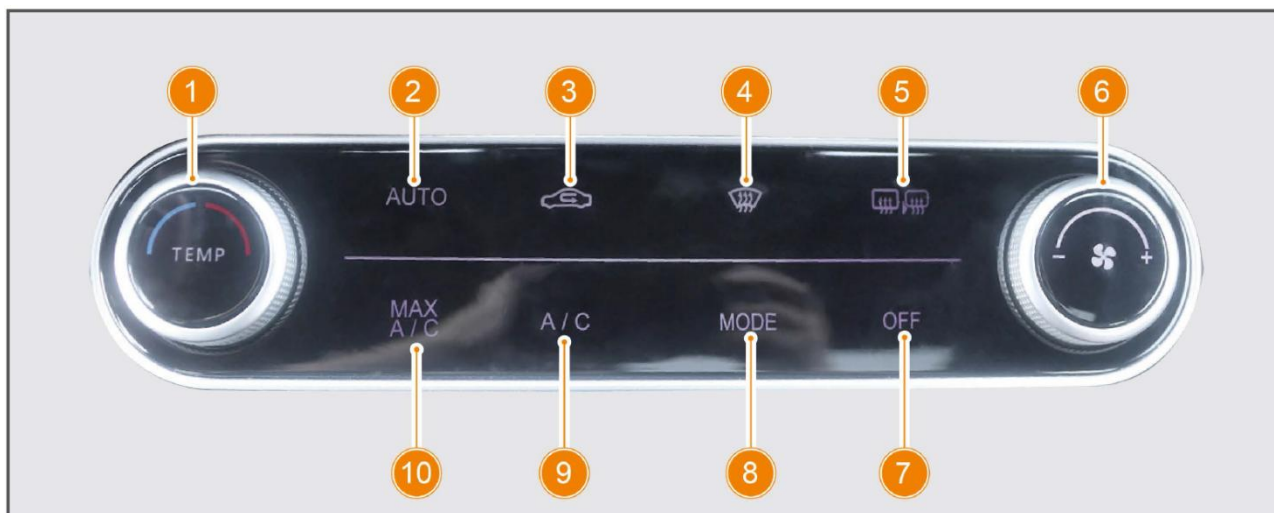
A/C System

自动空调

Automatic A/C

前空调触控面板

Front A/C touch panel



显示屏操作界面

Display screen operation interface



功能说明

Function description

1. 温度调节旋钮：旋转此旋钮可调节车内温度。
1. Temperature adjustment knob: Turn this knob to adjust the interior temperature.
2. AUTO按键：按下此键，空调系统从非自动状态进入全自动状态，空调系统会自动调节车内温度。
2. AUTO button: Press this button, the A/C system will enter the full-automatic state from the non-automatic state, and the A/C system will automatically adjust the interior temperature.

3. 内外循环切换按键：当路过烟尘较多的地区时，按下此键空气在车内循环，再次按下此键恢复到外循环模式。

3. Internal/external circulation switch button: When passing through a dusty area, press this button to circulate air in the vehicle, and press this button again to return to the external circulation mode.

4. 前除霜按键：按下此键开启或关闭前挡风玻璃除霜 / 除雾功能，开启后可清除前挡风玻璃上的雾气或凝霜。

4. Front defrosting button: Press this button to turn on or off the front windshield defrosting/defogging function. After this function is turned on, the fog or frost on the front windshield can be removed.

5. 后除霜按键：按下此键开启或关闭后挡风玻璃 / 外后视镜除霜功能。开启后可清除后挡风玻璃和外后视镜上的雾、霜及薄冰。如果开启后没有关闭，此功能会在10~20分钟后自动关闭。

5. Rear defrosting button: Press this button to turn on or off the rear windshield/exterior rearview mirror defrosting function. After opening, the fog, frost and thin ice on the rear windshield and exterior rearview mirrors can be removed. If it is not disabled after being enabled, this function will be automatically disabled after 10~20 minutes.

6. 风量调节旋钮：旋转此旋钮可调节出风口风量的大小，同时显示屏上会显示当前风量大小。

6. Air volume adjustment knob: Turn this knob to adjust the air volume of the air outlet, and the current air volume will be displayed on the display screen.

7. 空调系统（OFF）按键：按下此键可开启或关闭空调系统。

7. A/C system (OFF) button: Press this button to turn on or off the A/C system.

8. 吹风模式调节（MODE）按键：按下此键可选择吹风模式，显示屏上会显示所选定的模式。分别为：吹头、吹头 / 吹脚、吹脚、吹脚 / 除霜模式。

8. Blowing mode adjustment (MODE) key: Press this key to select the blowing mode, and the selected mode will be displayed on the display screen. They are respectively: head mode, head/foot mode, foot mode and foot/defrosting mode.

9. A/C按键：按下此键可开启或关闭空调制冷。

9. A/C button: Press this button to turn on or off the A/C refrigeration.

10. 最大制冷开关（A/C MAX）按键：按下此键进入最大制冷模式，风量最大，温度最低。

10. Maximum refrigeration switch (A/C MAX) button: Press this button to enter the maximum refrigeration mode, with the maximum air volume and the lowest temperature.

11. 空调温度调节：上下滑动可调节车内温度。

11. A/C temperature adjustment: Slide up and down to adjust the interior temperature.

12. PM2.5等级显示 *：部分车型可监测并显示PM2.5等级。

12. PM2.5 level display *: PM2.5 levels can be monitored and displayed for some models.

13. 负离子按键 *：部分车型可打开或关闭负离子净化功能。

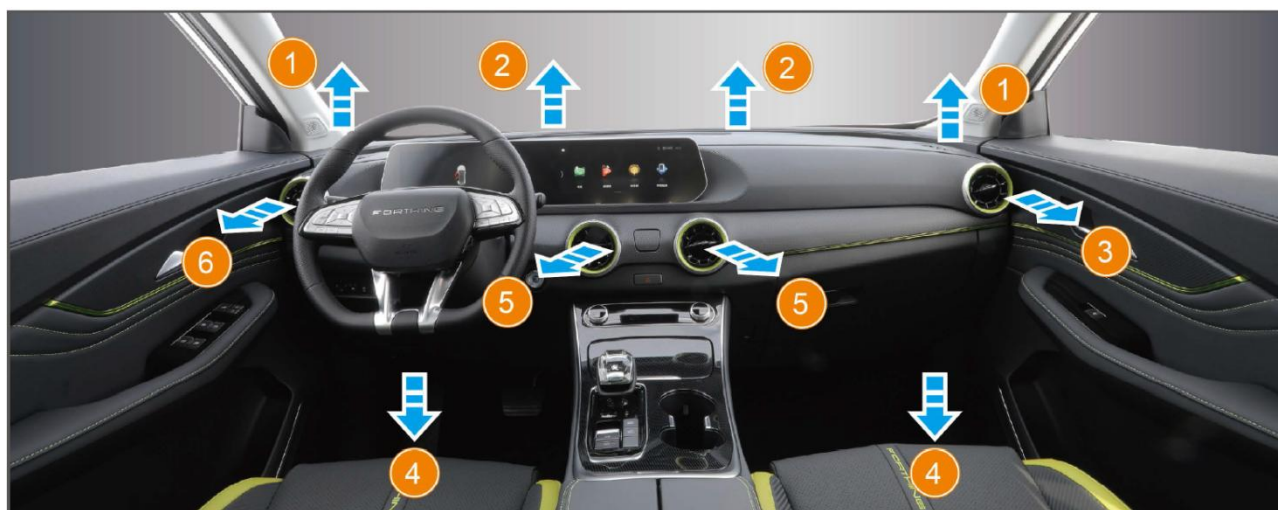
13. Anion button *: For some models, the anion purification function can be turned on or off.

出风口位置

Position of air outlet

前排出风口

Front vents



1. 侧风窗除雾出风口

1. Demisting outlet of side windshield

4. 前排脚部出风口

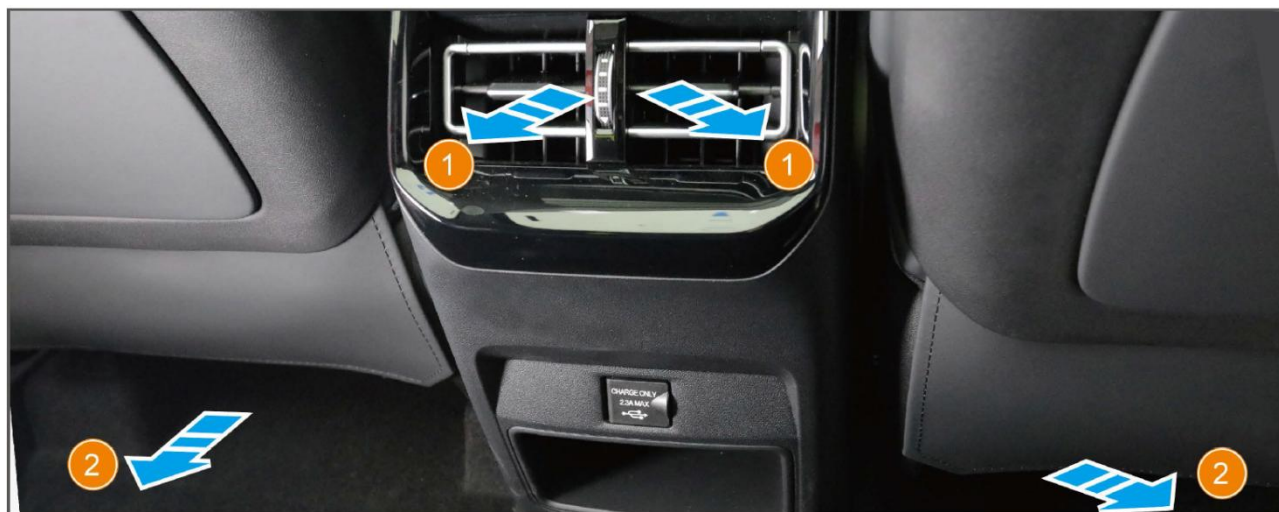
4. Front footwell vent

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 2. 前风窗除雾出风口 | 5. 中央出风口 |
| 2. Demisting outlet of front windshield | 5. Central Vents |
| 3. 右侧出风口 | 6. 左侧出风口 |
| 3. Right air outlet | 6. Left air outlet |

基本功能操作 Operation of basic functions

后排出风口

Rear air outlet



1. 后排中部出风口
1. Rear middle vent

2. 后排脚部出风口 *
2. Rear footwell vent*

气流和方向的调节

Adjustment of airflow and direction



顺时针旋转出风口开关旋钮可以关闭出风口，逆时针旋转打开出风口。上下、左右拨动出风口中部格栅可以改变风向。

Turn the air outlet switch knob clockwise to close the air outlet, and counterclockwise to open the air outlet. The air direction can be changed by moving the grille in the middle of the air outlet up and down, left and right.

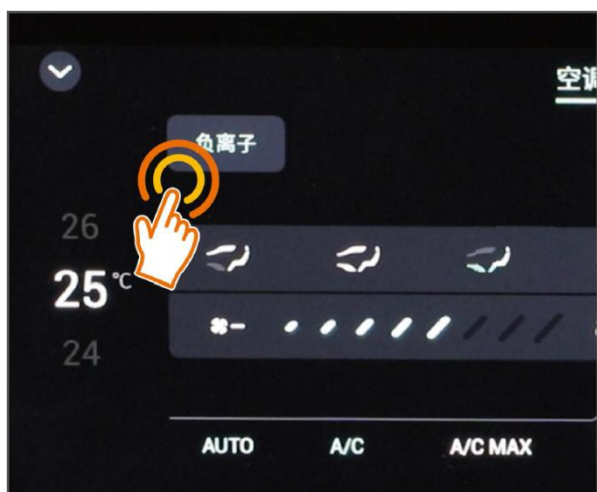


上下滚动滚轮可以打开和关闭后排出风口，上下、左右拨动出风口中部格栅可以改变风向。

Roll the roller up and down to open and close the rear air outlet, and move the grille in the middle of the air outlet up and down, left and right to change the air direction.

空气净化系统 *

Air purification system*



空气净化系统能快速消减空气中的有害化学气体及粉尘、细菌和挥发性有机化合物，减少异味，改善车内空气质量。同时，空气净化系统能检测空气质量，并通过显示屏进行空气质量显示，从而达到最佳的空气净化效果。

The air purification system can quickly reduce harmful chemical gases, dust, bacteria and volatile organic compounds in the air, reduce peculiar smell and improve the air quality in the vehicle. At the same time, the air purification system can detect the air quality and display the air quality through the display screen, so as to achieve the best air purification effect.

敬告用户	110
Notes to Users	110
主页	111
Homepage	111
第一页	111
Page 1	111
第二页	111
Page 2	111
下拉栏快捷菜单	113
Shortcut Menu of Drop-down Bar	113
空调设置	115
A/C Settings	115
自动空调	115
Automatic A/C	115
座椅设置 *	117
Seat Settings*	117
支持座椅加热、通风与按摩的车型	117
Models supporting seat heating, ventilation and massage	117
蓝牙电话	118
Bluetooth Phone	118
通话记录	118
Call history	118
通讯录	120
Contact list	120

拨号	120
Dial	120
多媒体	121
Multimedia	121
蓝牙音乐	121
Bluetooth music	121
USB音乐	123
USB Music	123
USB视频	125
USB video	125
收音机	127
Radio	127
用户个性化记忆 *	129
User Personalized Memory*	129
倒车雷达	131
Reversing Radar	131
手机互联	131
Mobile Phone Interconnection	131
连接方式	133
Connection mode	133
手机互联功能	133
G-link	133
特殊情况说明	134
Special circumstances	134
设置	135
Settings	135

通用设置	135
General settings	135
连接设置	136
Connect settings	136
车辆设置	137
Vehicle settings	137
系统设置	138
System settings	138

敬告用户

Notes to Users

1. 根据不同的车型集成专有设备及附件，您的车辆配置可能会与这些操作说明中的描述略有不同，请以实车为准。

1. According to different models, special equipment and accessories are integrated. Your vehicle configuration may be slightly different from the description in these operating instructions. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

2. 到达一定的车速后，屏幕上可能不会出现音响系统的某些功能，这不是功能发生故障，而是为了遵守国家或地区的相应法规。

2. After the vehicle reaches a certain speed, some functions of the audio system may not appear on the screen. This is not a function failure, but to comply with the corresponding national or regional regulations.

3. 对音响系统的复杂操作会有几秒的响应时间，请耐心等待，无序操作会导致后台的处理缓慢。

3. The complex operation of the audio system will have a response time of several seconds. Please wait patiently. Disorderly operation will lead to slow processing in the background.

4. 驾驶员在使用本音响系统时必须遵守相关的交通法规。请将车辆停靠在安全的地方操作，比如输入、变更目的地等。

4. The driver must comply with relevant traffic regulations when using the audio system. Please park the vehicle in a safe place for operation, such as entering and changing the destination.

5. 使用本音响系统前，请仔细阅读所有相关说明，若未遵循说明而造成的损害，将不能享受保修服务。

5. Before using the audio system, please read all relevant instructions carefully. Any damage caused by failure to follow the instructions will not be covered by the warranty.

6. 为避免短路，请勿让本装置与水接触。请勿在装置内放置或遗留任何金属物质。

6. To avoid short circuits, do not allow the unit to come into contact with water. Do not place or leave any metal in the device.

7. 请勿自行打开本装置进行维修，如需维修，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

7. Do not open the device for maintenance by yourself. If maintenance is required, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

8. 当发动机关闭时，请勿长时间使用本娱乐系统，否则会耗尽12V低压蓄电池中的电量。

8. Do not use the entertainment system for a long time when the engine is shut down; otherwise, the 12V low-voltage battery will be depleted.

9. 请勿使用尖利物体接触、摩擦或敲击屏幕。

9. Do not touch, scratch or hit the screen with sharp object.

主页

Homepage

可在第一页任意空白处向左滑动进入第二页，也可以在第二页向右滑动返回第一页。

You can slide to the left in any space on the first page to enter the second page or slide to the right on the second page to return to the first page.

第一页

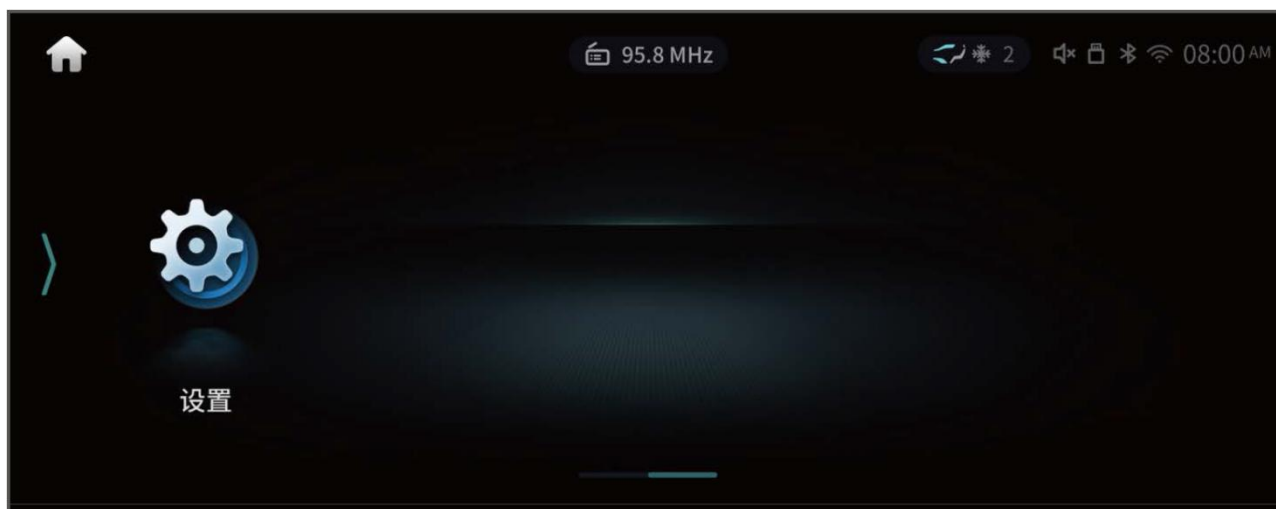
Page 1



05

第二页

Page 2



1. 主页按键：任何界面点击此键可返回主页。




1. Homepage button: Click this button on any interface to return to the homepage.





2. 媒体信息区：显示当前所播放的媒体信息，点击可快速进入正在播放媒体的应用。

2. Media information area: It displays the currently played media information. Click it to quickly enter the application that is playing media.

3. 状态区：

3. Status zone:

图标 Icon	说明 Description
	显示空调状态，从左至右分别为风向、温度（不支持双温区的自动空调车型）。 It displays the A/C status, including wind direction and temperature from left to right (automatic A/C models that do not support dual temperature zones).
	WiFi状态 WiFi status
	USB连接 USB connection

图标 Icon	说明 Description
	蓝牙连接 Bluetooth connection
	热点打开 Hotspot on
	静音 Mute
	行车记录仪状态 *，从左至右分别表示行车记录仪录像中，行车记录仪异常，存储卡异常，存储卡满。 Vehicle traveling data recorder status *: from left to right, it indicates that the vehicle traveling data recorder is abnormal, the memory card is abnormal, and the memory card is full.

4. 应用区：点击可进入相应应用，不同配置车型可能会有不一样的应用，软件更新也将有可能改变应用的内容与位置，以您的实车为准。

4. Application area: Tap it to enter the corresponding application. Different models with different configurations may have different applications, and software updates may also change the content and location of the application, subject to your real vehicle.

下拉栏快捷菜单

Shortcut Menu of Drop-down Bar

在多媒体显示屏顶端进行下划操作即可唤出下拉栏快捷菜单。

The shortcut menu in the drop-down bar can be activated by scribing at the top of the multimedia display screen.



1. 左侧快捷开关控制区：

1. Left shortcut control area:

静音：点击可开启 / 关闭静音模式。

Mute: Tap it to turn on/off the mute mode.

蓝牙：点击可开启 / 关闭蓝牙功能开关，长按可进入蓝牙设置界面。

Bluetooth: Tap it to turn on/off the Bluetooth function switch, and long press it to enter the Bluetooth setting interface.

WiFi: 点击可开启 / 关闭WiFi功能开关, 长按可进入WiFi设置界面。

WiFi: Tap it to enable/disable the WiFi function switch, and long press it to enter the WiFi setting interface.

白天模式 / 黑夜模式: 点击可切换白天 / 黑夜模式。

Day/night mode: Tap it to switch between day/night mode.

2. 音量 / 亮度快速调节:

2. Quick adjustment of volume/brightness:

多媒体音量调节: 左右划动可快速调节多媒体音量大小。

Multimedia volume adjustment: Swipe left and right to quickly adjust the multimedia volume.

蓝牙电话音量调节: 左右划动可快速调节蓝牙电话音量大小。

Bluetooth phone volume adjustment: Swipe left and right to quickly adjust the volume of the Bluetooth phone.

显示屏亮度调节: 左右划动可快速调节显示屏亮度大小。

Display brightness adjustment: Swipe left and right to quickly adjust the brightness of the display.

3. 右侧快捷开关控制区:

3. Right shortcut control area:

待机: 点击可进入显示屏待机界面。

Standby: Click to enter the standby interface of the display screen.

一键降温: 点击可开启 / 关闭一键降温功能。

One-click cooling: Click to enable/disable the one-click cooling function.

后视镜折叠：点击可折叠 / 展开后视镜。

Rearview mirror folding: Tap it to fold/unfold the rearview mirror.

前雷达 *：点击可开启 / 关闭前雷达。

Front radar *: Click it to turn on/off the front radar.

座椅调节：点击可进行座椅加热 / 通风 / 按摩调节。

Seat adjustment: Tap it to adjust the seat heating/ventilation/massage.

4. 多媒体控制区：点击可暂停 / 播放当前播放的媒体内容、切换上下曲。

4. Multimedia control area: Tap it to pause/play the currently played media content and switch between up and down tracks.

空调设置

A/C Settings

点击空调面板任意界面或点击空调状态栏图标可进入空调设置。

Click any interface of the A/C panel or click the icon in the A/C status bar to enter the A/C setting.

自动空调

Automatic A/C



1. 空调温度调节。

1. A/C temperature setting.

2. 可开闭负离子、节能、加热功能，具体以您的车型配置为准。

2. The functions of anion, energy saving and heating can be switched on and off, depending on the configuration of your model.

3. 切换空调与座椅（通风 / 加热 / 按摩）设置 *。

3. Switch between A/C and seat (ventilation/heating/massage) settings *.

4. 显示空气质量状态 *。

4. Displays the air quality status *.

5. 风向显示区，您也可以点击不同位置切换风向。

5. In the wind direction display area, you can also click on different positions to switch the wind direction.

6. 空调风量与风向调节区。

6. Air volume and direction regulation area of air conditioner.

7. 空调虚拟按键，从左至右依次为自动模式、A/C空调制冷开关、A/C MAX最大制冷模式、空调开关、内外循环开关、前除霜开关、后除霜开关。

7. A/C virtual buttons: automatic mode, A/C refrigeration switch, A/C MAX refrigeration mode, A/C switch, internal/external circulation switch, front defroster switch and rear defroster switch from left to right.

座椅设置 *

Seat Settings*

通过空调设置页面可进入座椅设置页面。

The seat setting page can be entered through the A/C setting page.

支持座椅加热、通风与按摩的车型

Models supporting seat heating, ventilation and massage



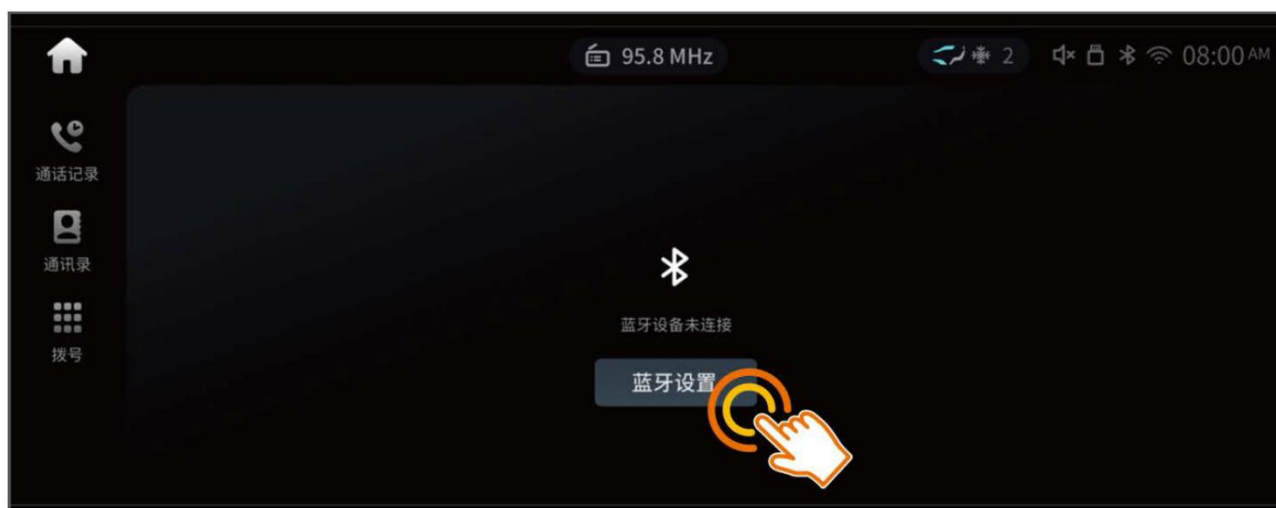
1. 通风加热与座椅按摩切换。
1. Switch between ventilation and heating and seat massage.
2. 座椅通风开闭及档位调节。
2. Seat ventilation opening and closing and gear adjustment.
3. 座椅加热开闭及档位调节。
3. Seat heating on/off and gear adjustment.
4. 座椅按摩开闭及强度调节。
4. Seat massage and intensity adjustment.
5. 座椅按摩模式选择。
5. Selection of seat massage mode.

蓝牙电话

Bluetooth Phone

在系统主界面点击【电话】图标可进入蓝牙电话界面。

Click the [Telephone] icon on the main interface of the system to enter the Bluetooth telephone interface.

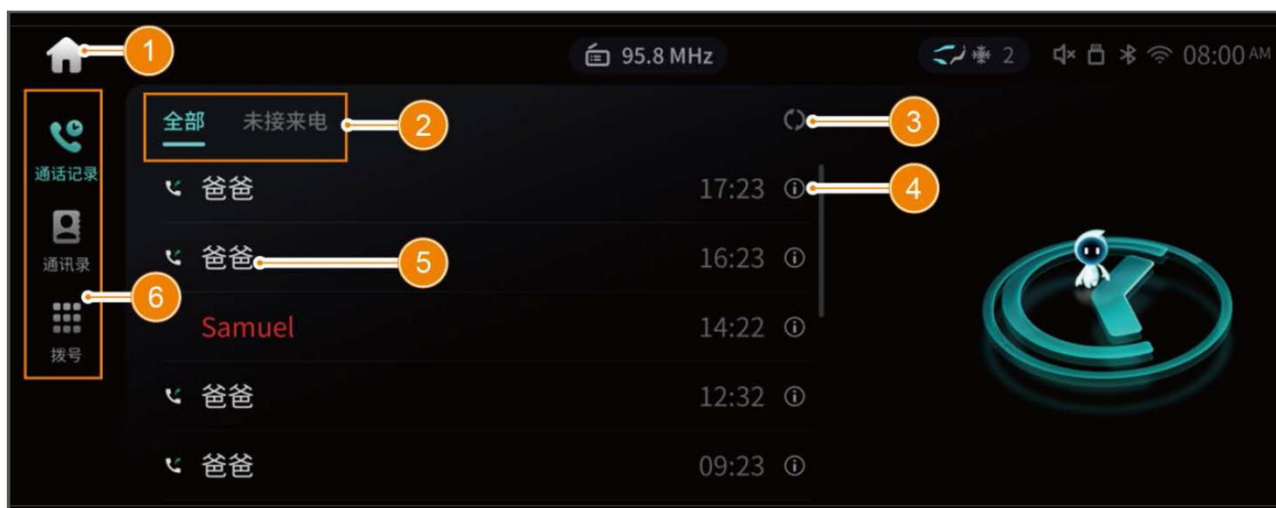


在蓝牙功能未开启时界面显示蓝牙设置，点击此处可开启蓝牙功能，同时提示连接手机蓝牙，连接成功后可进行其他操作。

When the Bluetooth function is not enabled, the interface displays the Bluetooth settings. Click here to enable the Bluetooth function, and at the same time, it prompts to connect the Bluetooth of the mobile phone. Other operations can be carried out after successful connection.

通话记录

Call history



1. 返回主页：点击返回显示屏主界面。

1. Return to the homepage: Click to return to the main interface of the display screen.

2. 通话记录切换查看：点击可切换全部 / 未接来电记录。

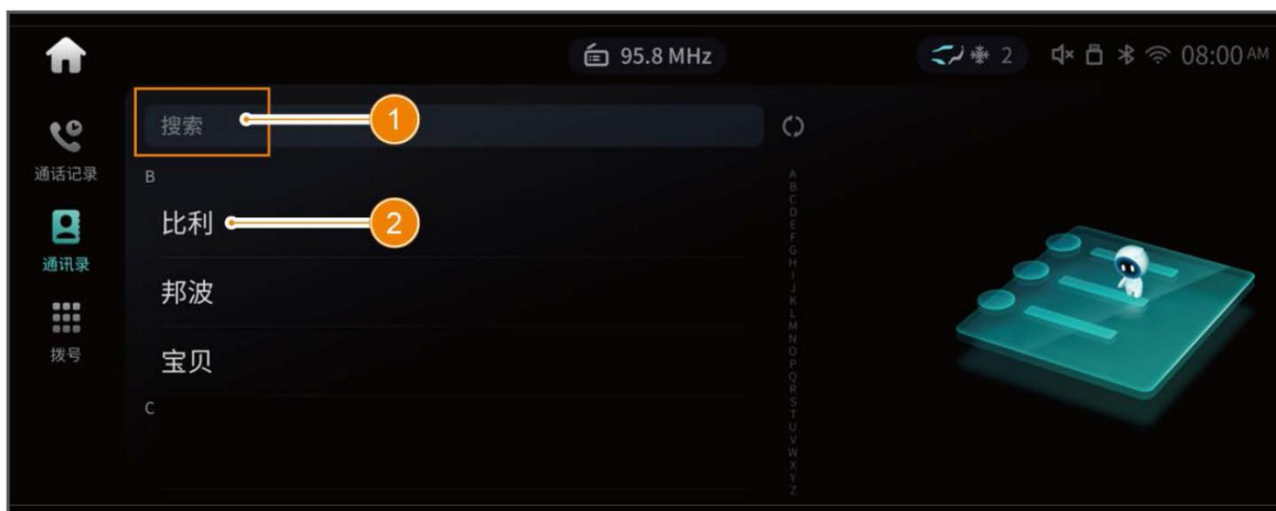
2. Switching view of call records: Click to switch all/missed call records.

3. 同步功能：点击可同步手机通话记录及通讯录信息。

3. Synchronization function: Click to synchronize the phone call records and address book information.
4. 联系人详情: 点击可查看联系人通话记录详情。
4. Contact details: Click to view the details of the contact's call records.
5. 通话记录列表: 上下划动可查看通话记录, 点击任一联系人即可拨打电话。
5. Call record list: You can view the call record by scrolling up and down, and click any contact to make a call.
6. 切换查看通话记录、通讯录、拨号, 并使用相关功能。
6. Switch to view call records, address book and dialing, and use relevant functions.

通讯录

Contact list



1. 通讯录搜索功能：点击输入关键词即可搜索已保存的联系人。

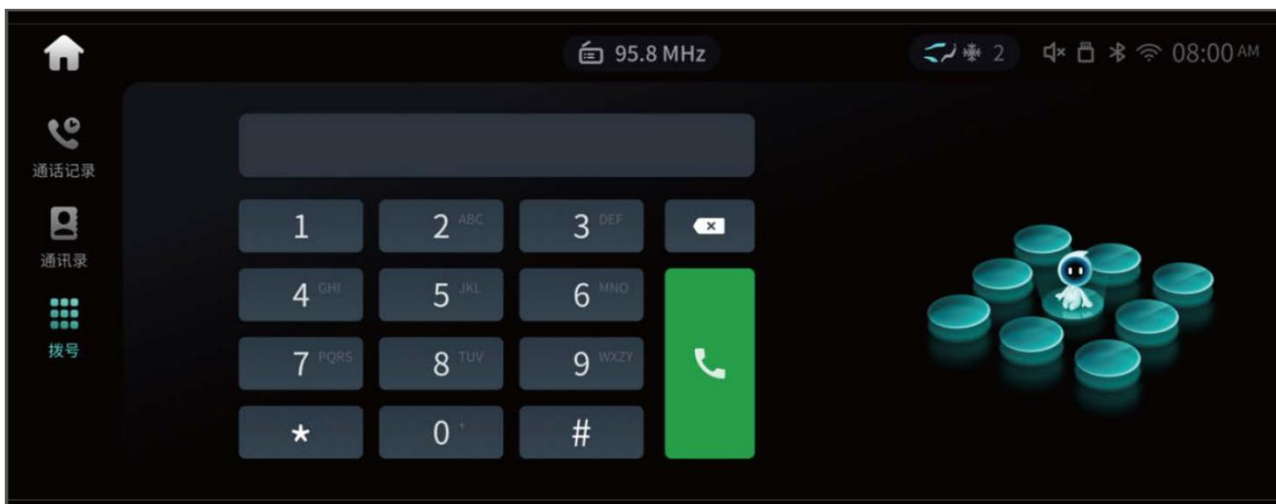
1. Address book search function: Click and enter keywords to search for saved contacts.

2. 通讯录列表：上下划动可查看通讯录，点击任一联系人即可拨打电话。

2. Address book list: You can view the address book by scrolling up and down, and click any contact to make a call.

拨号

Dial



拨号键盘：支持直接拨号、拨号搜索联系人功能。

Dial keyboard: support direct dialing and dialing to search for contacts.

多媒体

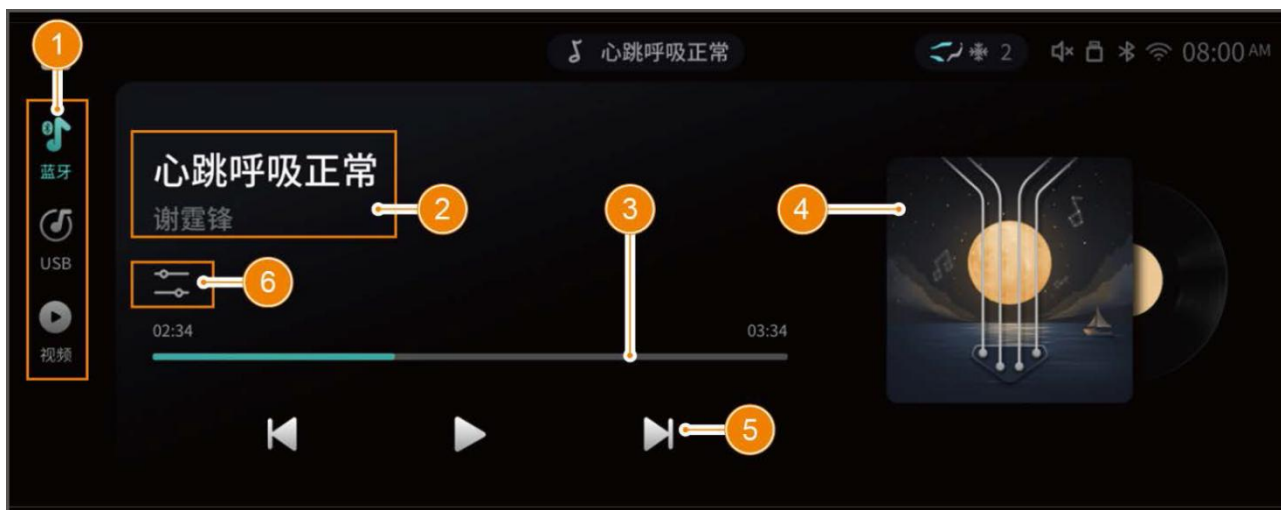
Multimedia

在系统主界面点击【多媒体】图标可进入多媒体界面。

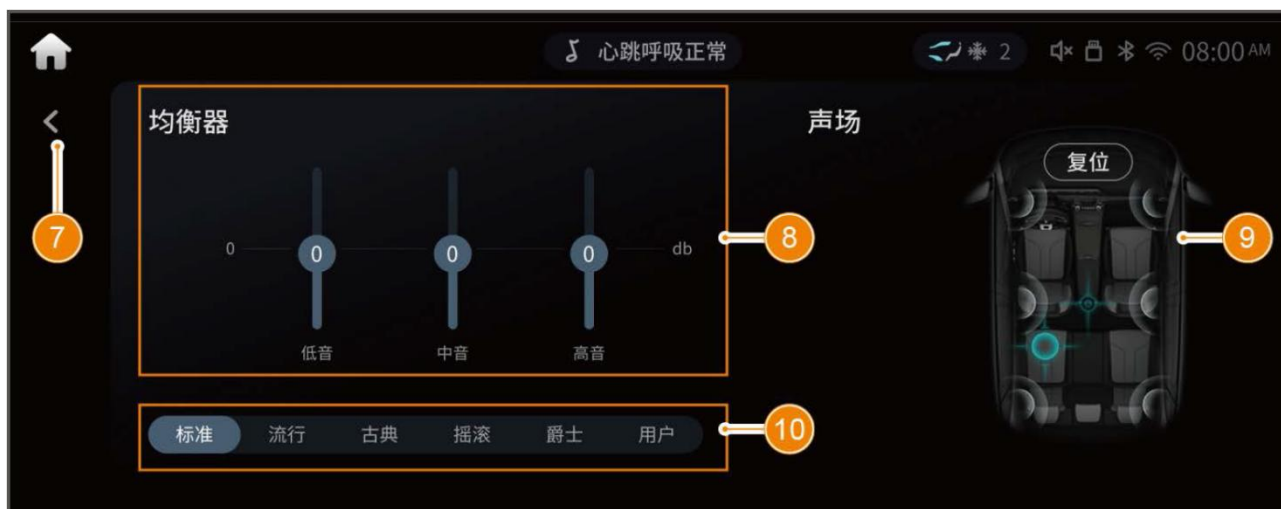
Click the [Multimedia] icon on the main interface of the system to enter the multimedia interface.

蓝牙音乐

Bluetooth music



05





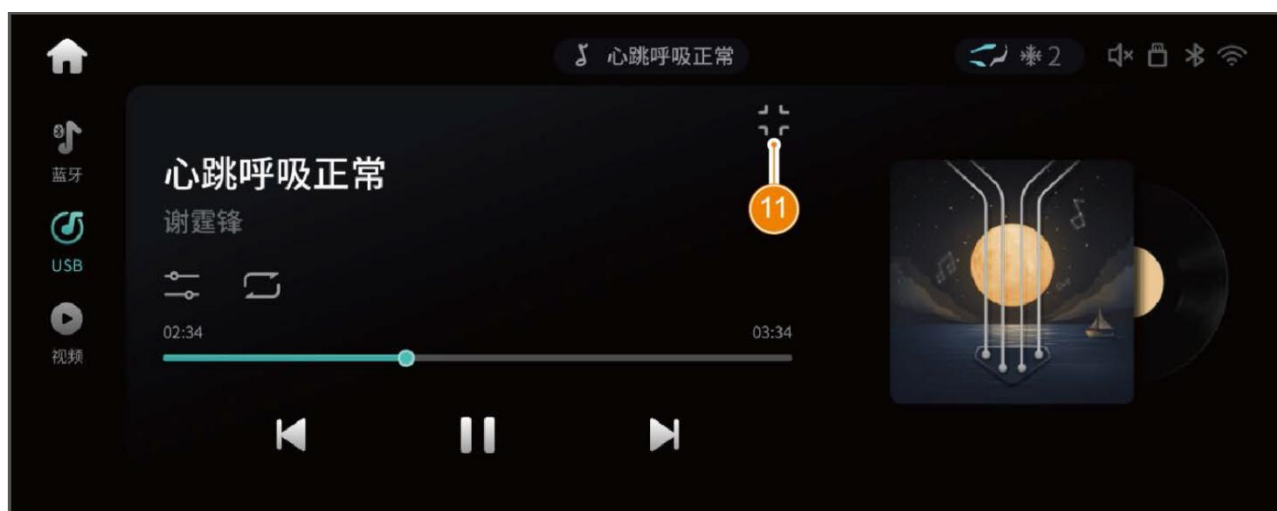
1. 点击可切换查看使用蓝牙音乐、USB音乐、USB视频功能。
1. Tap to switch among Bluetooth music, USB music and USB video functions.
2. 蓝牙音乐信息显示区域：显示歌曲名、歌手名。
2. Bluetooth music information display area: display song name and singer name.

3. 进度条控制：左右划动调节播放进度条。
3. Progress bar control: Swipe left and right to adjust the play progress bar.
4. 蓝牙音乐信息显示区域：显示歌曲专辑图片 / 默认图片。
4. Bluetooth music information display area: display song album pictures/default pictures.
5. 蓝牙音乐播放控件：播放 / 暂停、上一曲 / 下一曲切换。
5. Bluetooth music play control: play/pause, previous/next song switching.
6. 音效调节：点击可进入音效调节界面。
6. Sound effect adjustment: Tap it to enter the sound effect adjustment interface.
7. 返回：点击从音效调节界面返回蓝牙音乐界面。
7. Return: Click on the sound effect adjustment interface to return to the Bluetooth music interface.
8. 均衡器调节：上下划动调节低音、中音、高音效果。
8. Equalizer adjustment: adjust the bass, mid-tone and high-tone effects by scrolling up and down.
9. 声场调节：划动光标可对声场进行调节，将光标拖至中心处即可进行声场复位。
9. Sound field adjustment: The sound field can be adjusted by moving the cursor, and the sound field can be reset by dragging the cursor to the center.
10. 均衡器模式：点击即可切换均衡器模式。
10. Equalizer mode: Click to switch the equalizer mode.
11. 返回主页：点击可返回多媒体显示屏主界面。
11. Return to homepage: Tap it to return to the main interface of the multimedia display screen.
12. 蓝牙设置：未连接蓝牙时，想进入蓝牙音乐可点击蓝牙设置进行蓝牙连接操作。
12. Bluetooth setting: When Bluetooth is not connected, you can click Bluetooth setting to connect Bluetooth if you want to enter Bluetooth music.

USB音乐

USB Music



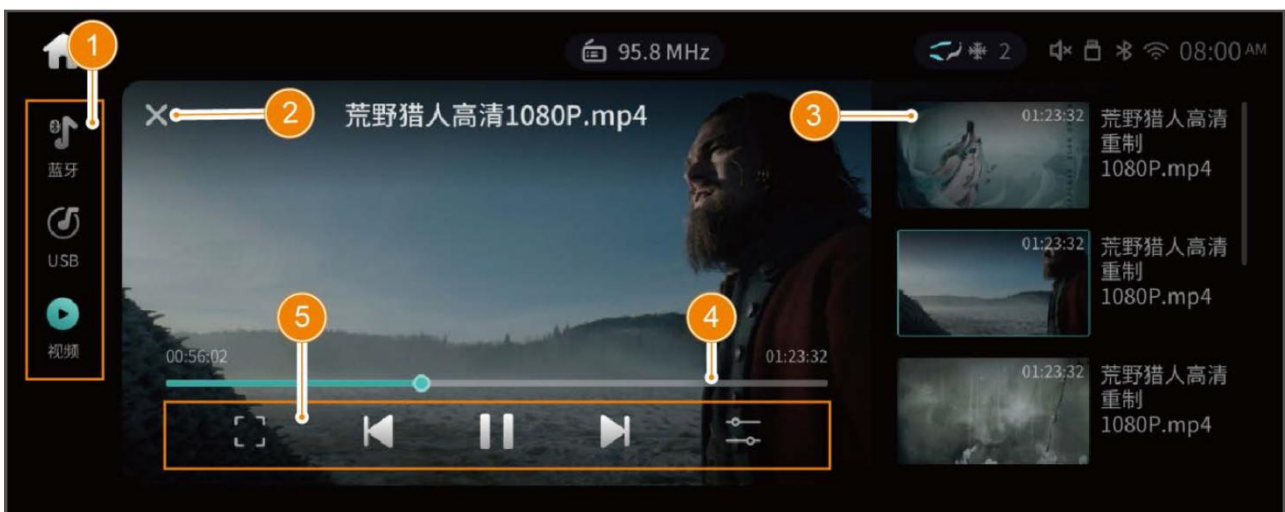


1. 可切换查看使用蓝牙音乐、USB音乐、USB视频功能。
1. You can switch to Bluetooth music, USB music and USB video functions.
2. USB音乐信息显示区域：显示歌曲名、歌手名。
2. USB music information display area: display song name and singer name.
3. 全屏显示：点击可全屏显示USB音乐信息。
3. Full-screen display: Tap it to display USB music information in full screen.
4. 列表切换：点击可对音乐播放列表 /USB文件夹列表进行切换显示。
4. List switching: Click to switch the music playlist/USB folder list.

5. 音乐列表：可上下划动查看列表，点击音乐文件即可进行播放。
5. Music list: You can scroll up and down to view the list, and click the music file to play it.
6. 播放全部：点击可播放当前列表全部音乐文件。
6. Play All: Tap it to play all music files in the current list.
7. USB音乐播放控件：播放 / 暂停、上一曲 / 下一曲切换。
7. USB music play control: play/pause, previous/next song switching.
8. 进度条控制：左右划动调节播放进度。
8. Progress bar control: Swipe left and right to adjust the play progress.
9. 循环模式切换：点击切换单曲循环 / 列表循环 / 随机播放模式。
9. Cycle mode switching: Click to switch single cycle/list cycle/random play mode.
10. 音效调节：点击进入音效调节界面。
10. Sound effect adjustment: Tap it to enter the sound effect adjustment interface.
11. 收起全屏：点击可收起全屏显示状态。
11. Fold full screen: Click to fold the full screen display status.

USB视频

USB video







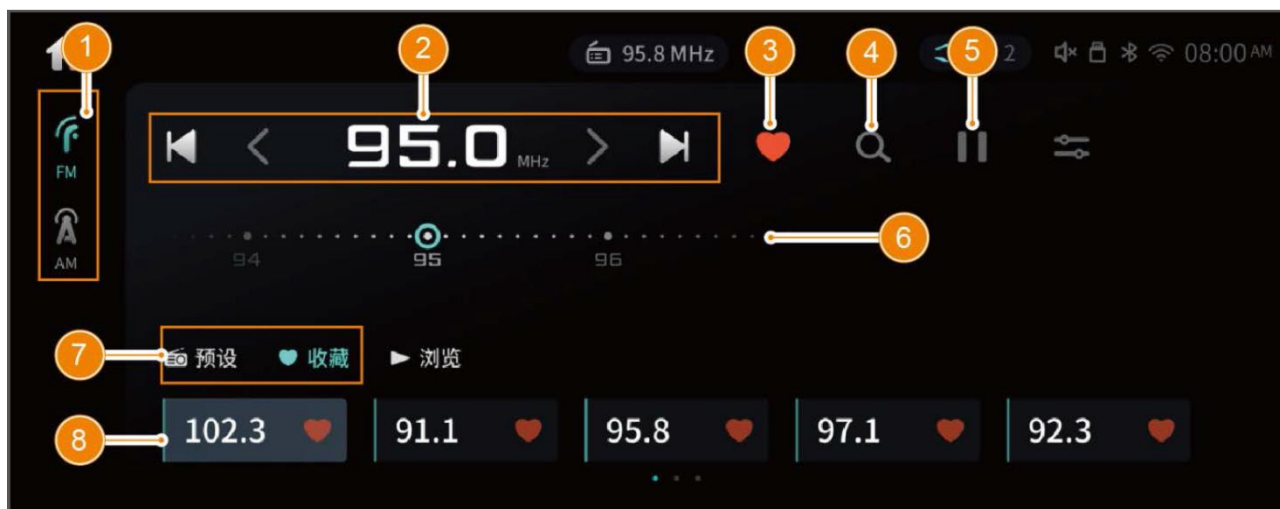
1. 可切换查看使用蓝牙音乐、USB音乐、USB视频功能。
1. You can switch to Bluetooth music, USB music and USB video functions.
2. 关闭视频：点击可关闭当前播放视频。
2. Close video: Click to close the current video.
3. 视频播放列表：可上下划动查看列表，点击列表中的视频可进行播放。
3. Video play list: You can scroll up and down to view the list, and click the video in the list to play.
4. 进度条调节：左右划动进度条可调节视频播放进度。
4. Progress bar adjustment: Swipe the progress bar left and right to adjust the video playing progress.
5. USB视频播放控件：全屏播放、播放 / 暂停、上一个 / 下一个视频切换、音效调节。
5. USB video play control: full screen play, play/pause, previous/next video switching, sound effect adjustment.
6. 返回：点击返回到上一个界面。
6. Back: click to back to the last interface.
7. 视频播放区域：单击可唤出播放控件，双击可暂停 / 播放；左右划动可调节播放进度；屏幕左侧上下划动可调节视频播放亮度，屏幕右侧上下划动可调节视频播放音量。
7. Video play area: Click to call out the play control, and double click to pause/play; scroll left and right to adjust the play progress; scroll up and down on the left side of the screen to adjust the video play brightness, and scroll up and down on the right side of the screen to adjust the video play volume.
8. 收起全屏：点击可收起全屏显示状态。
8. Fold full screen: Click to fold the full screen display status.
9. 行车视频警告：在设置中打开行车视频警告后，车辆行驶过程中将无法显示视频画面，其他操作不受影响。
9. Driving video warning: After the driving video warning is turned on in the setting, the video screen will not be displayed during driving, and other operations will not be affected.

收音机

Radio

在系统主界面点击【收音机】图标可进入收音机界面。

Click the [Radio] icon on the main interface of the system to enter the radio interface.



1. FM/AM切换：点击切换FM/AM频段。

1. FM/AM switching: Click to switch FM/AM frequency bands.

2. 频道切换控件：从左至右分别为：切换列表上一个电台、当前播放电台信息、切换列表下一个电台。

2. Channel switching control: from left to right: switching the previous radio station in the list, currently playing radio station information, and switching the next radio station in the list.

3. 电台收藏：点击可收藏当前电台。
3. Add to favorites: Click to add the current radio station to favorites.
4. 电台搜索：点击可搜索电台。
4. Radio station search: Tap it to search radio stations.
5. 播放 / 暂停：点击可切换播放 / 暂停。
5. Play/Pause: Tap it to switch between play/pause.
6. 收音机频段条：左右划动可切换频段。
6. Radio frequency band bar: Swipe left and right to switch frequency bands.
7. 列表切换：点击切换预设电台 / 收藏电台列表。
7. List switching: Click to switch the preset radio station/Favorite radio station list.
8. 电台列表：显示预设电台 / 收藏电台列表。
8. Radio station list: display the preset radio station/favorite radio station list.

用户个性化记忆 *

User Personalized Memory*

在系统主界面向右划动可拉出用户个性化记忆界面，扫描界面左侧二维码即可登录，登录后显示您的用户名称及头像。您可以将常用的座椅、外后视镜位置信息保存至选中的个性记忆内。

Swipe the main interface of the system to the right to pull out the user personalized memory interface, scan the QR code on the left side of the interface to log in, and display your user name and avatar after logging in. You can save the commonly used seat and exterior rearview mirror position information to the selected personalized memory.





1. 个性记忆:

1. Personality memory:

A. 支持座椅、后视镜记忆，可保存至4个位置中的任意一个，使用时点击任意位置即可自动调整座椅。



A. It supports seat and rearview mirror memory, which can be saved to any of the 4 positions. Click any position to automatically adjust the seat during use.

B. 该记忆位置与车辆钥匙关联，通过识别您的车辆钥匙自动调整座椅。

B. This memory position is associated with the vehicle key and automatically adjusts the seat by identifying your vehicle key.

C. 座椅信息会在车速大于20km/h时自动保存至当前选中的位置。

C. The seat information will be automatically saved to the currently selected position when the vehicle speed is greater than 20km/h.

2. 个性记忆名称编辑：点击【】可自定义编辑个性记忆名称。
2. Edit personalized memory name: Click [] to customize and edit the personalized memory name.
3. 新增记忆：点击即可添加当前座椅信息至选择位置。
3. Add memory: Click to add the current seat information to the selected position.
4. 删除记忆：点击后可选择任意位置进行记忆信息删除。
4. Delete memory: Click to select any position to delete the memory information.
5. 保存记忆：点击后可对刚刚添加的个性记忆进行保存或对之前的个性记忆进行覆盖。
5. Save memory: Click to save the newly added personal memory or overwrite the previous personal memory.
6. 取消删除：点击可取消删除操作
6. Cancel deletion: Click to cancel the deletion operation

倒车雷达

Reversing Radar

挂倒档后，屏幕呈现如下界面：左侧画面为倒车影像，右侧画面为倒车雷达*，根据障碍物由远到近呈现绿、黄、红三个安全等级。

After the reverse gear is engaged, the screen displays the following interface: the left image is the reversing image, and the right image is the reversing radar*, which shows three safety levels of green, yellow and red from far to near according to the obstacle.



(* 车型配置不同摄像头数量不同)

(* The number of cameras varies depending on the vehicle model)

手机互联

Mobile Phone Interconnection

在系统主界面点击“手机互联”，连接手机后即可进入手机互联桌面。

Click "Mobile Phone Interconnection" on the main interface of the system to enter the mobile phone interconnection desktop after connecting the mobile phone.



连接方式

Connection mode

连接方式 Connection mode	连接方法 Connection method
USB连接 USB connection	<p>在系统主界面点击“手机互联”，进入界面后点击“点击下载手机APP”即可弹出APP下载二维码，扫码即可下载并安装“驾驶伴侣”应用。使用USB数据线连接显示屏与手机，“驾驶伴侣”会自动弹出，按照系统主界面提示操作即可连接成功。</p> <p>Click "Mobile Phone Interconnection" on the main interface of the system, and then click "Click Download Mobile Phone APP" to pop up the QR code for APP download. Scan the QR code to download and install the "Driving Partner" APP. Connect the display screen and mobile phone with a USB cable. The "Driving Companion" will pop up automatically. Follow the prompts on the main interface of the system to connect successfully.</p>
WiFi连接 WiFi connection	<p>在系统主界面点击“手机互联”，进入界面后点击“点击下载手机APP”即可弹出APP下载二维码，扫码即可下载并安装“驾驶伴侣”应用。手机打开热点，显示屏连接手机热点后，打开“驾驶伴侣”，按照系统主界面提示操作即可连接成功。</p> <p>Click "Mobile Phone Interconnection" on the main interface of the system, and then click "Click Download Mobile Phone APP" to pop up the QR code for APP download. Scan the QR code to download and install the "Driving Partner" APP. Turn on the hotspot of the mobile phone, connect the display screen to the hotspot of the mobile phone, turn on the "Driving Companion", and operate according to the prompts on the main interface of the system to successfully connect.</p>

05

手机互联功能

G-link



功能名称 Function name	功能描述 Function description
在线导航 Online navigation	<p>连接手机互联后可使用在线导航功能。</p> <p>The online navigation function can be used after the mobile phone is connected.</p>
QQ音乐 QQ Music	<p>QQ音乐在线音乐，点击即可使用（同步手机端应用，需要手机安装QQ音乐）。</p> <p>QQ Music Online Music, click to use it (synchronize with the mobile app, and install QQ Music on your mobile phone).</p>
喜马拉雅	<p>喜马拉雅在线电台，点击即可使用。</p>

Himalaya	Himalayan online radio, click to use.
本地音乐 Local music	读取 / 播放手机本地音乐，点击即可使用。 Read/play the local music of the mobile phone, and click to use it.
网络电台 Network radio station	点击可收听各地网络电台。 Click to listen to network radio stations in various places.
车载桌面 Vehicle-mounted desktop	点击可返回本地主界面。 Click to return to the local main interface.
电话 Telephone	功能同蓝牙电话。 The function is the same as that of Bluetooth phone.
对讲 Intercom	实时对讲功能，需要两台使用亿联手机互联的设备方可使用。 The real-time intercom function requires two devices interconnected by EasyConnection mobile phones.
个人中心 Personal	点击可在手机端进入个人中心，进行相关设置。 Click to enter the personal center on the mobile phone for relevant settings.
应用管理 Application management	手机互联投屏功能，点击添加手机应用，添加后可在显示屏上实现手机应用投屏。 Mobile phone interconnection screen projection function: Click to add a mobile phone application. After adding, the mobile phone application screen projection can be realized on the display screen.

特殊情况说明

Special circumstances

1. 为确保连接可靠性，使用WiFi连接方式连接时，请进入手机热点设置内，将AP频段由2.4Ghz设置成5.0Ghz。若手机不支持5.0Ghz频段，建议使用USB连接方式进行连接。

1. To ensure the connection reliability, when using WiFi connection, please enter the hotspot setting of the mobile phone and set the AP frequency band from 2.4Ghz to 5.0Ghz. If the mobile phone does not support the 5.0 GHz frequency band, it is recommended to use USB connection for connection.

2. 使用手机互联投屏功能时，若投屏屏幕显示不清晰，请进入手机“驾驶伴侣”APP，在驾驶伴侣设置中将屏幕映射编码方式由硬编码改为软编码。

2. When using the mobile phone interconnection screen projection function, if the screen projection is not clearly displayed, please enter the mobile phone "Driving Partner" APP, and change the screen mapping coding mode from hard coding to soft coding in the driving partner setting.

设置

Settings

在系统主界面点击【设置】图标可进入设置界面。

Click the [Settings] icon on the main interface of the system to enter the setting interface.

通用设置

General settings



1. 点击可切换查看并调节通用设置、连接设置、车辆设置、系统设置。

1. Click to switch to view and adjust general settings, connection settings, vehicle settings and system settings.

2. 通用设置包括：显示、声音、音效调节。

2. General settings include: display, sound and sound effect adjustment.

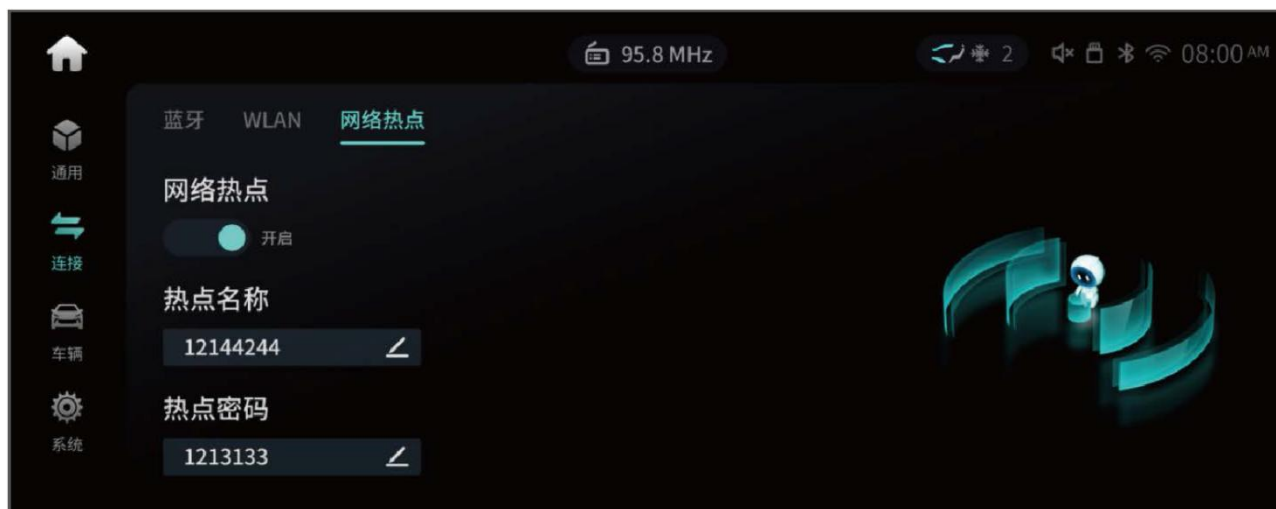
模块 Module	包含功能 Included functions
显示 Display	屏幕亮度、日夜模式、行车时视频警告。 Screen brightness, day and night mode, video warning during driving.
声音 Sound	媒体音量、电话音量、按键提示音。 Media volume, telephone volume, key tone.
音效调节 Sound effect adjustment	均衡器、声场。 Equalizer, sound field.

(* 为部分车型支持)

(* Supported for some models)

连接设置

Connect settings

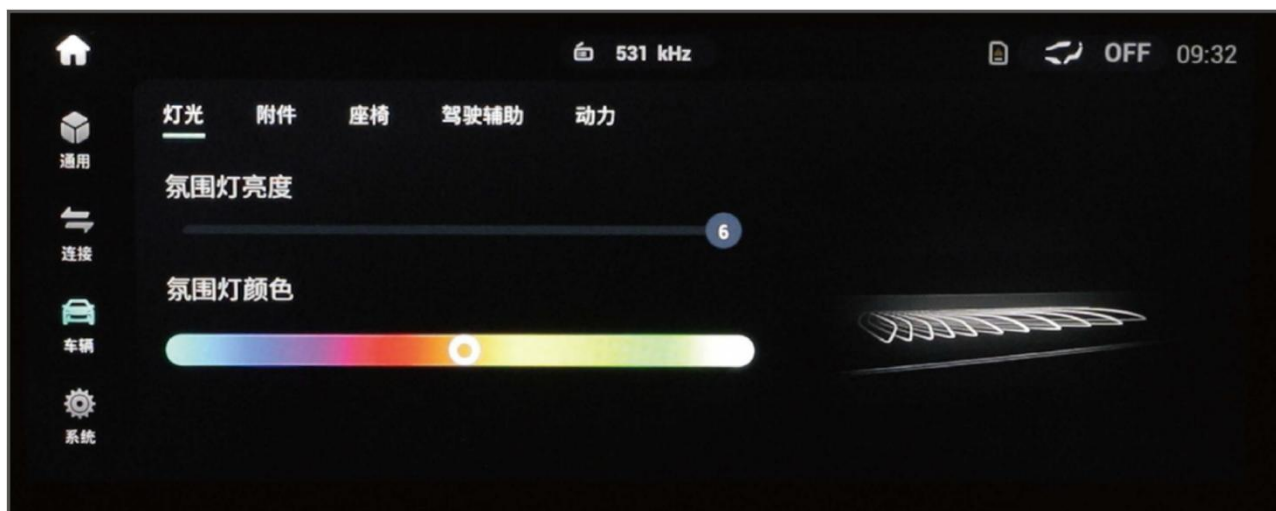


连接设置包括：蓝牙、WLAN、网络热点。

Connection settings include: Bluetooth, WLAN and network hotspot.

车辆设置

Vehicle settings



车辆设置包括：灯光 *、附件、驾驶辅助 *、座椅 *、动力设置。

Vehicle settings include: lighting *, accessories, driving assistance *, seats * and power settings.

模块 Module	包含功能 Included functions
灯光 * Lighting*	氛围灯亮度调节、氛围灯颜色调节。 Adjust the brightness and color of the atmosphere light.
附件 Attachment	后视镜自动折叠、尾门最大开启角度调节、大灯高度调节、遥控锁车反馈、遥控关窗设置、倒车后视镜下翻、转向模式设置、制动模式设置、方向盘按键自定义。 Automatic folding of rearview mirrors, adjustment of maximum opening angle of liftgate, adjustment of headlight height, feedback of remote locking, remote window closing setting, turning down of reversing rearview mirrors, steering mode setting, braking mode setting and steering wheel button customization.
附件 - 方向盘按键自定义 Attachment-Steering Wheel Button Customization	自定义方向盘按键功能，可选择待机、静音、拍照功能，默认为待机功能。 Customize the steering wheel button functions, including standby, mute and photographing. The default is standby.
座椅 * Seat*	座椅加热自动开启、座椅加热自动开启温度调节、座椅通风自动开启、座椅通风自动开启温度调节、便利上下车。 The seat heating, seat heating, seat ventilation and seat ventilation are automatically turned on, and the temperature adjustment is automatically turned on, which is convenient for getting on and off.
驾驶辅助 * Driver assist*	变道辅助设置、开门预警系统设置、后方横穿预警系统设置、远光灯自动控制开关、前方碰撞预警系统设置、车道偏离预警系统设置。 Lane change assist setting, door opening warning system setting, rear crossing warning system setting, high beam automatic control switch, front collision warning system setting, lane departure warning system setting.
动力	能量回收等级设置、舒适停车开关、行人报警开关。

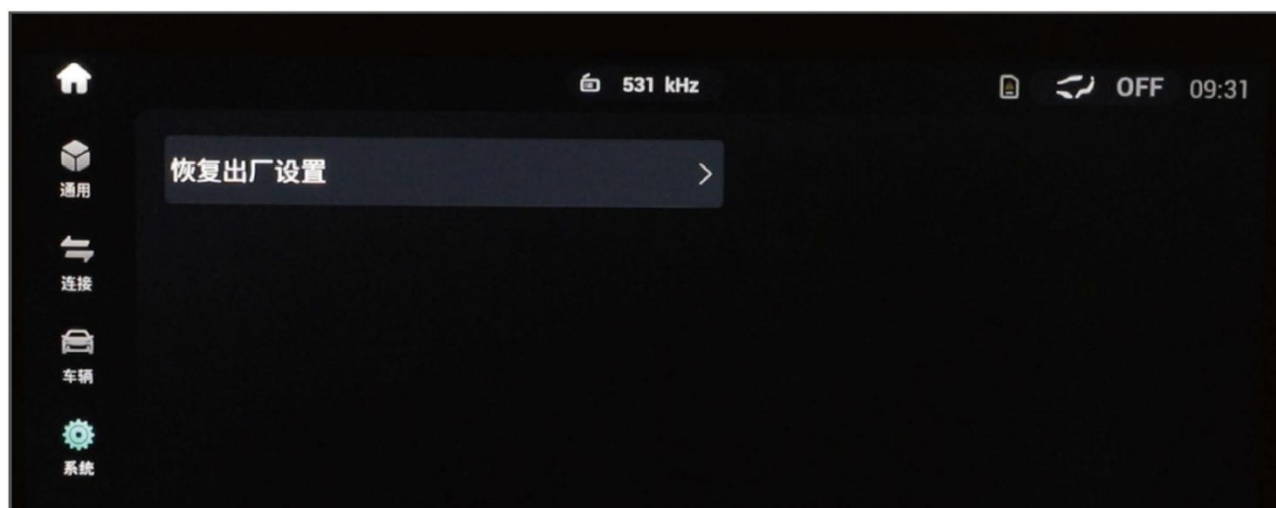
Power	Energy recovery level setting, comfort parking switch, pedestrian alarm switch.
-------	---

(* 为部分车型支持)

(* Supported for some models)

系统设置

System settings



系统设置有恢复出厂设置功能。

The system is provided with the factory reset function.

储物装置 140

Storage Device 140

车门储物槽 140

Door storage slot 140

仪表台储物盒 140

Storage box in dashboard 140

中央扶手箱 140

Central armrest box 140

副仪表台储物 141

Storage of Auxiliary Instrument Panel ... 141

手套箱 142

Glove box 142

座椅背部刊物袋 143

Magazine back of seat back 143

杯架 143

Cup holder 143

眼镜盒 143

Glasses case 143

其它装置 144

Other Devices 144

遮阳板 144

Sun Visor 144

梳妆镜 144

Vanity mirror 144

手机支架 145

Mobile phone bracket 145

顶部拉手 145

Top handle 145

挂钩 146

Hook 146

卷收式遮物帘 147

Retractable curtain 147

储物装置

Storage Device

车门储物槽

Door storage slot



前、后车门内饰板上设有车门储物槽，可放置水杯等物品。

The interior trim panels of the front and rear doors are provided with door storage slots for storing water cups and other articles.

中央扶手箱

Central armrest box



按压中央扶手箱前部锁扣，左右两侧扶手自动开启。

Press the front lock catch of the central armrest box, and the left and right armrests will open automatically.

仪表台储物盒

Storage box in dashboard



仪表台设有储物盒，拉动凸舌可以打开，推回可关闭。

The dashboard is equipped with a storage box, which can be opened by pulling the tongue and closed by pushing it back.



中央扶手箱内有通风口，转动开关即可打开或关闭通风口。

There is a vent in the central armrest box. Turn the switch to open or close the vent.

副仪表台储物

Storage of Auxiliary Instrument Panel

副仪表台上部储物格

Upper storage compartment of auxiliary instrument panel



副仪表台上部设有储物格，可存放手机等物品。按压储物格开启按键，可打开储物格盖板，关闭时需要按压盖板直至听到“咔哒”声。

The upper part of the auxiliary dashboard is equipped with a storage compartment for storing mobile phones and other items. Press the storage compartment opening button to open the storage compartment cover plate. When closing, press the cover plate until a "click" sound is heard.

副仪表台下部储物槽

Storage groove at lower part of auxiliary instrument panel



副仪表台下部设有储物槽，可存放手机、钥匙等小物品。

便利性装置 Convenience device

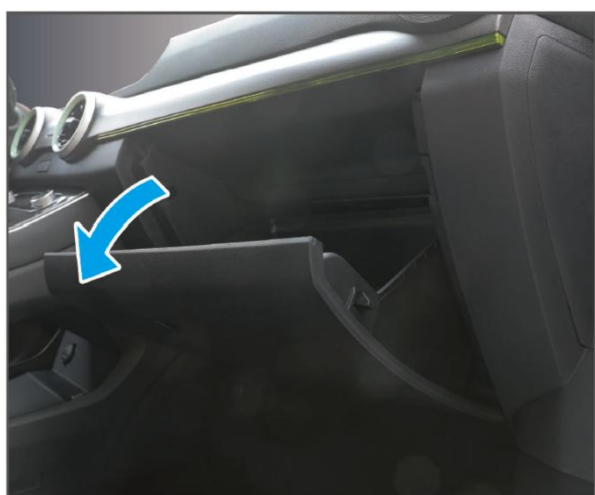
副仪表台后部储物槽

Rear storage groove of auxiliary instrument panel



手套箱

Glove box



手套箱位于仪表台右侧，可存放随车文件和资料。向外拉动手套箱拉手可打开，向前推回可关闭。

The glove box is located on the right side of the dashboard and can store the documents and data delivered with the vehicle. Pull the glove box handle outward to open it, and push it forward to close it.

座椅背部刊物袋

Magazine back of seat back



刊物袋位于前排排座椅背部，用于放置杂志，纸巾等小型物品。

The periodical pocket is installed on back of the front seats. It is used to place small objects such as magazines and paper.

杯架

Cup holder

前排乘客杯架

Front passenger cup holder



后排乘客杯架

Rear passenger cup holder



杯架可放置茶杯、饮料瓶等物品，方便旅行时使用。

The cup holder can hold tea cups, beverage bottles and other items for easy use during travel.

眼镜盒

Glasses case



眼镜盒可用来存放眼镜，按压眼镜盒前端即可缓慢打开，推回即可关闭。

The glasses case can be used to store glasses. Press the front end of the glasses case to slowly open it, and push it back to close it.

其它装置

Other Devices

遮阳板

Sun Visor



将遮阳板向下翻转可遮挡正面阳光。如需遮挡侧面阳光，先将左 / 右侧支撑杆从扣夹上脱开，然后将遮阳板转向侧面。

Turn the sun visor downward to block the front sunlight. To block the side sunlight, disengage the left/right support rod from the clip, and then turn the sun visor to the side.

梳妆镜

Vanity mirror



遮阳板内侧配备有梳妆镜。下翻遮阳板，将梳妆镜盖板往左 / 右推开即可使用。部分车型配有LED补光灯推开盖板自动点亮，关闭盖板后熄灭。

The sun visor is equipped with a vanity mirror

on the inside. Turn down the sun visor and push the vanity mirror cover to the left/right for use. Some models are equipped with LED fill lights, which automatically light up when the cover plate is pushed open, and go out after the cover plate is closed.

手机支架

Mobile phone bracket



仪表台中部设有手机支架接口，方便在行车过程中使用。

The middle part of the dashboard is provided with a mobile phone bracket interface, which is convenient for use during driving.

顶部拉手

Top handle



顶部拉手可供需要时支撑身体。

The top handle is available to support the body when needed.



注意



Attention

请勿在顶部拉手上悬挂重物或对顶部拉手施加过

大的力以防止其损坏。

Do not hang heavy objects on the top handle or apply excessive force to the top handle to prevent it from being damaged.

便利性装置 Convenience device

挂钩

Hook

仪表台挂钩

Dashboard hook



手套箱左侧设计有仪表台挂钩，按压凹槽展开，按压凸筋收回。

The left side of the glove box is designed with a dashboard hook, which can be unfolded by pressing the groove and retracted by pressing the rib.

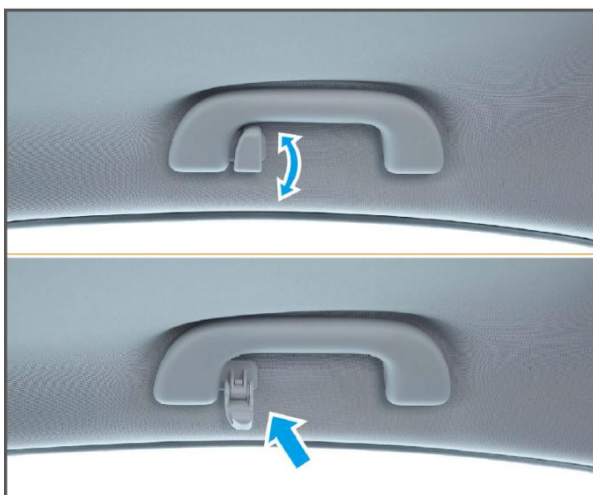
请勿在衣帽挂钩上悬挂衣架或其他坚硬物体。侧面帘式安全气囊展开时，这些物品可能会被弹出并导致乘客受到伤害。

Do not hang hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. When the side curtain airbag deploys, these items may be ejected and cause injuries to passengers.

06

衣帽挂钩

Clothes hook



后排右侧顶部拉手配有衣帽挂钩。

The top handle on the right side of the rear seat is equipped with a clothes hook.



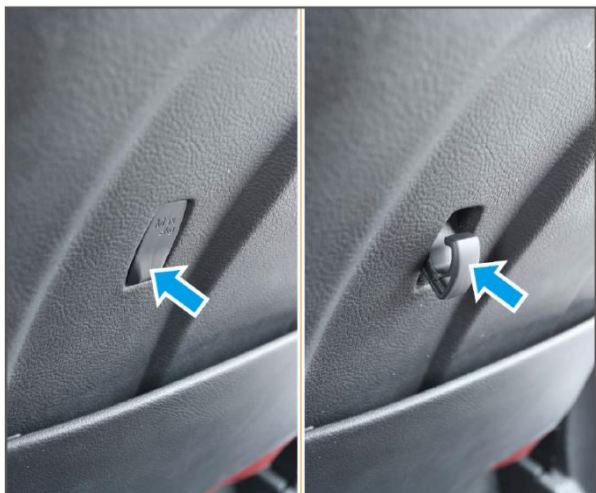
注意



Attention

座椅背部挂钩

Seat back hook



前排座椅背面设有挂钩供乘客使用。

There are hooks on the back of the front seats for passengers to use.



挂钩的最大承载重量为3千克，请勿悬挂超重物品。

The maximum load capacity of the hook is 3 kg. Do not hang overweight objects.

卷收式遮物帘

Retractable curtain

安装与拆卸

Installation and Removal



1. 将卷收式遮物帘两头向中间按压收缩后卡在车辆固定卡槽上。安装好后晃动一下检查是否安装到位。

1. Press both ends of the retractable curtain toward the middle and retract it, and then clamp it on the fixing slot of the vehicle. After installation, shake it to check whether it is installed in place.

2. 拆卸步骤，按照安装步骤逆向操作。

2. The removal steps are reverse to the installation steps.

展开与收回

Unfolding and retracting



1. 拉开布帘把手，将两侧卡脚卡入侧围

1. Pull open the curtain handle and clip the clips on both sides into the side wall.

对应的卡槽，即可展开卷收式遮物帘。

The corresponding slot can be used to unfold the retractable curtain.

2. 收回步骤，按照展开步骤逆向操作。

2. Retract the step and follow the deployment step in the reverse direction.



注意



Attention

卷收式遮物帘为装饰性部件，起到遮蔽行李箱的作用，为保证您的安全，请勿在其上放置任何物品。

The retractable curtain is a decorative component, which can cover the trunk. To ensure your safety, do not place anything on it.

启动车辆 152**Start the Vehicle 152**

启动开关模式 152

Start Switch Mode 152

启动车辆动力系统 152

Start the vehicle power system 152

智能钥匙低电量启动 153

Smart key low battery start 153

车辆未能启动 153

Start failure of vehicle 153

换挡操作 154**Gear Shift Operation 154**

档位介绍 154

Gear introduction 154

驾驶操作 155

Driving operation 155

驾驶模式切换 156

Switching of driving mode 156

多模式动力系统 157

Multi-mode power system 157

跛行模式 160

Limp mode 160

驻车制动器 161**Parking Brake 161**

驻车制动器 (EPB) 开关 161

Parking brake switch (EPB) 161

自动驻车功能 (AUTO HOLD) 162

AUTO HOLD Function 162

添加燃油 163**Adding Fuel 163**

燃油要求 163

Fuel Requirements 163

打开和关闭加油口盖 163

Opening and closing the fuel filler cap .. 163

加注燃油 164

Refueling 164

驾驶建议 164**Driving Suggestions 164**

车辆磨合期 164

Vehicle running-in period 164

夜间行车 165

Driving at night 165

酒后驾车 166

Drunk driving 166

涉水行车 166

Driving through water 166

长途行车 167

Long-distance driving 167

雨天和湿滑路面行车 168

Driving on rainy and slippery roads 168

坡道和山区路面行车 169

Driving on ramps and mountainous roads
..... 169

冰雪路面行车 169

Driving on icy and snowy road 169

冬季驾驶 170

Driving in winter 170

电动助力转向 170

Electric Power Steering 170

牵引力控制 (TCS) 系统 171

Traction Control System (TCS) 171

制动辅助系统 171

Brake Assist System 171

制动辅助 (BA) 系统 171

Brake Assist (BA) System 171

制动优先 172

Brake priority 172

防抱死制动 (ABS) 系统 172

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 172

制动力分配 (EBD) 系统 172

Electronic Brake Force Distribution System
(EBD) 172

电子稳定控制 (ESP) 系统 173

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 173

制动系统合理使用建议 173

Suggestions on Reasonable Use of Brake
System 173

上坡起步辅助 (HHC) 系统 174

Hill Hold Control (HHC) System 174

陡坡缓降 (HDC) 系统 174

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 174

制动助力 175

Brake booster 175

制动踏板感调节 176

Brake pedal sensing adjustment 176

舒适停车 (CST) 系统 176

Comfortable Stopping (CST) System 176

泊车辅助系统 177

Parking assist system 177

简介 177

Introduction 177

泊车雷达系统 177

Parking radar system 177

探测范围 179

Detection range 179

倒车影像 181

Reversing Image 181

360°全景影像 * 183

360° panorama view * 183

定速巡航系统 194

Cruise control system 194

按键说明 194

Description of buttons 194

按键介绍	194	Function activation	200
Introduction to buttons	194	功能触发	201
定速巡航开启和暂停	195	Function triggering	201
Cruise control ON and PAUSE	195	系统中断	201
定速巡航功能恢复	195	System interrupted	201
Resumption of Cruise Control Function	195	远光灯自动控制 (IHC) *	202
改变设定的车速	196	Automatic High Beam Control (IHC) *	202
Change the set vehicle speed	196	功能开启	202
辅助驾驶 *	196	Function ON	202
Driver assistance *	196	功能触发	203
简介	196	Function triggering	203
Introduction	196	系统中断	203
前碰撞预警系统 (FCW) *	196	System interrupted	203
Forward collision warning system (FCW) *	196	侧后向辅助驾驶 *	204
功能开启	197	Lateral rear-facing driver assistance *	204
Function ON	197	传感器	204
功能触发	197	Sensors	204
Function triggering	197	报警灯	205
系统中断	198	Alarm lamp	205
System interrupted	198	变道辅助 (LCA) 系统	206
车道偏离预警系统 (LDW) *	200	Lane change assist (LCA) system	206
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) *	200	开门预警 (DOW) 系统	208
功能开启	200	Door open warning (DOW) test	208
Function ON	200	后方横穿预警 (RCTA) 系统	210
功能激活	200	Rear Crossing Alert (RCTA) System	210

启动车辆

Start the Vehicle

启动开关模式

Start Switch Mode



携带与车辆匹配的智能钥匙进入车内。

Carry the smart key matched with the vehicle into the vehicle.

OFF档：该档位是车辆关闭状态下的档位，启动开关指示灯熄灭。

OFF position: This position is the position when the vehicle is turned off, and the Start switch indicator goes out.

ACC档：当车辆处于“OFF”档时，不踩下制动踏板，按一下启动开关，指示灯为黄色，车辆切换到“ACC”档，此时影音娱乐系统等部分相关功能可以使用。

ACC position: With the vehicle powered OFF, press the Start switch without depressing the brake pedal, and the indicator will turn yellow. Switch the vehicle to ACC mode. At this time, the audio and video entertainment system and other related functions can be used.

ON档：当车辆处于“ACC”档时，不踩下制动踏板，按一下启动开关，指示灯为黄色，车辆切换到“ON”档，此时座椅加热等大多数电气设备可以使用。再次按下启动开关，车辆回到“OFF”档位置。

ON position: When the vehicle is at "ACC" position, do not depress the brake pedal, press the Start switch once, and the indicator will turn yellow. When the vehicle is switched to "ON" position, most electrical equipment such as seat heating can be used. Press the Start switch again, and the vehicle will

return to the "OFF" position.

START档：车辆启动后的档位。仅用于启动车辆动力系统，车辆启动后，启动开关指示灯熄灭。

START position: the gear after the vehicle is started. It is only used to start the vehicle power system. After the vehicle is started, the Start switch indicator goes out.

启动车辆动力系统

Start the vehicle power system

正常启动

Normal startup

携带有效的智能钥匙：

Carry the correct smart key:

1. 踩下制动踏板。

1. Press the brake pedal.

2. 当启动开关指示灯变为绿色时，按下启动开关，无需踩下加速踏板。

2. When the Start switch indicator turns green, press the Start switch without depressing the accelerator pedal.

3. 检查组合仪表READY指示灯点亮。

3. Check whether the READY indicator on the combination instrument is on.

说明：1. 踩住制动踏板，直到READY指示灯点亮。

Note: 1. Depress the brake pedal until the READY indicator illuminates.

2. READY指示灯表示车辆处于可行驶状态，此时您可以踩下制动踏板挂入D/R档后开始行驶。

2. The READY indicator indicates that the vehicle is ready for driving. At this time, you can depress the brake pedal and shift to D/R gear to start driving.

3. 如果READY指示灯闪烁，表示有车门未关好，请检查车门关闭情况。

3. If the READY indicator flashes, it indicates that a door is not closed properly. Please check the door closing condition.

4. 车辆准备好行驶时，发动机可能不会运行。纯电模式行驶的距离与动力电池电量及车辆驱动功率等因素有关。

4. The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready to travel. The driving distance in pure electric mode is related to factors such as power battery capacity and vehicle driving power.



注意



Attention

- 如果车外温度极低，此时动力电池处于不可用状态，必须等到条件改善后才能驾驶。在这种情况下，不能启动车辆，READY指示灯也不会点亮。如在极低温度的环境中用车，请优先选择室内环境停放。

- If the outside temperature is extremely low, the power battery is unavailable at this time, and you must wait until the conditions are improved before driving. In this case, the vehicle cannot be started and the READY indicator will not illuminate. If the vehicle is used in an extremely low temperature environment, please park it in an indoor environment first.

- 在极低温下动力电池的放电能力将大幅受限，为避免车辆停放后启动困难，请在停放车辆时保持动力电池有较高的电量。

- The discharging capacity of the power battery will be greatly limited at extremely low temperature. In order to avoid difficulty in starting the vehicle after parking, please keep the power battery high when parking the vehicle.

- READY指示灯点亮后车辆处于可行驶状态，不行驶时请确保车辆处于P档或N档。

- After the READY indicator lights up, the

vehicle is in a driving state. Please ensure that the vehicle is in P or N gear when not driving.

智能钥匙低电量启动

Smart key low battery start

当智能钥匙电量过低或无电量时，可以使用智能钥匙内部的机械钥匙打开车门，然后将智能钥匙放入前置杯架第一个杯座内（车前方向），踩下制动踏板的同时按下启动开关。

When the smart key battery is too low or there is no battery, you can use the mechanical key inside the smart key to open the door, then put the smart key into the first cup holder of the front cup holder (in the front direction of the vehicle), depress the brake pedal and press the Start switch at the same time.

车辆未能启动

Start failure of vehicle

1. 如果车辆READY指示灯没有点亮，表示可能有影响车辆启动的动力故障或启动条件不满足，请根据组合仪表提示，进行检查。

1. If the vehicle READY indicator does not illuminate, it indicates that there may be a power failure affecting the vehicle starting or the starting conditions are not met. Please check according to the prompts on the combination instrument.

(1) 组合仪表显示【电子防盗未通过】，请检查智能钥匙是否在车内且靠近前置杯架位置。

(1) The combination instrument displays [Electronic anti-theft failed]. Please check whether the smart key is in the vehicle and close to the front cup holder.

(2) 组合仪表提示【电量过低】或组合仪表无法点亮，表示12V低压蓄电池电量可能已用完，请尝试使用跨接方式启动车辆，详见第九章“应急自助处理”中的“跨接启动”。

(2) If the combination instrument prompts [low battery] or the combination instrument cannot be lit, it indicates that the 12V low-voltage battery may have run out. Please try to start the vehicle by jumping. See "Jump Start" in Chapter IX "Emergency Self-handling" for details.

(3) 组合仪表提示【动力系统故障】，请联系东风风行特约服务站对车辆动力系统进行检查。

(3) The combination instrument prompts [Powertrain Fault]. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing to check the vehicle powertrain.

2. 因车辆长期停放导致动力电池电量变低或耗尽，可能无法启动车辆，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

2. If the power battery becomes low or exhausted due to long-term parking of the vehicle, the vehicle may not be started. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

换挡操作

Gear Shift Operation



1. 电子换挡器
1. Electronic gear selector
2. P档按键
2. "P" gear button
3. 驾驶模式按键
3. Driving mode button

组合仪表会显示车辆所处的档位。

The instrument cluster will display the gear of the vehicle.

档位介绍

Gear introduction

P档（驻车档）

P gear (parking gear)

驻车或将车辆置于准备驾驶状态时使用该档位，通过按压面板上的P档按键可进入P档。挂入P档前务必完全停下车辆。

This gear is used when the vehicle is parked or placed in the ready-to-drive state. Press the P gear button on the panel to enter the P gear. Be sure to stop the vehicle completely before shifting to P gear.

D档（行车档）

D gear (driving gear)

只有在车辆启动状态下（组合仪表READY指示灯点亮）才能进入D档。向前行驶时使用此档位。

Only when the vehicle is started (the READY indicator on the combination instrument illuminates) can the D gear be engaged. Use this gear when driving forward.

R档（倒档）

R gear (reversing gear)

只有在车辆启动状态下（组合仪表READY指示灯点亮）才能进入R档。倒车时使用此档位。挂入R档前务必完全停下车辆。

Only when the vehicle is started (the READY indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates) can the gearshift lever enter the R gear. Use this gear when reversing. Be sure to stop the vehicle completely before shifting to R gear.

N档（空档）

N gear (neutral gear)

当车辆处于该档位时，混合动力总成无法输出动力，也不会提供辅助驻车。挂入N档前务必完全停下车辆。

When the vehicle is in this gear, the hybrid powertrain cannot output power and will not provide auxiliary parking. Be sure to stop the vehicle completely before shifting to N gear.

驾驶操作

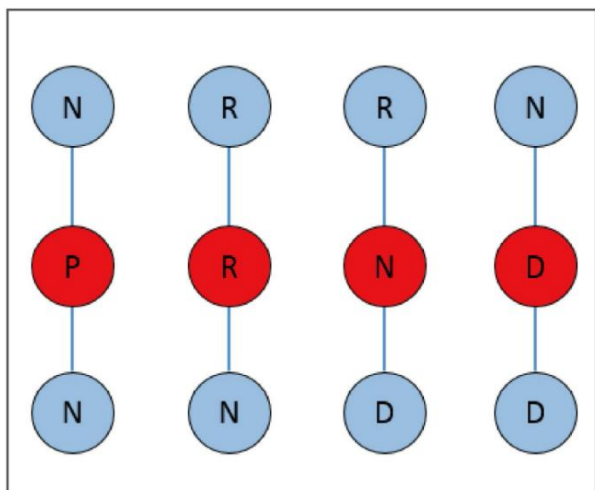
Driving operation

换档方法

Shifting method

每次换档操作后换档杆会回到中间位置，档位按照R-N-D顺序从前向后排布，中间位置为车辆当前实际档位。

After each gear shift, the gearshift lever will return to the middle position, and the gears will be arranged from front to back in the order of R-N-D, and the middle position is the current actual gear of the vehicle.



切换P档

Shift to P gear

待车辆完全停止后，按下P档按键进入P档。

After the vehicle completely stops, press the P gear button to enter the P gear.

切换R档

Shift to R gear

车辆启动后，踩下制动踏板，将换档杆向上推至R档位置。

After the vehicle is started, depress the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever upward to the R gear.

切换N档

Shift to N gear

P档 -N档： 踩下制动踏板，将换档杆向上或向下推至N档位置。

P-N: Depress the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever upward or downward to the N gear.

R档 -N档： 踩下制动踏板，向下推动换档杆到N档位置。

R-N: Depress the brake pedal and push the shift lever downward to the N gear.

D档 -N档： 踩下制动踏板，向上推动换档杆到N档位置。

D-N: Depress the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever upward to the N gear.

切换D档

Shift to D gear

车辆启动后，踩下制动踏板，向下推动换档杆到D档位置。

After the vehicle is started, depress the brake pedal and push the shift lever downward to the D gear.

换档条件说明

Description of Shifting Conditions

1. 车辆未启动时，档位只能在P档和N档之间切换。

1. When the vehicle is not started, the gear can only be shifted between P gear and N gear.

2. 退出P档需要推动换档杆并同时踩下制动踏板。

2. To exit the P gear, push the gearshift lever and depress the brake pedal at the same time.

3. 进入R档需要车辆启动后推动换档杆并同时需踩下制动踏板，并且不能同时踩下加速踏板。

3. To shift to R gear, push the gearshift lever and depress the brake pedal at the same time after the vehicle is started, and do not depress the accelerator pedal at the same time.

4. 进入D档需要车辆启动后推动换档杆并同时需踩下制动踏板，并且不能同时踩下加速踏板。

4. To shift to D gear, you need to push the gearshift lever and depress the brake pedal at the same time after the vehicle is started, and you cannot depress the accelerator pedal at the same time.

5. 当车速较低时，踩下制动踏板，可直接从D/R档进入到R/D档；当车速较高时，则会进入N档。

5. When the vehicle speed is low, depress the brake pedal to directly shift from D/R gear to R/D gear; when the vehicle speed is high, shift to N gear.

6. 只有当车速较低的时才允许进入P档，当车速较高时会进入N档，需在车辆停稳后再次按下P档。

6. Only when the vehicle speed is low, it is allowed to enter the P gear. When the vehicle speed is high, it will enter the N gear. Press the P gear again after the vehicle stops steadily.

7. 当车辆车速较高且未踩制动踏板换档时，

组合仪表上档位会闪烁并文字提示正确的换档操作。

7. When the vehicle speed is high and the brake pedal is not depressed for gear shifting, the gear on the combination instrument will flash and the text will prompt the correct gear shift operation.

驾驶模式切换

Switching of driving mode



车辆启动时驾驶模式默认为“ECO”模式，按压一次驾驶模式按键切换为“Normal”模式，再次按压此键切换为“SPORT”模式。可在ECO → Normal → SPORT → ECO之间循环切换。

When the vehicle is started, the driving mode is "ECO" by default. Press the driving mode button once to switch to the "Normal" mode, and press this button again to switch to the "SPORT" mode. It can be switched circularly between ECO → Normal → SPORT → ECO.



- 请确认驾驶模式按键上无物品堆放和长期按压。
- Please confirm that there are no articles stacked or pressed for a long time on the driving mode button.
- 切换驾驶模式需要按压此按键后松开再按，如一直按住不放或在此开关上堆放物品可能会导致误报该按键故障。
- To switch the driving mode, you need to press this button and then release it and press it again. If you keep pressing and holding it or stack objects on this switch, it may cause a false alarm of this button fault.

经济模式 (ECO)

Economical mode (ECO)

此时车辆在一个比较经济节能的状态下行驶，建议日常使用时优先选用此模式。

At this time, the vehicle is running in an economical and energy-saving state. It is recommended to choose this mode first during daily use.

常规模式 (Normal)

Normal mode (Normal)

更加注重驾驶的舒适性，属于在节能和性能之间平衡的一种模式。

More attention to driving comfort, a mode that balances energy saving and performance.

运动模式 (SPORT)

SPORT mode

提高车辆的动力性，带来更高级别的响应速度和驾乘感受。在此模式驾驶，需注意观察路况并与前车保持安全距离。适用于车辆较少的平坦路面。

Increase the vehicle power, resulting in a higher level of responsiveness and driving experience. When driving in this mode, observe the road conditions and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. It is suitable for flat roads with few vehicles.



车辆在急加速时可能会导致驱动轮打滑，在适宜的路面才能充分发挥加速性能。加速性能与天气情况、车辆载荷分布、载重情况、路面情况和操作习惯等因素有关。

When the vehicle accelerates rapidly, the driving wheels may slip, and the acceleration performance can be fully exerted only on a suitable road surface. Acceleration performance is related to weather conditions, vehicle load distribution, load conditions, road conditions, operation habits and other factors.

多模式动力系统

Multi-mode power system

车辆为串并联混合动力系统车型，具有纯电模式、串联模式、并联模式（发动机直接驱动）、能量回收四种驱动方式。

The vehicle is equipped with a series-parallel hybrid power system, which has four driving modes: pure electric mode, series mode, parallel mode (direct engine drive) and energy recovery.

纯电模式

Pure electric mode

车辆启动后，动力电池电量较高，当车辆处于停止或低速行驶时，发动机不启动，发电机不工作，仅依靠动力电池提供驱动力。

After the vehicle is started, the power battery is high. When the vehicle is stopped or running at a low speed, the engine does not start and the generator does not work, and only the power battery is used to provide driving force.

串联模式

Series mode

动力电池电量较低或需要较大负荷驱动车辆（如加速、上坡等）时，发电机启动发动机，与动力电池一起提供电能给驱动电机。当发电功率较大，超过驱动电机消耗时，多余的电量将会给动力电池充电，当发电功率不能单独满足驱动电机消耗时，动力电池放电给驱动电机提供电能。

When the power battery is low or needs to drive the vehicle with a large load (such as acceleration and uphill), the generator starts the engine and provides electric energy to the drive motor together with the power battery. When the generated power is large and exceeds the consumption of the drive motor, the excess power will charge the power battery. When the generated power cannot meet the consumption of the drive motor alone, the power battery will discharge to provide electric energy for the drive motor.

并联模式（发动机直接驱动）

Parallel mode (direct engine drive)

当车速较高时，发动机直接给车轮提供驱动力。当发动机动力超过车辆驱动需要时，多余的动力转换为电能存储在动力电池内；当发动机的动力不能满足车辆驱动需要时，由动力电池释放电能给驱动电机辅助驱动车辆，以达到更大的驱动力。

When the vehicle speed is high, the engine directly provides driving force to the wheels. When the engine power exceeds the vehicle driving demand, the excess power is converted into electric energy and stored in the power battery. When the engine power cannot meet the vehicle driving demand, the power battery releases electric energy to the drive motor to assist in driving the vehicle, so as to achieve greater driving force.

能量回收

Energy recovery

本车具有滑行能量回收和制动能量回收功能，可让驾驶更加节能经济。

This vehicle has the functions of coasting energy recovery and braking energy recovery, which can make driving more energy-saving and economical.

滑行能量回收

Coasting Energy Recovery

滑行能量回收能将车辆的动能转化为电能充

入动力电池中，在转化中不可避免有能量损失，最经济节能的方式就是车辆的能量都用来供车辆行驶。

The coasting energy recovery can convert the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electric energy and charge it into the power battery. There is inevitable energy loss in the conversion. The most economical and energy-saving way is that the energy of the vehicle is used for driving.



滑行能量回收具有制动减速的效果，可根据驾驶习惯，在显示屏中【设置】-【动力】-【能量回收等级】自行设置滑行能量回收为低、中、高三个档位中的某一个档位。该档位可自动记忆。在滑行能量回收弱的档位，将不进行能量回收（如需减速，踩下制动时也可进行制动能量回收）。

The coasting energy recovery has the effect of braking and deceleration. According to the driving habits, the coasting energy recovery can be set to any one of the three gears: low, medium and high in the [Settings]-[Power]-[Energy Recovery Level] on the display screen. This gear can be automatically memorized. In the gear with weak coasting energy recovery, energy recovery will not be carried out (if deceleration is required, braking energy recovery can also be carried out when the brake pedal is depressed).

制动能量回收

Braking Energy Recovery

当踩下制动踏板时，车辆会进入制动能量回收。制动能量回收一般会比滑行能量回收功率更大，能在较短时间内降低车速，并回收更多的能量充入动力电池中，使车辆获得较好的节能效果。

When the brake pedal is depressed, the vehicle will enter the braking energy recovery mode. The braking energy recovery is generally greater than the coasting energy recovery power, which can reduce the vehicle speed in a short time and recover more energy into the power battery, so that the vehicle can obtain a better energy-saving effect.

以下几种情况下可能不会进行能量回收：

Energy recovery may not occur under the following circumstances:

1. 动力电池电量较高，无法存储更多电量。

1. The power battery has a high power and cannot store more power.

2. 车速过低。该车型有蠕行功能，在车辆进入D/R档后，未踩下加速踏板，松开制动踏板，车辆会以较低车速行驶（同传统车的怠速行驶），无法进行滑行能量回收。

2. The vehicle speed is too low. This model has a creep function. After the vehicle is shifted to D/R gear, if the accelerator pedal is not depressed and the brake pedal is released, the vehicle will run at a low speed (the same as the idle speed of a traditional vehicle), and the coasting energy cannot be recovered.

3. 环境温度极低或温度过高，动力电池的充电能力严重受限。

3. The charging capacity of the power battery is seriously limited due to extremely low ambient temperature or excessively high temperature.

4. 车速较高，车辆的行驶阻力比较大，为保持良好的驾驶舒适性，较高车速不进行滑行能量回收。

4. The vehicle speed is relatively high, and the driving resistance of the vehicle is relatively large. In order to maintain good driving comfort, the coasting energy recovery is not carried out at a higher speed.

5. 处于滑行能量回收弱的档位。6. 正在使用定速巡航功能。

5. It is in a gear with weak coasting energy

recovery. 6. The cruise control function is in use.

7. 车辆行驶的安全辅助类系统激活（如ABS等）。

7. Activation of safety assist system (such as ABS, etc.) for vehicle driving.

8. 车辆有限制行驶的故障。如出现故障类指示，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

8. The vehicle has a fault that restricts driving. In case of any fault indication, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

当车速较高并且整车其他系统在合适的条件下，松开加速踏板，车辆会进入能量回收模式。能量回收时，车辆的动能通过驱动电机转化为电能，存储到动力电池内。发动机和发电机处于停止或无输出状态。

When the vehicle speed is high and other systems of the vehicle are under appropriate conditions, release the accelerator pedal, and the vehicle will enter the energy recovery mode. During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy through the drive motor and stored in the power battery. The engine and generator are stopped or have no output.

多模式动力系统会根据驱动负荷、踩加速踏板深度、动力电池电量和充放电能力、车速、空调等附件消耗自动选择合适的动力模式，使驾驶中保持更好的动力性、经济性和驾驶舒适性。

The multi-mode power system will automatically select the appropriate power mode according to the drive load, the depth of depressing the accelerator pedal, the power battery capacity, the charging and discharging capacity, the vehicle speed, the air conditioner and other accessory consumption, so as to maintain better power performance, economy and driving comfort during driving.

驾驶的经济性（油耗和续航里程）与驾驶习惯、路况、天气、载荷情况、开空调、开窗、胎压等因素有关，为降低油耗和延长续航里程，请轻踩加速踏板，避免急加速，车速较高时关小车窗。

The driving economy (fuel consumption and endurance mileage) is related to driving habits, road conditions, weather, load conditions, air conditioning, window opening, tire pressure and other factors. In order to reduce fuel consumption and extend the endurance mileage, please gently depress the accelerator pedal to avoid rapid acceleration, and close the window when the speed is high.

跛行模式

Limp mode

当车辆出现某些特定故障时，车辆的功率将受到限制，组合仪表上的限功率报警（跛行模式）指示灯会点亮，车辆最高车速将会降低。

When the vehicle has some specific faults, the power of the vehicle will be limited, the power limit alarm (limp mode) indicator on the combination instrument will illuminate, and the maximum speed of the vehicle will decrease.

启动要求

Starting requirements

1. 请勿在数次启动失败后继续启动，应尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

1. Do not continue to start the engine after several times of startup failure. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

2. 请勿推动或牵引车辆启动。

2. Do not push or tow the vehicle to start.

行驶要求

Driving requirements

1. 请勿超载或使驱动电机超载。

1. Do not drive in overload condition or make the drive motor overload.

2. 车辆行驶时请勿关闭启动开关。

2. Do not turn off the starting switch when the vehicle is running.

3. 车辆行驶时动力下降，请尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

3. If the power drops when the vehicle is

running, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

4. 请勿在容易撞到车辆底部的地形上行驶。

4. Do not drive on terrain that is easy to hit the bottom of the vehicle.

5. 行驶前确认组合仪表无故障报警信号。

5. Confirm that the combination instrument has no fault alarm signal before driving.

6. 当组合仪表上提示动力电池电量过低时，请勿长距离驾驶。

6. Do not drive for a long distance when the combination instrument prompts that the power battery is too low.

停车或驻车

Parking or hold

停车时，将车辆挂入P档，同时拉起EPB开关。

When parking, shift the vehicle to P gear and pull up the EPB switch at the same time.

驻车制动器

Parking Brake

驻车制动器（EPB）开关

Parking brake switch (EPB)



驾驶员可以使用EPB开关使车辆可靠停驻。

The driver can use the EPB switch to park the vehicle reliably.

EPB启用和解除

EPB activation and deactivation

启用：车辆停稳后，向上拉起EPB开关，手动驻车完成，驻车状态指示灯 (P) 点亮。

Enable: After the vehicle comes to a standstill, pull up the EPB switch to complete manual parking, and the parking status indicator (P) will illuminate.

解除：踩下制动踏板，同时按下EPB开关，驻车制动器松开，驻车状态指示灯 (P) 熄灭。

Release: Depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch at the same time, the parking brake will be released, and the parking status indicator (P) will go out.

紧急制动功能

Emergency braking

此功能只能在制动踏板失效或受阻的情况使用。持续拉起EPB开关，即可在紧急情况下用电子驻车功能实现车辆制动。只要松开EPB开关，即可退出紧急制动。

This function can only be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked. Pull up the EPB switch continuously to realize vehicle braking with the EPB function in case of emergency. As long as the EPB

switch is released, the emergency brake can be withdrawn.



应尽量避免使用紧急制动功能，在弯度较大、路况不良或湿滑的道路上，使用紧急制动功能可能导致车辆甩尾、侧滑。

The use of emergency braking function shall be avoided as far as possible. On roads with large bending, poor road conditions or slippery roads, the use of emergency braking function may lead to drifting and sideslip of the vehicle.

自动驻车功能（AUTO HOLD）

AUTO HOLD Function



自动驻车功能可以帮助驾驶员在坡道路段或红绿灯路口更舒适地起步。该功能可通过AUTO HOLD开关开启或关闭。开启功能后，驾驶员在坡道起步或红绿灯路口松开制动踏板时，系统继续保持制动。

The AVH function helps the driver to start the vehicle more comfortably on the slope section or at a traffic light intersection. This function can be activated and inactivated by press AUTO HOLD switch. After the function is activated, the system will continue to brake when the driver releases the brake pedal at the hill start or traffic light intersection.

AUTO HOLD开启条件:

Turn-on conditions of AUTO HOLD:

1. 发动机处于启动状态。
1. The engine is started.
2. 驾驶员已系好座椅安全带。
2. The driver has fastened the seat belt.
3. 车辆所有车门已关闭。
3. All vehicle doors are closed.

开启AUTO HOLD功能

Turn on AUTO HOLD function

1. 按下 AUTO HOLD 开关，即可开启 AUTO HOLD功能，开关指示灯点亮。

1. Press the AUTO HOLD switch to turn on the AUTO HOLD function, and the switch indicator will light up.

2. 行车时如果AUTO HOLD功能已开启，

当驾驶员踩下制动踏板使车辆停止后，车辆会自动驻车，组合仪表上自动驻车工作指示灯点亮呈绿色，此时驾驶员可松开制动踏板。

2. If the AUTO HOLD function has been activated during driving, the vehicle will be automatically parked after the driver depresses the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and the automatic parking indicator on the combination instrument will turn green. At this time, the driver can release the brake pedal.

3. 起步时，无论是平路或上下坡，都需要踩下加速踏板，驻车才会自动解除，否则可能造成车辆无法起步。

3. When starting the vehicle, whether on a flat road or uphill or downhill, you need to depress the accelerator pedal to automatically release the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle may fail to start.

关闭AUTO HOLD功能

Turn off AUTO HOLD function

1. 当 AUTO HOLD 功能开启时，按下 AUTO HOLD 开关，即可关闭 AUTO HOLD 功能，开关指示灯熄灭。组合仪表上的自动驻车工作指示灯由绿色变成红色。

1. When the AUTO HOLD function is turned on, press the AUTO HOLD switch to turn off the AUTO HOLD function, and the switch indicator will go out. The AUTO HOLD indicator on the combination instrument changes from green to red.

2. 如果打开主驾车门、松开主驾座椅安全带或关闭发动机，AUTO HOLD功能将自动退出并转化为EPB驻车，以保证驻车安全。

2. If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat belt is released or the engine is shut down, the AUTO HOLD function will automatically exit and be converted to EPB parking to ensure parking safety.

添加燃油

Adding Fuel

燃油要求

Fuel Requirements

请使用92# 或以上无铅汽油。

Please use 92# unleaded gasoline or above.

打开和关闭加油口盖

Opening and closing the fuel filler cap



打开

Open

在中控或智能钥匙解锁的情况下，按压加油口盖的左侧中部位置，可打开加油口盖。

With the central door lock or smart key unlocked, press the middle position on the left side of the fuel filler cap to open the fuel filler cap.

关闭

OFF

关闭加油口盖后按下中控锁止键或智能钥匙上锁键，加油口盖上锁。

After closing the fuel filler cap, press the central door lock button or the smart key lock button to lock the fuel filler cap.

加注燃油

Refueling



逆时针旋转燃油加注口盖，将其缓缓打开后添加燃油。加油完成后，顺时针旋转加注口盖直至听到“咔嗒”声，关闭加油口盖。

Rotate the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to slowly open it and add fuel. After refueling, rotate the filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard, and then close the filler cap.

**警告****Warning**

- 加油时，应关闭车辆动力系统，避免发动机处于工作状态或加油中突然启动。
- When refueling, turn off the vehicle power system to avoid sudden start of the engine during operation or refueling.
- 请远离热源及明火。
- Keep away from heat and open flames.
- 请使用92# 或以上无铅汽油，否则将会导致燃油系统零部件故障。
- Please use 92# or above unleaded gasoline, otherwise it will cause failure of fuel system parts.
- 请勿以低加油速度补油，这将会导致油量超过设计值，从而损坏燃油系统零部件。
- Do not refuel at a low refueling speed, as this will cause the fuel quantity to exceed the design value, thus damaging the fuel system components.
- 在加油枪首次自动关闭后，应停止加油，此时燃油箱内留有一定的空间，用于应对温度变化时的燃油膨胀。否则油箱将被填满，在炎热环境

下，燃油膨胀将会引起燃油泄漏。

- After the refueling gun is automatically closed for the first time, refueling shall be stopped. At this time, there is a certain space in the fuel tank to cope with fuel expansion during temperature changes. Otherwise, the fuel tank will be filled up. In a hot environment, fuel expansion will cause fuel leakage.

驾驶建议

Driving Suggestions

车辆磨合期

Vehicle running-in period

1. 应避免全负荷下驾驶车辆，请勿超载。
1. Avoid driving the vehicle under full load and do not overload it.
2. 应尽量避免急踩制动踏板。
2. Try to avoid depressing the brake pedal sharply.
3. 禁止使用本车拖挂其它车辆。
3. It is forbidden to use this vehicle to tow other vehicles.
4. 建议尝试在不同的工况下行驶。
4. It is recommended to try to drive under different working conditions.

夜间行车

Driving at night

夜间行车要比白天行车危险，主要原因是夜间视野较差和驾驶员容易疲劳。夜间行车请注意以下事项：

Driving at night is more dangerous than driving at daytime, mainly because of poor night vision and fatigue of drivers. Please pay attention to the following matters when driving at night:

1. 严禁酒后驾车。
1. Never drive under the influence.
2. 调节车辆内后视镜位置，减少眩光。
2. Adjust the position of the interior rearview mirror to reduce glare.
3. 与前车保持更大的车距。
3. Keep a greater distance from the vehicle ahead.
4. 小心驾驶，当心动物。
4. Drive carefully and watch out for animals.
5. 低速行驶。
5. Drive at a low speed.
6. 注意会车灯光眩目，应放慢车速，避免直视对面来车的前照灯。
6. Pay attention to the dazzling light of the meeting lights. Slow down to avoid looking directly at the headlights of the oncoming vehicle.
7. 请勿疲劳驾驶，如果困乏时应及时将车辆停靠在路边安全处休息。
7. Do not drive tiredly. If you are sleepy,

park the vehicle at a safe place on the roadside in time for rest.

8. 保持所有玻璃的整洁，避免灯光的眩目以及遮挡视线。

8. Keep all glasses clean and tidy, avoid dazzling lights and obstructing sight.

酒后驾车

Drunk driving

请勿酒后驾车。酒后驾车非常危险，即使是少量的酒精也会影响人的反应力、感知力、注意力和判断力。酒后驾车不仅会引发事故还会导致严重的人身伤亡。交通管理部门会依照《道路交通安全法》的规定，依法对酒后驾车进行相应处罚。

Do not drive under the influence of alcohol. Drunk driving is very dangerous, and even a small amount of alcohol can affect people's reaction, perception, attention and judgment. Drunk driving can lead not only to accidents but also serious personal injuries. The traffic department will impose corresponding penalties on drunk driving in accordance with the provisions of the Road Traffic Safety Law.

涉水行车

Driving through water

为了避免涉水行车时损坏车辆，要注意以下事项：

In order to avoid damaging the vehicle when driving through water, pay attention to the following matters:

1. 在涉水行车前先确定水深。水位最高只能达到车轮的1/4高。

1. Determine the water depth before wading. The maximum water level can only reach 1/4 of the height of the wheel.

2. 最高以10km/h的速度行驶。如果车速过高则可能在车辆前面形成波浪，从而使水流进入发动机进气系统或车辆的其它部件内部，导致车辆损坏。

2. Drive at a maximum speed of 10 km/h. If the vehicle speed is too high, waves may be formed in front of the vehicle, causing water to enter the engine intake system or other components of the vehicle, resulting in vehicle damage.

3. 在任何情况下都不要在水中停车、倒车或关闭发动机。

3. Do not park, reverse or shut down the engine in water under any circumstances.



注意



Attention

● 车辆在通过积水或泥泞等道路时，制动效果可能会受到影响并且导致制动距离延长，有发生事故的危险！

● The braking effect may be affected and the braking distance may be prolonged when the vehicle passes through waterlogged or muddy roads, which may cause accidents.

● 涉水行车后，要避免马上进行急加速行驶或紧急制动操作。

● Avoid rapid acceleration or emergency braking immediately after driving through water.

● 涉水行车时，车辆的某些部件，如：发动机、变速器、底盘或电气系统可能会出现受损现象。

● When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle, such as engine, transmission, chassis or electrical system, may be damaged.

● 涉水行车后，当交通状况允许时，须通过间歇制动尽快清洁制动器并使其恢复干燥。不可以影响其它交通参与者，避免出现交通事故。

● After driving through water, when traffic conditions permit, the brake must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible through intermittent braking. Do not affect other traffic participants to avoid traffic accidents.

● 对面来车激起的波浪，可能超过本车的允许涉水高度。

● The waves caused by the opposite vehicle may exceed the allowable water height of this vehicle.

● 水中可能隐藏着坑洼、泥坑或石头，这些会加大涉水行车的难度或阻碍涉水行车。

● There may be ponding, mud pits or stones hidden in the water, which will make it more difficult for or hinder wading.

● 尽量避免在积水较多的路面行驶，行驶过积水较多的路面后，建议到东风风行特约服务站对车辆进行全面检查，排查隐患，保证行车安全。

● Avoid driving on a road with more water

accumulation as far as possible. After driving on a road with more water accumulation, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for a comprehensive inspection to eliminate hidden dangers and ensure driving safety.

长途行车

Long-distance driving

在长途行车之前请确认已做好相关准备，并尽量休息好。

Before long-distance driving, please make sure that relevant preparations are made and try to have a good rest.

旅行前请检查车辆以下几个部件：

Please check the following components of the vehicle before traveling:

1. 检查洗涤液储液罐是否装满，所有车窗的内外侧是否清洗干净。

1. Check whether the washer fluid reservoir is full and whether the inner and outer sides of all windows are cleaned.

2. 检查燃油、发动机机油及其它油液是否达到规定油液面。

2. Check whether the fuel, engine oil and other oils reach the specified oil level.

3. 检查车灯是否都正常工作。

3. Check whether all lamps work normally.

4. 检查车灯表面是否清洁。

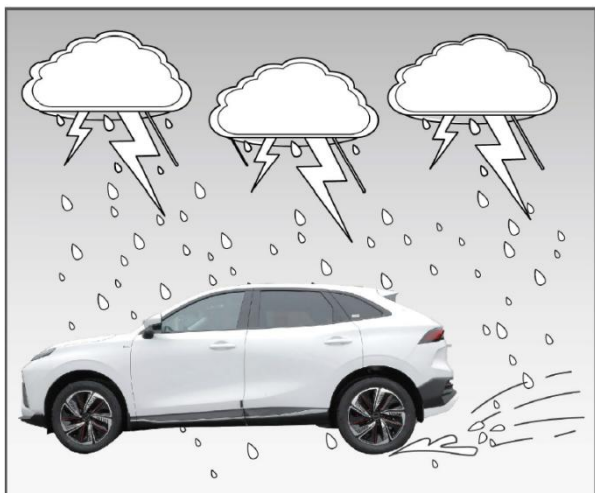
4. Check whether the lamp surface is clean.

5. 检查轮胎胎面花纹是否适合长途行驶及所有轮胎是否已充气至推荐的气压值。

5. Check whether the tire tread pattern is suitable for long-distance driving and whether all tires have been inflated to the recommended air pressure value.

雨天和湿滑路面行车

Driving on rainy and slippery roads



在雨天行车时请注意以下事项：

Please pay attention to the following items when driving in rainy days:

1. 大雨会使视线变差并增大制动距离，请务必减速慢行。
1. Heavy rain will make the sight worse and increase the braking distance. Please slow down.
2. 应该经常检查雨刮，如果在前挡风玻璃上有条纹或有漏刮区域时请及时更换雨刮片。
2. The wiper should be checked frequently. If there are stripes or missing areas on the front windshield, please replace the wiper blade in time.
3. 如果车辆轮胎状况不佳，在湿滑路面上制动时可能会导致车辆滑移，甚至可能引发事故，所以请确保车辆轮胎处于良好状态。
3. If the tires of the vehicle are in poor condition, braking on a slippery road may cause the vehicle to slip or even cause an accident. Therefore, please ensure that the tires of the vehicle are in good condition.
4. 打开车辆大灯和危险警告灯。
4. Turn on the vehicle headlamp and hazard warning lamp.
5. 在通过积水路面时请务必减速慢行。
5. Be sure to slow down when passing through waterlogged roads.
6. 如果制动器潮湿，请在驾驶中轻踩制动踏板直至制动恢复正常。
6. If the brake is wet, please gently depress

the brake pedal during driving until the brake returns to normal.

7. 行车过程中，请勿急转向或急刹车，以免造成事故。

7. During driving, please do not turn or brake sharply to avoid accidents.

8. 涉水行车后，可在低速行驶中，慢踩制动踏板使制动器干燥。

8. After driving through water, slowly depress the brake pedal to dry the brake when driving at a low speed.

坡道和山区路面行车

Driving on ramps and mountainous roads



在坡道和山区路面行车时：

When driving on ramps and mountainous roads:

1. 请保持良好的车况。

1. Please keep the vehicle in good condition.

2. 上坡越过坡顶时要特别注意，在您的车道上可能会有障碍物。

2. Pay special attention when climbing over the top of the slope, because there may be obstacles in your lane.

3. 在山区公路上可能会看到特殊的警告标志，驾车时应注意这些信号并采取适当的措施。

3. Special warning signs may be seen on mountain roads, so please pay attention to these signals and take appropriate measures when driving.

冰雪路面行车

Driving on icy and snowy road



1. 在积雪中行车时，尽可能使用雪地轮胎。请选择与最初装配轮胎相同尺寸和型号的雪地轮胎。

1. When driving in snow, use snow tires as much as possible. Please select snow tires of the same size and model as those originally assembled.

2. 在雪地中行车时，高速、急加速、紧急制动和小角度转弯都是非常危险的，应尽量避免。

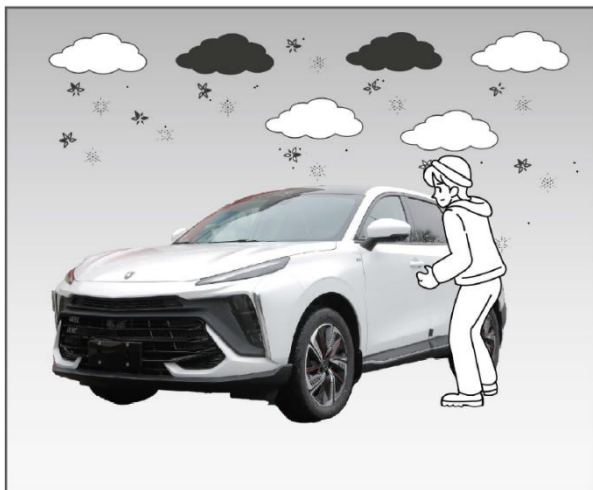
2. When driving in snow, high speed, rapid acceleration, emergency braking and small angle turning are very dangerous and should be avoided as much as possible.

3. 在冰地面上行车时，紧急制动会引起车辆甩尾，请保持安全车距。

3. When driving on ice, emergency braking will cause the vehicle to drift. Please keep a safe distance.

冬季驾驶

Driving in winter



冬季恶劣的驾驶环境会增大车辆的磨损或引发车辆故障。参考以下建议可降低故障发生概率：

Harsh driving environment in winter will increase vehicle wear or cause vehicle failure. The probability of failure can be reduced by referring to the following recommendations:

1. 检查冷却液规格，确认冰点是否适合冬季预期温度。

1. Check the coolant specification to confirm that the freezing point is suitable for the expected temperature in winter.

2. 检查雨刮，确保雨刮片可以自由刮刷。

2. Check the wiper to ensure that the wiper blade can wipe freely.

3. 根据天气变化携带适当的紧急装备。

3. Carry appropriate emergency equipment according to weather changes.

电动助力转向

Electric Power Steering

电动助力转向系统可以在驾驶时提供助力，从而使驾驶员能够轻便地转动方向盘。

The electric power steering system can provide power during driving, so that the driver can turn the

steering wheel easily.



依次点击显示屏中【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】-【转向模式】设置，可以选择转向模式，包含：舒适、正常和运动三种模式。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Attachment]-[Steering Mode] in turn on the display screen to select the steering mode, including three modes: comfort, normal and sports.

舒适: 转向助力增加, 转向较为轻松。

Comfort: Increased power steering makes steering easier.

正常: 转向助力适中, 适用于一般驾驶习惯。此项为默认状态。

Normal: The power steering is moderate, suitable for general driving habits. This item is the default state.

运动: 转向助力减少, 转向手感沉稳。

Movement: The steering power is reduced, and the steering feels calm.



注意



Attention

- 请在车辆静止且未执行转向操作时进行转向模式选择。
- Please select the steering mode when the vehicle is stationary and no steering operation is performed.
- 驻车或极低车速行车时, 如果反复连续转动方向盘或将方向盘转动到末端保持较长时间, 会导致电动助力转向系统过热, 转向电机助力减小甚至暂时无法提供助力, 为避免该情况发生, 尽量不要有类似操作。
- During parking or driving at a very low speed, if the steering wheel is repeatedly and continuously turned or turned to the end for a long time, the electric power steering system will be overheated, and the power of the steering motor will decrease or even fail to provide power temporarily. In order to avoid this situation, try not to do similar operations.
- 当快速转动方向盘时, 可能会听到摩擦声, 这并非故障。如果车辆启动成功后转向系统故障警告灯点亮, 说明转向助力异常, 此时转动方向盘需要更大力度, 请尽快降低车速并安全地停靠在路边, 关闭发动机五分钟后重启车辆, 如果该故障灯不再点亮则可正常行驶, 如果仍然点亮, 请注意安全驾驶并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。
- When the steering wheel is turned quickly, friction sound may be heard, which is not a fault. If the steering system fault warning lamp illuminates after the vehicle is started successfully, it indicates that the steering power is abnormal. At this time, turning the steering wheel requires more force. Please slow down and park the vehicle safely on the roadside as soon as possible. Shut down the engine

and restart the vehicle five minutes later. If the fault warning lamp no longer illuminates, the vehicle can run normally. If it still illuminates, please drive safely and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

牵引力控制 (TCS) 系统

Traction Control System (TCS)

牵引力控制系统 (TCS) 功能, 可在驱动过程中, 通过对驱动轮适当制动降低车轮在其旋转方向上的滑移。

Traction control system (TCS) functions to reduce wheel slip in the direction of rotation by properly braking the driving wheels during driving.

制动辅助系统

Brake Assist System

制动辅助 (BA) 系统

Brake Assist (BA) System

驾驶员在大多数危险情况下都能及时进行制动, 但踩下制动踏板的力量却不足, 导致制动距离增加。拥有制动辅助系统的车辆, 在车辆行驶过程中, 快速踩下制动踏板时将启动液压辅助制动系统。此时制动辅助将产生一个比正常制动时更大的制动力, 从而缩短制动距离。

The driver can brake in time in most dangerous situations, but the force to depress the brake pedal is insufficient, resulting in an increase in braking distance. For a vehicle with a brake assist system, the hydraulic assist brake system will be activated when the brake pedal is depressed quickly during driving. At this time, the brake assist will generate a greater braking force than that during normal braking, thus shortening the braking distance.

制动优先

Brake priority

制动优先系统可以在探测到驾驶员试图施加制动而没有成功时，自动将车辆的驱动力降低到零，然后车辆会进入制动能量回收状态。

The brake priority system can automatically reduce the driving force of the vehicle to zero when it detects that the driver attempts to apply the brake without success, and then the vehicle will enter the braking energy recovery state.

防抱死制动（ABS）系统

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

工作原理

Working principle:

ABS系统控制车辆的制动器，通过检测各个车轮的转速来调节日制动力，以防止车轮抱死和侧滑。在车辆制动过程中，仍然可以用方向盘转向，避免发生碰撞。

The ABS system controls the brake of the vehicle, and adjusts the braking force by detecting the speed of each wheel to prevent wheel locking and sideslip. During vehicle braking, the steering wheel can still be used to avoid collision.

系统自检

System self-check

ABS系统内置自检功能，在启动车辆和低速行驶时，系统会进行自检。如有故障，自检功能会关闭ABS系统并点亮组合仪表上的ABS系统故障警告灯。此时制动系统工作正常，但ABS系统不起作用。如果在自检或行驶过程中，ABS系统故障警告灯点亮，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The ABS system has built-in self-inspection function. When the vehicle is started and running at a low speed, the system will carry out self-inspection. In case of any fault, the self-inspection function will turn off the ABS system and illuminate the ABS system fault warning lamp on the combination instrument. At this time, the brake system works normally, but the ABS system does not work. If the ABS system fault warning lamp illuminates during self-inspection or driving, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

正常工作

Normal operation

ABS系统在车速达到5km/h以上会自动开启。当ABS系统检测到一个或多个车轮接近抱死状态时，执行器迅速动作以释放和恢复制动力。执行器工作时，可能会感到制动踏板轻微震动，并听到由发动机舱盖下的执行器发出的震动响声，属于正常状态，表示ABS系统在正常工作。

The ABS system will start automatically when the vehicle speed reaches more than 5 km/h. When the ABS detects that one or more wheels are approaching the locked state, the actuator acts quickly to release and restore the braking force. When the actuator is working, you may feel slight vibration of the brake pedal and hear the vibration sound from the actuator under the engine hood. This is a normal state, indicating that the ABS system is working normally.



- ABS系统不能减少制动距离。
- The ABS cannot reduce the braking distance.
- 紧急制动时，转向要适度。
- During emergency braking, the steering shall be moderate.

制动力分配 (EBD) 系统

Electronic Brake Force Distribution System (EBD)

EBD系统会自动分配前、后轮之间的制动力，使车辆在不同负载状态下都能够具有良好的制动性能。

The EBD system will automatically distribute the braking force between the front and rear wheels, so that the vehicle can have good braking performance under different load conditions.

电子稳定控制（ESP）系统

Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

ESP系统可以提高驾驶车辆的稳定性。当ESP系统检测到实际的行驶状态与理想的行驶状态可能出现偏差时，ESP系统就会开始工作。ESP系统会有选择地对车辆制动器施加制动力，改善车辆行驶的稳定性。

The ESP system can improve the stability of driving the vehicle. When the ESP system detects that the actual driving state may deviate from the ideal driving state, the ESP system will start to work. The ESP system will selectively apply braking force to the vehicle brake to improve the driving stability of the vehicle.

ESP开关

ESP switch



ESP系统默认开启，按下ESP开关，ESP系统关闭，组合仪表上的ESP电子稳定系统关闭指示灯点亮。

The ESP system is turned on by default. Press the ESP switch to turn off the ESP system, and the ESP OFF indicator on the combination instrument will illuminate.

ESP系统关闭后，当车速超过80km/h时，ESP系统会自动开启，ESP电子稳定系统关闭指示灯熄灭。

After the ESP system is turned off, when the vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h, the ESP system will automatically turn on and the ESP OFF indicator will go out.

ESP系统关闭后，再次按下ESP开关，ESP系统会自动开启，组合仪表上ESP电子稳定系统关闭指示灯熄灭。

After the ESP system is turned off, press the ESP switch again, and the ESP system will be turned on automatically, and the ESP OFF indicator on the combination instrument will go out.

制动系统合理使用建议

Suggestions on Reasonable Use of Brake System

驾驶时请勿将脚放在制动踏板上，这会使制动器过热，加快制动盘和摩擦片的磨损并增加油耗。

Do not put your foot on the brake pedal when driving, which will overheat the brake, accelerate the wear of the brake disc and friction plate and increase fuel consumption.

在下长坡时，应尽量避免频繁制动，以免制动器过热，制动性能降低。

When driving down a long slope, try to avoid frequent braking to avoid overheating of the brake and degradation of braking performance.

在光滑路面上行驶时，需谨慎驾驶。突然制动或加速会导致车轮打滑。

Be careful when driving on a slippery road. Sudden braking or acceleration will cause wheel slipping.

洗车、涉水或下雨天行驶时，制动器可能会变湿，制动性能降低，此时应以安全车速行驶，注意保持车距。

When the vehicle is washed, waded or driven in rainy days, the brake may become wet and the braking performance may be reduced. In this case, the vehicle shall be driven at a safe speed and attention shall be paid to keeping the distance between vehicles.

在较高车速滑行时车辆会进入能量回收，在下长坡时可能动力电池充满电无法进入能量回收，驾驶车辆时请保持合适的安全距离，必要时请踩下制动踏板控制车速。

When the vehicle is coasting at a high speed, it will enter the energy recovery mode. When the vehicle is going down a long slope, the power battery may be fully charged and cannot enter the energy recovery mode. Therefore, please keep an appropriate safe distance when driving the vehicle, and depress the brake pedal to control the vehicle speed if necessary.

上坡起步辅助（HHC）系统

Hill Hold Control (HHC) System

车辆在陡峭或光滑坡面上起步时，驾驶员从制动踏板切换至加速踏板时，车辆可能向下滑动，从而导致起步困难。为防止此情况发生，HHC系统会短暂（最长约2秒）对四个车轮施加制动力来阻止车辆下滑。

When the vehicle starts on a steep or smooth slope and the driver switches from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, the vehicle may slide downward, resulting in difficulty in starting. To prevent this, the HHC system will apply braking force to four wheels for a short time (about 2 seconds at most) to prevent the vehicle from sliding down.



警告



Warning

- 请勿仅依靠HHC系统来避免车辆在坡道下滑。
- Do not rely solely on the HHC system to prevent the vehicle from sliding down a ramp.
- 车辆在陡坡、结冰、泥泞的道路上停车时，应踩下制动踏板，防止车辆向后滑动。
- When parking the vehicle on a steep slope, icy and muddy road, depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from sliding backward.

在下列条件下，HHC系统将自动工作：

The HHC system will work automatically under the following conditions:

1. 档位挂入D档或R档且上坡时。

1. When the gearshift lever is shifted to D or R gear and the vehicle goes uphill.

2. 踩下制动踏板制动，车辆在坡道上完全停下。

2. Depress the brake pedal to brake, and the vehicle will stop completely on the ramp.

在下列条件下，HHC系统将不工作：

The HHC system will not work under the following conditions:

1. 当档位挂入N档、P档或车辆位于水平路面时。

1. When the gearshift lever is shifted to N gear, P gear or the vehicle is on a level road.

2. 当组合仪表中的ESP电子稳定性控制系统关闭指示灯点亮时。

2. When the ESP OFF indicator in the instrument cluster illuminates.

陡坡缓降（HDC）系统

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

HDC系统可以让驾驶员在不踩制动踏板的情况下，平稳通过陡峭的下坡路段。

The HDC system allows the driver to smoothly pass through a steep downhill section without depressing the brake pedal.



按下HDC开关，组合仪表上的陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯点亮，表示HDC系统开启。再次按下HDC开关或车速超过60km/h时，陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯熄灭，HDC系统关闭。

Press the HDC switch, and the HDC working indicator on the combination instrument will illuminate, indicating that the HDC system is turned on. When the HDC switch is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h, the HDC working indicator will go out and the HDC system will be turned off.

陡坡缓降系统制动

HDC braking

车辆下陡坡时，HDC系统开启状态下，系统会主动制动，使车速保持在8km/h至35km/h范围内，驾驶员可通过踩下加速踏板或制动踏板，在此速度范围内调整使用陡坡缓降功能下坡需保持的速度。

When the vehicle is going downhill on a steep slope, the system will actively brake when the HDC system is turned on, so as to keep the vehicle speed within the range of 8 km/h to 35 km/h. The driver can depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the speed to be maintained when using the HDC function to go downhill within this speed range.

HDC系统进行主动制动时，组合仪表上的陡坡缓降系统工作指示灯闪烁，车辆制动灯会点亮。同时车辆ESP系统会发出电机工作的声音，属于正常现象。

When the HDC system performs active braking, the HDC system working indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the vehicle brake lamp will illuminate. At the same time, the ESP system of the vehicle will make a sound when the motor works, which is normal.



警告



Warning

- 在使用陡坡缓降功能前，驾驶员需确认系统处于开启状态。
- Before using the HDC function, the driver needs to confirm that the system is activated.
- 陡坡缓降功能仅通过主动刹车来控制车速，驾驶员需随时注意控制车辆，确保驾驶安全。
- The HDC function only controls the vehicle speed through active braking. The driver should pay attention to controlling the vehicle at any time to ensure driving safety.

制动助力

Brake booster

当施加在制动踏板上的力超过一定程度时，将开启制动助力，此时即使轻踩制动踏板，也会产生较大的制动力，属于正常现象。

When the force applied to the brake pedal exceeds a certain degree, the brake booster will be turned on. At this time, even if the brake pedal is gently depressed, a large braking force will be generated, which is normal.

制动踏板感调节

Brake pedal sensing adjustment

制动模式选择可用于调节制动踏板脚感，驾驶员可在制动模式调节中选择自己喜欢的制动踏板脚感风格。

The brake mode selection can be used to adjust the foot feeling of the brake pedal, and the driver can select his/her favorite foot feeling style of the brake pedal in the brake mode adjustment.



点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【附件】-【制动模式】可选择舒适、正常、运动三种不同的模式。车辆重新启动后，制动踏板感会记忆上一次设置状态。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Attachment]-[Braking Mode] on the display screen to select three different modes: comfort, normal and exercise. After the vehicle is restarted, the brake pedal will remember the last set state.

舒适停车（CST）系统

Comfortable Stopping (CST) System

车辆在平坦的水平路面制动过程中，在车辆刹停之前，CST系统可以适当调小制动压力，使车辆平稳停驻，减小车辆停驻时的俯仰抖动，从而提升制动舒适性。

In the process of braking on a flat and horizontal road, the CST system can appropriately reduce the braking pressure before the vehicle stops, so that the vehicle can be parked smoothly and the pitch jitter during parking can be reduced, thus improving the braking comfort.

开启和关闭CST系统

Turning on and off the CST system



点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【动力】-【舒适停车】开关可开启或关闭。车辆重新启动后，CST系统会记忆上一次设置状态。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Power]-[Comfortable Parking] on the display screen to turn on or off. After the vehicle is restarted, the CST system will remember the last setting state.

线控制动系统

Wire Control Brake System

线控制动系统能够检测驾驶员的制动意图，从而提供制动压力。

The wire control brake system can detect the driver's braking intention and thus provide the brake pressure.



线控制动系统在以下情况下会产生噪音：

The wire control brake system will generate noise under the following conditions:

- 车辆启动开关置于ACC/ON档时，会产生短暂的“嗡”的声音，这是线控制动系统进行自检的声音，属于正常现象。

- When the Start switch is turned to ACC/ON position, there will be a short "buzz" sound, which is the sound of self-inspection of the wire control brake system and is normal.

- 车辆在加速到约15km/h也会产生短暂的“嗡”的声音，这是ABS系统进行自检的声音，属于正常现象。

- When the vehicle accelerates to about 15km/h, it will also produce a short "buzz" sound, which is the sound of ABS self-inspection and is a normal phenomenon.

- 线控制动系统正常工作时也会有声音，主要体现在以下方面：

- The wire control brake system will also produce sound during normal operation, which is mainly reflected in the following aspects:

1. 线控制动系统内电机、电磁阀及泵动作的声音。

1. The sound of motor, solenoid valve and pump action in the wire control brake system.

2. 制动踏板反弹引起的声音。

2. Sound caused by brake pedal bounce.

3. 发动机启动后，在5～10分钟，线控制动系统进行自检，自检过程踩下制动踏板会发出“哒哒”声，属于正常现象。

3. After the engine is started, the wire control brake system will carry out self-inspection within 5～10 minutes. During the self-inspection, it is normal

to make a "click" sound when the brake pedal is depressed.

泊车辅助系统

Parking assist system

简介

Introduction

泊车辅助系统能够在低速行驶或泊车过程中辅助驾驶员观察和感知周围环境，当周围有妨碍行车或泊车的障碍物时，为驾驶员提供视觉和听觉的提示或警告。

The parking assist system can assist the driver to observe and perceive the surrounding environment during low-speed driving or parking, and provide the driver with visual and audible prompts or warnings when there are obstacles hindering driving or parking.

泊车辅助系统主要功能包括：

The main functions of the parking assist system include:

1. 泊车雷达系统。

1. Parking radar system

2. 倒车影像。

2. Reversing camera

3. 全景环视系统*。

3. Panoramic view system*

泊车雷达系统

Parking radar system

泊车雷达系统可以在车辆低速行驶时探测车辆周围障碍物，在车辆接近障碍物时发出警告，辅助驾驶员保障倒车安全。

The parking radar system can detect obstacles around the vehicle when the vehicle is running at a low speed and give a warning when the vehicle is approaching obstacles to assist the driver in ensuring reversing safety.

根据配置不同，泊车辅助系统雷达传感器分为两类：

According to different configurations, the parking assist system radar sensors are divided into two categories:

型式一

Type I

后方各4个雷达传感器。

Four radar sensors in the rear.

型式二

Type II

前方和后方各4个雷达传感器。

Four radar sensors in front and four in rear.

当泊车辅助系统启动时，系统会自动检测功能是否正常，如果系统蜂鸣器鸣叫1声，持续3秒，表明系统有故障，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

When the parking assist system is activated, the system will automatically detect whether the function is normal. If the system buzzer sounds once for 3 seconds, it indicates that the system is faulty. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

前雷达 *

Front radar*



在显示屏顶端进行下划操作可唤出下拉栏快捷菜单，点击【前雷达】，可以开启和关闭前雷达系统。

Scribe at the top of the display screen to call out the shortcut menu of the drop-down bar, and click [Front Radar] to turn on and off the front radar system.

开启

ON

启动开关置于“ON”档时，前雷达系统处于上一次熄火时的设置状态。

When the Start switch is at "ON" position, the front radar system is in the setting state at the last flameout.

以下操作同时满足时可以开启前雷达系统：

The front radar system can be turned on when the following operations are met simultaneously:

1. 前雷达开关处于开启状态。
1. The front radar switch is on.
2. 换档杆处于非P档。
2. The gearshift lever is not in P gear.
3. 起步后车速小于15km/h或行车途中从较高速度减速到10km/h。
3. The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h after starting or the vehicle decelerates from a higher speed to 10 km/h during driving.
4. EPB开关释放。
4. The EPB switch is released.

关闭

OFF

以下操作均可以关闭前雷达系统。

The following operations can turn off the front radar system.

1. 启动开关置于非“ON”档。
1. Turn the Start switch to a position other than "ON".
2. 前雷达开关处于关闭状态。
2. The front radar switch is off.
3. 换挡杆处于P档。
3. The gearshift lever is in P gear.
4. 车速超过15km/h。
4. The vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h.
5. EPB开关拉起。
5. The EPB switch is pulled up.



注意



Attention

前雷达开关控制前保险杠上的雷达传感器。当此开关关闭时，前雷达系统不工作。

The front radar switch controls the radar sensor on the front bumper. When this switch is turned off, the front radar system does not work.

倒车雷达

Reversing radar

开启与关闭

On and Off

1. 启动开关处于“ON”档。
1. Turn the Start switch to "ON" position.
2. 挂R档时，倒车雷达自动开启，退出R档后系统自动关闭。
2. When the gearshift lever is in R gear, the reversing radar will be turned on automatically, and the system will be turned off automatically after the gearshift lever is out of R gear.

探测范围

Detection range

泊车辅助系统雷达传感器的探测范围如下表

所示:

The detection range of the parking assist system radar sensor is shown in the table below:

传感器位置 Sensor position	最远探测距离 (cm) Maximum detection distance (cm)
后部两侧 Both rear sides	60
后部中间 Rear middle	150
前部两侧 Front centre	60
前部中间 Front middle	120

报警方式

Alarm mode

泊车辅助系统根据雷达传感器与障碍物之间的距离在组合仪表上发出间断性报警音或长鸣报警音，距离越短，报警音的间隔时间越短，障碍物距离车辆30厘米时触发长鸣报警，伴随红色雷达波段显示。

According to the distance between the radar sensor and the obstacle, the parking assist system sends out intermittent alarm sound or long-time alarm sound on the combination instrument. The shorter the distance is, the shorter the interval between the alarm sounds will be. When the obstacle is 30 cm away from the vehicle, the long-time alarm will be triggered, accompanied by the red radar band display.

型式一

Type I



后方4个雷达传感器。

Four radar sensors in the rear.

型式二

Type II



前方和后方各4个雷达传感器。

Four radar sensors in front and four in rear.



注意



Attention

未进入全景界面时，前雷达仅提供声音报警，无显示报警。

When the panoramic view interface is not entered, the front radar only provides audible alarm and does not display alarm.

故障显示

Fault display

车辆前方单个雷达传感器故障，前方其余传感器不工作。车辆后方单个雷达传感器故障，后方其余传感器不工作。请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

A single radar sensor in front of the vehicle fails, and the other sensors in front do not work. A single radar sensor behind the vehicle fails, and the other sensors behind do not work. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

系统可能不工作的情况

Conditions in which the system may not work

由于物体特性，位置、角度、大小、材质或背景复杂的场所等关系，可能造成系统不工作或误报，以下情况会造成无法检测或检测不良：

Due to the characteristics, position, angle, size, material or complex background of objects, the system may not work or give false alarms. The following conditions may cause failure to detect or poor detection:

1. 铁丝网、钢索类物体。

1. Wire mesh, steel ropes and other objects

2. 在草丛中或崎岖不平的路面行车。

2. Driving in grass or on rough roads

3. 棉质或表面易吸收音波的材料。

3. Cotton or acoustic material

4. 传感器表面附着异物。

4. Foreign matters are attached to the sensor surface.

5. 同频率的超音波杂音、金属声、高压气体排放声。

5. Ultrasonic noise, metal sound and high-pressure gas emission sound at the same frequency.

6. 加装或连接其它电子设备，使用中也会影响此系统功能。

6. Adding or connecting other electronic equipment will also affect the function of this system during use.



警告



Warning

- 泊车辅助系统仅作为泊车、倒车时对车辆前后障碍物的辅助警示，不能代替驾驶员对周围环境的观察。驾驶员需对整个驾驶过程中的环境进行实时监测，东风风行无需为驾驶员因疏忽而产生的意外事故负责。
- The parking assist system is only used as an auxiliary warning for obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle during parking and reversing, and cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. The driver needs to monitor the environment in real time during the whole driving process, and Dongfeng Forthing is not responsible for accidents caused by the driver's negligence.
- 由于泊车辅助系统存在工作盲区，请勿以此作为倒车安全的唯一凭据，驾驶员负责驾驶安全。
- As the parking assist system has a blind spot, please do not use it as the only evidence for reversing safety. The driver is responsible for driving safety.

Turning on/off the reversing image

1. 启动开关处于“ON”档。
1. Turn the Start switch to "ON" position.
2. 挂R档时，倒车影像会自动开启，退出R档后系统自动关闭。
2. When the gearshift lever is in R position, the reversing image will be turned on automatically, and the system will be turned off automatically after the gearshift lever is out of R position.

倒车影像

Reversing Image



倒车影像通过安装在车辆后方的摄像头采集图像，方便驾驶员在倒车时及时查看后方障碍物。

The reversing image collects images through the camera installed behind the vehicle, which is convenient for the driver to check the obstacles behind in time when reversing.

倒车影像开启关闭和关闭

倒车辅助线

Reversing Auxiliary Line



倒车辅助线说明:

Description of reversing auxiliary line:

红色: 表示车后约1米距离。

Red: It indicates the distance of about 1m behind the vehicle.

黄色: 表示车后约2米距离。

Yellow: It indicates the distance of about 2m behind the vehicle.

绿色: 表示车后约3米距离。

Green: It indicates the distance of about 3m behind the vehicle.

辅助线宽度:

Width of auxiliary line:

表示两侧外后视镜的最长距离加7厘米。

It indicates the maximum distance between the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides plus 7 cm.

倒车辅助线可辅助驾驶员判断倒车轨迹, 需要方向盘转到一定角度后才会激活。

The reversing auxiliary line can assist the driver in judging the reversing track, which can only be activated after the steering wheel is turned to a certain angle.



注意



Attention

● 车幅线仅作为参考, 不能作为判断车辆实际距离和行驶轨迹的依据, 停泊车辆时请注意车辆周围环境、安全驾驶。

● The spoke line is only for reference and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance

and driving track of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive safely when parking the vehicle.

● 摄像头类似于人眼, 在黄昏、夜晚、黎明、雪、雨及雾等环境下, 看见物体的能力有限。本产品主要供驾驶员驾驶辅助用途, 驾驶员始终有与任何障碍物保持距离的责任。

● The camera is similar to the human eye, and has limited ability to see objects in the evening, night, dawn, snow, rain and fog. This product is mainly used for driver assistance, and the driver is always responsible for keeping a distance from any obstacle.

● 摄像头会放大和扭曲图像并有短暂延时, 故环视功能不能替代驾驶员操作和判断, 使用过程中请时刻注意车辆周边安全。

● The camera will enlarge and distort the image with a short delay, so the surround view function cannot replace the driver's operation and judgment. Please always pay attention to the safety around the vehicle during use.

● 车幅线、雷达波距离会与实际距离存在一定误差, 停泊车辆时请注意观察车辆周边安全。

● There will be a certain error between the amplitude line and the radar wave distance and the actual distance. Please pay attention to the safety around the vehicle when parking the vehicle.

● 摄像头脏污时会影响系统使用, 请及时清理干净。

● The dirty camera will affect the use of the system. Please clean it up in time.



注意



Attention

- 当气候恶劣、光照不足时，系统无法正常使用。
- When the weather is harsh and the light is insufficient, the system cannot be used normally.

360°全景影像 *

360° panorama view *

全景影像可拼接位于车辆前、后、左、右的四个摄像头图像，合成一幅鸟瞰视图在显示屏上。搭配倒车雷达使用，使停泊车辆时更加安全便利。

The panoramic view can be spliced with four camera images located in front, rear, left and right of the vehicle to form an aerial view on the display screen. It is used together with the reversing radar to make it safer and more convenient to park the vehicle.

打开和关闭全景影像

Turning Panoramic View on/off

全景影像开启前提条件：

Preconditions for panoramic view switch on:

1. 启动开关处于“ON”档。
1. Turn the Start switch to "ON" position.
2. 车速低于30km/h。
2. The vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h.

全景影像开启

Panorama view switch on



1. 按下方向盘上的360°全景键可手动打开

全景影像，再次按下可关闭全景影像。

1. Press the 360° panorama view button on the steering wheel to manually turn on the panorama view, and press it again to turn off the panorama view.



2. 当【转向灯进入】功能开启，驾驶员左右打转向时，全景影像会自动开启。

2. When the [Turn Signal Entry] function is turned on and the driver turns left and right, the panorama view will be activated automatically.

3. 换挡杆置于R档时，全景影像会自动开启。

3. When the gearshift lever is in R position, the panoramic view will be turned on automatically.

满足下述任一条件，全景环视关闭：

The panoramic view will be turned off if any of the following conditions is met:

1. 按下返回键。
1. Press the "Back" button.
2. 车辆处于非R档。
2. The vehicle is not in R gear.
3. 转向灯回正。
3. The turn signal lamp returns to the center.
4. 车速于大30km/h。
4. The vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.
5. 再次按下360°全景键。
5. Press the 360° panoramic button again.



车辆超速后，需要降低到10km/h后才能再次开启。

After the vehicle overspeeds, it needs to be reduced to 10 km/h before it can be started again.

全景影像功能说明

Description of Panoramic Image Function

2D视图

2D View

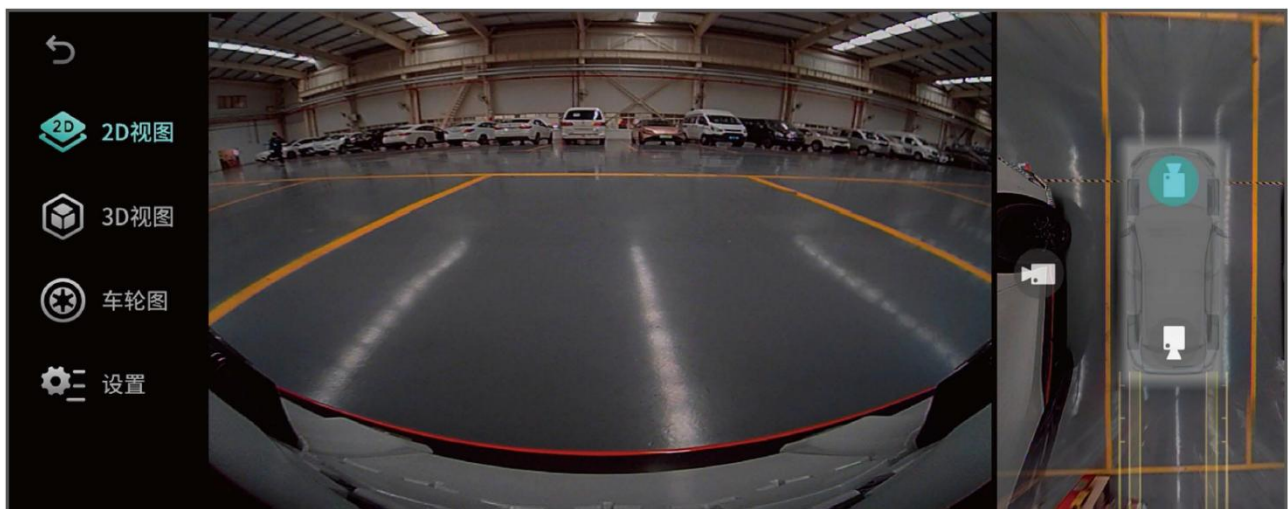


点击右侧前、后、左、右摄像头图标，会切换对应视角（5秒无操作图标自动收起）。

Click the right front, rear, left and right camera icons to switch the corresponding viewing angle (the icon will be automatically retracted if there is no operation within 5 seconds).

前广角视图

Front wide angle view



后广角视图

Rear wide angle view

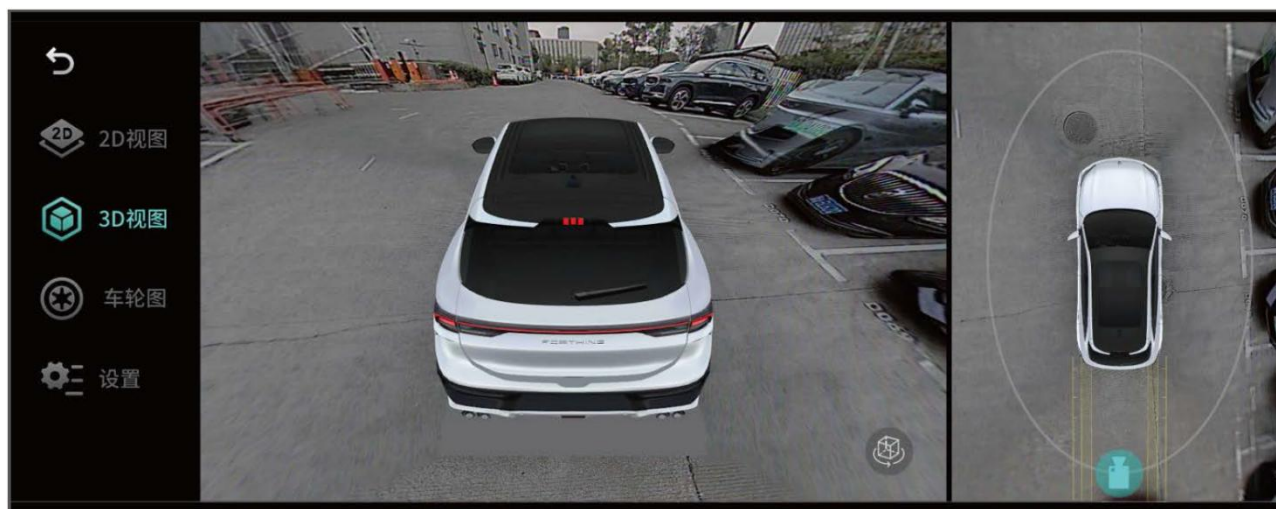


在全景【2D视图】界面下，触摸前和后单视图任意位置进入相应的前广角和后广角界面。

In the panoramic [2D view] interface, touch any position of the front and rear single views to enter the corresponding front and rear wide-angle interfaces.

3D视图

3D view



点击左侧【3D视图】，可进入3D视角界面，点击并拖动图像显示的任意区域可实现360°旋转，转动精度为1°，支持缩放和拖拽功能。

Click [3D View] on the left to enter the 3D view interface. Click and drag any area of the image display to realize 360° rotation with a rotation accuracy of 1°. Zooming and dragging functions are supported.

3D环绕

3D surround



在【3D视图】界面下，点击单视图右下角的3D环绕图标进入环绕界面，环绕时间维持7秒。

In the [3D View] interface, click the 3D surround icon in the lower right corner of the single view to enter the surround interface, and the surround time lasts for 7 seconds.

转向视角图

Steering view

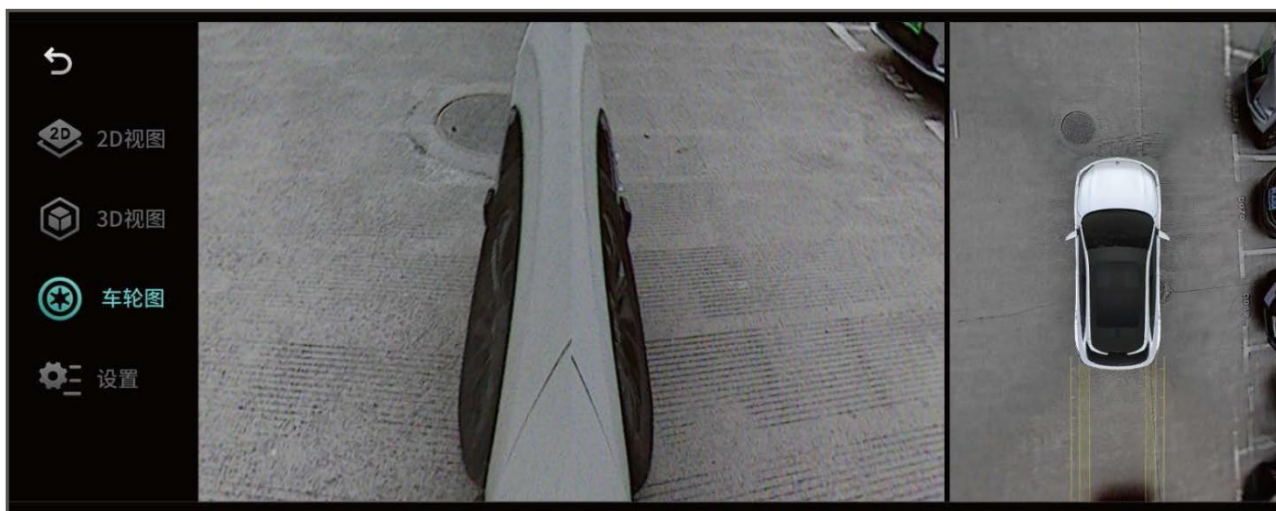


当转向开启进入开关开启 (档位处于非R档), 打左 / 右转向灯进入相应的左 / 右转向视角。拨正转向杆后, 延时1秒退出全景环视界面。

When the turn signal ON/OFF switch is turned on (the gear is not in R position), turn on the left/right turn signal lamp to enter the corresponding left/right turn view angle. After pulling the steering lever straight, exit the panoramic view interface with a delay of 1s.

车轮图

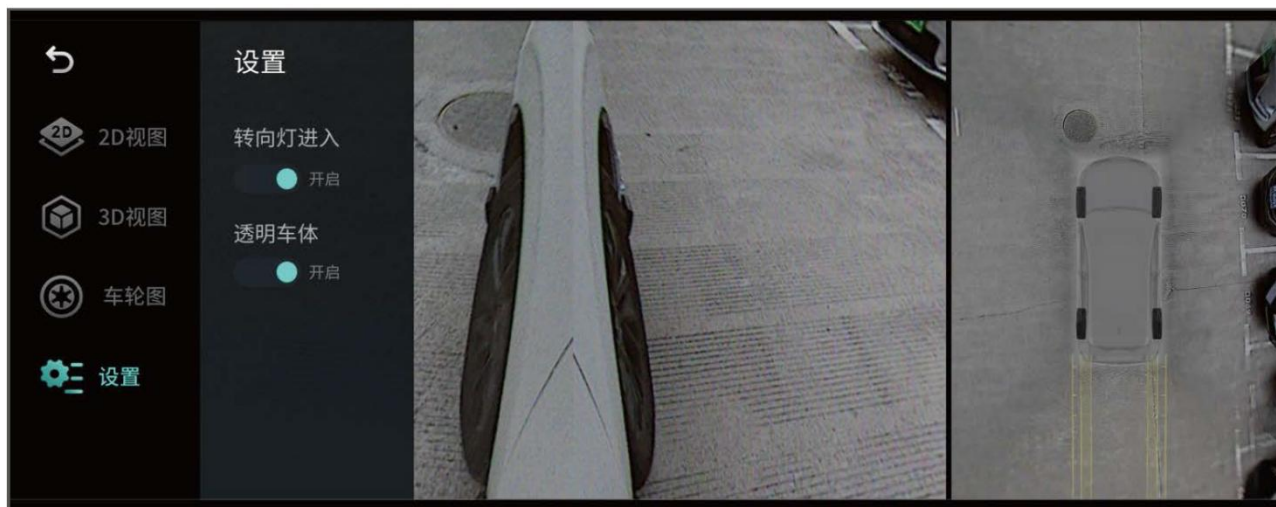
Wheel diagram



点击左侧【车轮图】，切换对应视图。

Click [Wheel Diagram] on the left to switch the corresponding view.

设置 Settings

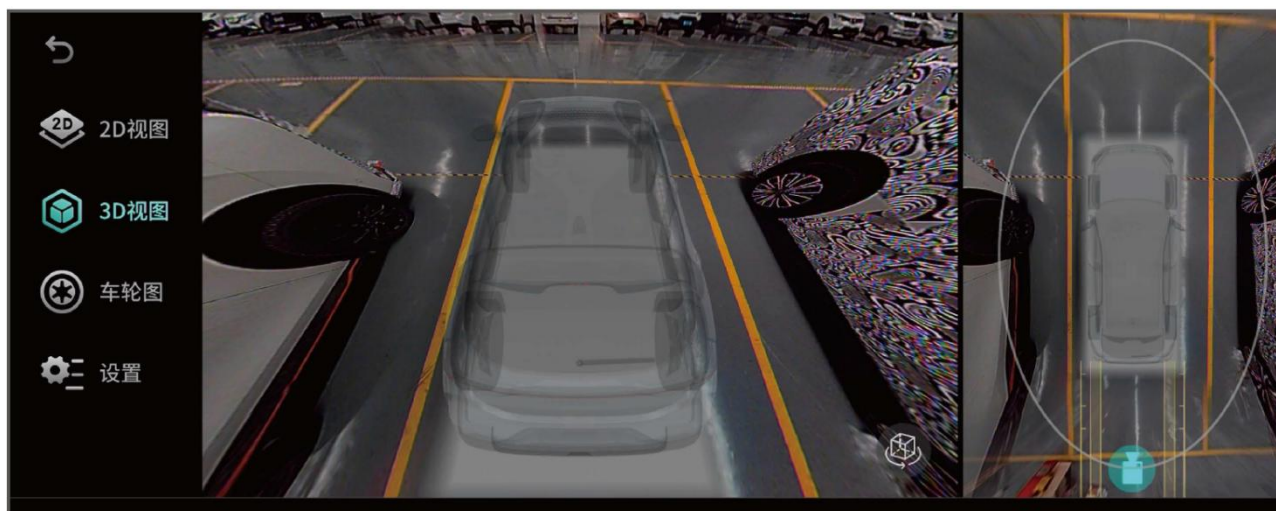


点击【设置】可以在设置里开启和关闭转向灯进入、透明车体、行人报警（若配置）等功能。初始化默认关闭，均具有记忆功能。

Click [Settings] to turn on and off the functions such as turn signal lamp entry, transparent carbody and pedestrian alarm (if configured). Initialization is disabled by default and has memory function.

透明车体

Transparent carbody



设置项“透明车体”开启时，车模底部画面可视。

When the setting item "Transparent Carbody" is turned on, the bottom screen of the car model is visible.

倒车辅助线

Reversing Auxiliary Line



2D前、后单视图（中间）和2D拼接视图（右侧）均有辅助线，辅助线随D档、R档切换而切换前后方向，辅助线表示的实际长度为5米。

There are auxiliary lines in the 2D front and rear single view (middle) and 2D splicing view (right). The auxiliary lines switch between the front and rear directions with the switching between D gear and R gear. The actual length indicated by the auxiliary lines is 5m.

外层宽度为两侧外后视镜的最长距离加7厘米，内层宽度为车轮宽度。

The width of the outer layer is the maximum distance of the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides plus 7 cm, and the width of the inner layer is the width of the wheel.

刻度样式轨迹线带有刻度线，刻度线分为三段：0～0.3米，0.3～1米，1～1.5米。

The scale pattern trajectory line has scale lines, which are divided into three sections: 0 ~ 0.3m, 0.3 ~ 1m and 1 ~ 1.5m.



警告



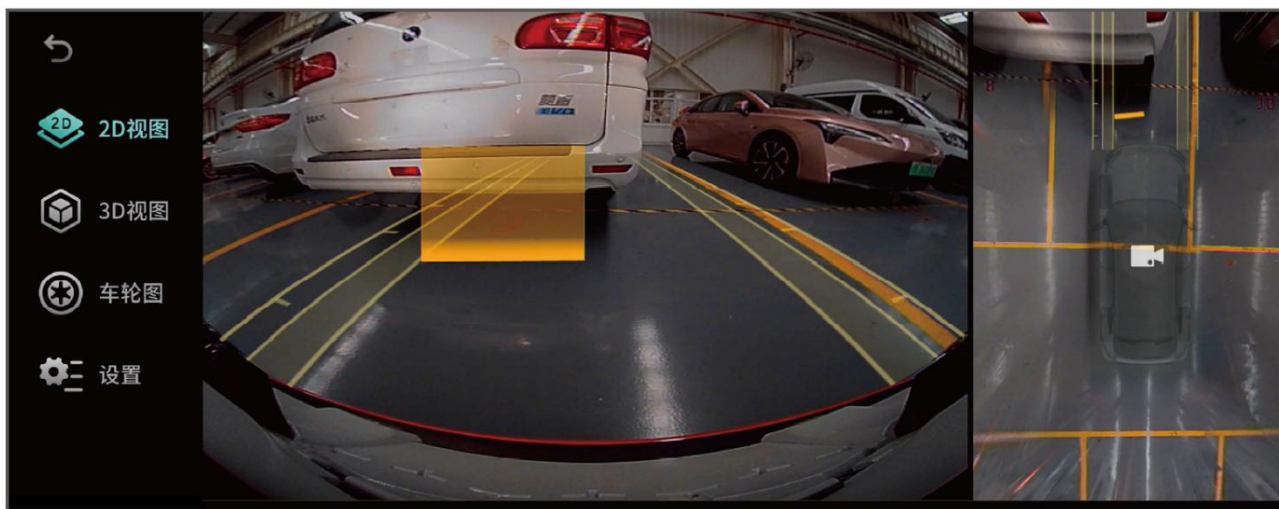
Warning

辅助线仅作为参考，不能作为判断车辆实际距离和行驶轨迹的依据，停泊车辆时请注意车辆周围环境，安全驾驶。

The auxiliary line is only for reference and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance and driving track of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and drive safely when parking the vehicle.

雷达障碍板显示

Radar obstacle board display



07

全景界面下，当满足雷达系统的工作条件时会显示障碍板，同时会有报警音。

In the panoramic interface, when the working conditions of the radar system are met, the obstacle board will be displayed and an alarm sound will be given.



注意



Attention

前后两侧四个雷达传感器探测到障碍物后仅有障碍板显示，无报警音。

After the four radar sensors on the front and rear sides detect obstacles, only the obstacle board is displayed,

without alarm sound.

后方横穿预警 *

Rear Crossing Warning *



全景环视界面下，当满足角雷达的报警条件时报警显示。

In the panoramic view interface, the alarm is displayed when the alarm conditions of the corner radar are met.



注意



Attention

- 车幅线仅作为参考，不能作为判断车辆实际距离和行驶轨迹的依据，停泊车辆时请注意车辆周围环境、安全驾驶。
- The spoke line is only for reference and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance and driving track of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive safely when parking the vehicle.
- 摄像头类似于人眼，在黄昏、夜晚、黎明、雪、雨及雾等环境下，看见物体的能力有限。全景影像主要供于驾驶辅助，驾驶员始终有与任何障碍物保持距离的责任。
- The camera is similar to the human eye, and has limited ability to see objects in the evening, night, dawn, snow, rain and fog. The panoramic view is mainly used for driving assistance, and the driver always has the responsibility to keep a distance from any obstacle.
- 摄像头会放大和扭曲图像并有短暂延时，本车所有泊车辅助系统的功能（雷达、影像）不能替代驾驶员操作和判断，使用过程中请时刻注意车辆周边安全。
- The camera will enlarge and distort the image with a short delay. All functions of the parking assist system (radar and image) of the vehicle cannot replace the driver's operation and judgment. Please always pay attention to the safety around the vehicle during use.
- 全景影像视图仅对地面图像进行拼接，对于有一定高度的物体会存在空中盲区，停泊车辆时务必注意车辆周围的幼童、水泥柱等物体。
- The panoramic view is only used to splice the ground images. For objects with a certain height, there will be blind spots in the air. When parking the vehicle, be sure to pay attention to young children, concrete columns and other objects around the vehicle.
- 辅助线、雷达波距离会与实际距离存在一定误差，停泊车辆时请注意观察车辆周边安全。
- There will be a certain error between the auxiliary line and the radar wave distance and the actual distance. Please pay attention to the safety around the vehicle when parking the vehicle.
- 摄像头脏污时会影响系统使用，请及时清理

干净。

- The dirty camera will affect the use of the system. Please clean it up in time.
- 当气候恶劣、光照不足时，系统无法正常使用。
- When the weather is harsh and the light is insufficient, the system cannot be used normally.

定速巡航系统

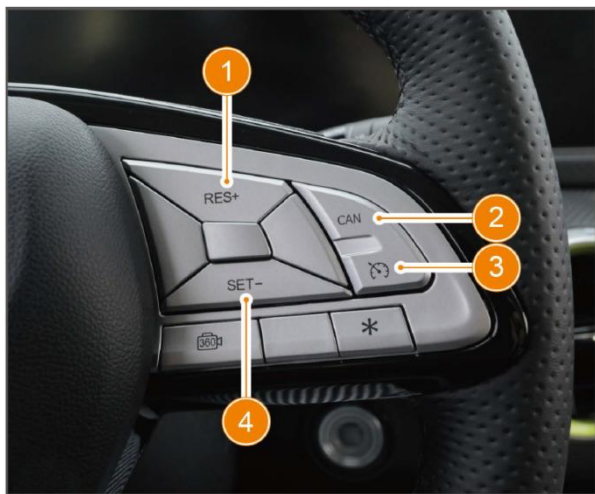
Cruise control system

定速巡航系统可让驾驶员不用踩下加速踏板，而仍然能够使车辆保持高于40km/h的预设速度行驶。在高速公路上行驶时，可启用此功能。不建议在市区、蜿蜒道路、湿滑路面、大雨天或其他恶劣气候条件下启用此功能。严禁在冰雪道路使用定速巡航系统。

The cruise control system allows the driver to keep the vehicle running at a preset speed higher than 40 km/h without depressing the accelerator pedal. This function can be enabled when driving on an expressway. It is not recommended to enable this function in urban areas, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain or other severe weather conditions. It is strictly prohibited to use the cruise control system on icy and snowy roads.

按键说明

Description of buttons



按键介绍

Introduction to buttons

1. 巡航恢复 / 加速键

1. Cruise recovery/acceleration button

恢复设定的巡航车速并以该车速控制车辆。

Restore the set cruise speed and control the vehicle at this speed.

如已开启定速巡航功能：

If the cruise control function is enabled:

按下此键：巡航设定车速升高2km/h。

Press this button to increase the set cruise speed

by 2 km/h.

长按此键：巡航设定车速以1km/h的速度持续升高。

Long press this button: The set cruise speed increases continuously at a speed of 1 km/h.

2. 巡航暂停键

2. Cruise pause button

按下此键可以暂停巡航功能。

Press this button to pause the cruise control function.

3. 定速巡航开关键

3. Cruise control switch

按下此键可以开启或关闭定速巡航。

Press this button to turn on or off cruise control.

4. 车速设置 / 减速键

4. Vehicle speed setting/deceleration button

将当前的车速设置为巡航车速并按该车速控制车辆。

Set the current speed to the cruise speed and control the vehicle at this speed.

如已开启定速巡航功能：

If the cruise control function is enabled:

按下此键：巡航设定车速降低2km/h。

Press this button to decrease the set cruise speed by 2 km/h.

长按此键：巡航设定车速以1km/h的速度持续降低。

Long press this button: The set cruise speed decreases continuously at a speed of 1 km/h.



上下坡行驶时，实际巡航车速可能与设置的车速有所偏差。下坡车速加快时，可利用制动踏板减速，这将暂停定速巡航功能。如需恢复原来设定的车速，按下巡航恢复 / 加速键即可。

When driving uphill and downhill, the actual cruise speed may deviate from the set speed. When the downhill speed increases, the brake pedal can be used to decelerate, which will pause the cruise control function. To restore the originally set speed, press the cruise recovery/acceleration button.

定速巡航开启和暂停

Cruise control ON and PAUSE

开启条件

Turn-on conditions

1. 按下定速巡航键。
1. Press the cruise control button.
2. 车速在40 ~ 180km/h范围内。
2. The vehicle speed is within the range of 40 ~ 180 km/h.
3. 按下车速设置 / 减速键。
3. Press the vehicle speed setting/deceleration button.
4. 未踩下制动踏板。
4. The brake pedal is not depressed.
5. 档位挂入D档。
5. Shift to D position.
6. 系统没有故障。
6. The system is not subjected to any failures.

暂停条件

Pause conditions

以下任何一种方法均可暂停定速巡航功能：

In case of any one of the following methods, the cruise control function can be suspended:

1. 轻踩制动踏板。
1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. 挂入P档、N档或R档。
2. Shift to P, N or R position.
3. 按下巡航暂停键。
3. Press the cruise pause button.
4. 再次按下定速巡航开关键。
4. Press the cruise control switch again.
5. 系统有故障。
5. The system is subjected to some failures.

第1、2、3种方式只是暂停巡航模式，满足条件时可通过按下巡航恢复 / 加速键恢复巡航。第4、5种方式则完全关闭巡航。

The 1st, 2nd and 3rd modes are only to pause the cruise mode. When the conditions are met, the cruise can be resumed by pressing the cruise resume/acceleration button. In the 4th and 5th modes, the cruise control is completely turned off.

定速巡航功能恢复

Resumption of Cruise Control Function

当定速巡航功能暂停时，如需恢复定速巡航功能，可先加速到40km/h以上，再按下巡航回复 / 加速键重新进入巡航状态，车辆将恢复原来设定的巡航速度。

When the cruise control function is suspended, if you need to restore the cruise control function, you can accelerate to more than 40 km/h first, and then press the cruise response/acceleration button to enter the cruise state again, and the vehicle will return to the original cruise speed.

按下定速巡航开关键取消巡航功能时，系统将会完全关闭巡航，并取消关闭前设定的巡航速度。

When the cruise control switch is pressed to cancel the cruise control function, the system will completely turn off the cruise control and cancel the cruise speed set before turning off.

改变设定的车速

Change the set vehicle speed

可以用以下任何一种方法改变定速巡航车速：

The cruise control speed can be changed by any of the following methods:

1. 按下巡航恢复 / 加速键或车速设置 / 减速键，以提高 / 降低车速。

1. Press the cruise recovery/acceleration button or the vehicle speed setting/deceleration button to increase/decrease the vehicle speed.

2. 踩下加速踏板，当车速提高到所需状态时松开踏板，并按下车速设置 / 减速键。

2. Depress the accelerator pedal, release the pedal when the vehicle speed increases to the desired state, and press the vehicle speed setting/deceleration button.

3. 踩下制动踏板，当车速降低到所需状态时松开踏板，并按下车速设置 / 减速键。

3. Depress the brake pedal, release the pedal when the vehicle speed decreases to the desired state, and press the vehicle speed setting/deceleration button.



注意



Attention

即使开启定速巡航功能，仍可使用加速踏板加速超车。超车后，松开踏板，如果仍满足巡航条件，车辆将恢复原来设定的巡航车速。

Even if the cruise control function is activated, the accelerator pedal can still be used to accelerate and overtake. After overtaking, release the pedal. If the cruise conditions are still met, the vehicle will return to the originally set cruise speed.

辅助驾驶 *

Driver assistance *

简介

Introduction

辅助驾驶系统能够在行驶过程中辅助驾驶员观察和感知周围环境，为驾驶员提供碰撞预警、主动安全和巡航辅助，保证行车安全。

The driving assistance system can assist the driver to observe and perceive the surrounding

environment during driving, provide collision warning, active safety and cruise assistance for the driver, and ensure driving safety.

辅助驾驶系统主要功能包括：

The main functions of the driver assistance system include:

1. 前碰撞预警系统。

1. Forward collision warning system

2. 车道偏离预警系统。

2. Lane departure warning system

3. 远光灯自动控制。

3. Automatic control of high beam

4. 侧后向辅助驾驶。

4. Side-rear assisted driving

前碰撞预警系统 (FCW) *

Forward collision warning system (FCW) *

车辆行驶过程中，若监测到前方车辆、骑行人或行人与本车间距离过近，FCW系统通过视觉和听觉提醒驾驶员注意。

When the vehicle is running, if it is detected that the vehicle, cyclist or pedestrian ahead is too close to the vehicle, the FCW system will remind the driver to pay attention visually and audibly.

功能开启

Function ON



点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【前碰撞预警FCW】开关可对FCW系统进行选择。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Driver Assistance]-[FCW] on the display screen to select the FCW system.

前碰撞预警出厂默认开启，灵敏度默认正常。设置开关处于关闭状态时，黄色前碰撞预警系统关闭指示灯常亮。

The forward collision warning is enabled by default, and the sensitivity is normal by default. When the set switch is OFF, the yellow FCW OFF indicator stays on.

前向碰撞预警开关开启前提下，车速在8～200km/h范围内功能开启，实时监测车辆前方车况。

On the premise that the forward collision warning switch is turned on, the function is turned on when the vehicle speed is within the range of 8～200 km/h, so as to monitor the vehicle condition in front of the vehicle in real time.

功能触发

Function triggering

一级报警

Level 1 alarm



车辆可能发生碰撞危险时触发一级报警。组合仪表红色前碰撞预警系统警告灯闪烁，行车界面前方标红，伴随中频报警音。

The level 1 alarm will be triggered when the vehicle may be in danger of collision. The red FCW system warning light on the combination instrument flashes, and the front of the driving interface is marked red, accompanied by intermediate frequency alarm sound.

二级报警

Level 2 alarm

车辆即将发生碰撞危险时触发二级报警。组合仪表红色前碰撞预警系统警告灯闪烁，行车界面前方标红并伴随高频报警音。

The level 2 alarm will be triggered when the vehicle is about to be in collision danger. The red FCW system warning light on the combination instrument flashes, and the front of the driving interface is marked red and accompanied by high-frequency alarm sound.

系统中断

System interrupted

FCW系统满足任意抑制条件，将不会被触发：

The FCW system will not be triggered if it meets any suppression conditions:

1. 驾驶员实施主动转向，方向盘转速过快或者转角过大。

1. The driver implements active steering, and the steering wheel rotates too fast or the steering angle is too large.

2. 驾驶员实施接管车辆控制，踩加速踏板过于用力。

2. The driver takes over the vehicle control and depresses the accelerator pedal too hard.

3. 驾驶员踩下制动踏板。

3. The driver presses the brake pedal.

FCW系统遇到以下情况，可能会自动解除：

The FCW system may be automatically released in case of the following conditions:

1. 传感器被挡住。

1. The sensor is blocked.

2. 恶劣天气。

2. Adverse weather

3. 系统中存在故障。

3. There is a fault in the system.



注意



Attention

● 前碰撞预警系统仅作为辅助功能，不能完全避免与前方车辆或行人的碰撞，驾驶员必须一直

保持对车辆的控制，并对驾驶车辆负有责任。

● The FCW system is only used as an auxiliary function and cannot completely avoid collision with the vehicle or pedestrian ahead. The driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be responsible for driving the vehicle.

● 在紧急情况发生时，驾驶员应根据自身判断，请勿过于依赖报警提示。

● In the event of an emergency, the driver shall make his own judgment and shall not rely too much on the alarm prompt.

● 前碰撞预警系统只能识别取得牌照、合法上路行驶的正规车辆，且无法在所有情况下检测到车辆。例如车辆尾部被严重遮挡、车辆形状奇怪（比如超载的运输树木的车辆）、车辆尾部严重损毁等情况的车辆。

● The FCW system can only identify regular vehicles that have obtained license plates and are legally driving on the road, and cannot detect vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of the vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of the vehicle is strange (such as an overloaded vehicle transporting trees), and the rear of the vehicle is seriously damaged.

● 前碰撞预警系统可以识别未被遮挡的身高正常的成年人，但无法在所有情况下检测到行人。例如部分被遮挡、所穿衣物不能辨认身形、身高过低、携带较大物体、对比度差等情况的行人。

● The FCW system can identify unoccluded adults of normal height, but cannot detect pedestrians in all cases. For example, pedestrians who are partially blocked, cannot recognize their body shape with the clothes worn, are too low, carry large objects, have poor contrast, etc.



注意



Attention

- 前碰撞预警系统对逆向来车和前方横向穿越的车辆无法识别，不会触发报警提示。
- The FCW system will not trigger an alarm prompt if it cannot identify vehicles coming in the reverse direction and vehicles passing laterally ahead.
- 前碰撞预警系统的响应能力有限，可能不会及时触发报警提示。例如当前方车辆以极端工况强行进入行驶车道或行人突然进入行驶车道时，可能无法及时报警。
- The FCW system may not trigger an alarm prompt in time due to its limited response capability. For example, when the front vehicle forcibly enters the driving lane under extreme working conditions or the pedestrian suddenly enters the driving lane, it may not be able to give an alarm in time.
- 前碰撞预警系统通常处在后台工作状态，不会被驾驶员察觉，因此相关目标车辆或行人被检测到也不会显示。
- The FCW system is usually in the background working state and will not be detected by the driver, so the relevant target vehicle or pedestrian is detected and will not be displayed.
- 前碰撞预警系统识别功能需要行人与环境背景之间有足够的对比度，过亮或过暗的光照对系统都有消极影响。由于行人姿态或环境影响造成行人被探测的时间延迟或根本无法探测到，报警提示也会推迟或无法激发。
- The recognition function of the FCW system requires sufficient contrast between pedestrians and the environmental background, and too bright or too dark light has a negative impact on the system. If the pedestrian is detected or cannot be detected at all due to pedestrian posture or environmental impact, the alarm prompt will also be delayed or cannot be activated.
- 弯曲道路或山坡道路上、冰雪或灰尘挡住传感器时，系统可能无法探测到前方车辆。请及时清洁车辆前挡风玻璃。
- When the sensor is blocked by ice, snow or dust on a curved road or hillside road, the system may not detect the vehicle ahead. Please clean the front windshield in time.
- 前碰撞预警系统在能见度低，如在大雾、雨

天或雪天情况下会受到限制。

- The FCW system will be restricted in poor visibility, such as in heavy fog, rain or snow.
- 前碰撞预警系统在复杂交通情况下，可能会对车辆的识别不及时，造成报警提示滞后。
- In complex traffic situations, the FCW system may not identify the vehicle in time, resulting in lagging alarm prompts.

车道偏离预警系统 (LDW) *

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) *

行驶过程中，车辆无意识偏离车道时为驾驶员提供报警提示。

When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the lane during driving, an alarm prompt is provided for the driver.

功能开启

Function ON



点击显示屏的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【车道偏离预警LDWS】对LDW系统功能进行选择。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Driver Assistance]-[Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)] on the display screen to select LDW system functions.

LDW系统开启但未激活时，白色车道偏离系统开启指示灯常亮。

When the LDW system is turned on but not activated, the white Lane Departure Warning (LDW) ON indicator lamp is always on.

功能激活

Function activation

LDW系统检测到车道线，且车速大于等于70km/h时，自动进入功能激活状态。

When the LDW system detects the lane line and the vehicle speed is greater than or equal to 70 km/h, it will automatically enter the function activation state.

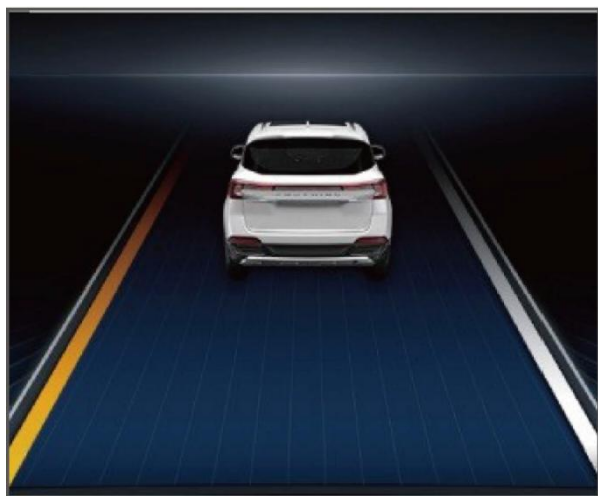
LDW系统激活后持续检测本车车道线，并

在组合仪表行车界面显示，如果未检测到车道线则不显示，LDW系统激活后，绿色车道偏离系统工作指示灯常亮。

After the LDW system is activated, the lane line of the vehicle will be continuously detected and displayed on the driving interface of the instrument cluster. If no lane line is detected, it will not be displayed. After the LDW system is activated, the green lane departure warning system indicator will be normally on.

功能触发

Function triggering



当车辆即将发生偏离车道危险时，车辆发出报警提示，组合仪表行车界面偏离侧车道线变红闪烁，伴随中频报警音。

When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, the vehicle will give an alarm prompt, and the lane line on the deviation side of the combination instrument driving interface will turn red and flash, accompanied by intermediate frequency alarm sound.

系统中断

System interrupted

LDW系统满足以下抑制条件，将不会被触发：

The LDW system will not be triggered if it meets the following inhibition conditions:

打开转向灯（或危险警告灯）。

Turn on the turn signal lamp (or hazard warning lamp).

LDW系统在以下场景，将延迟触发：

The LDW system will delay the triggering in the following scenarios:

1. LDW系统在 (125米 < 车道曲率 < 250米) 弯道上，进入弯道切入模式，预警会延迟发出。

1. When the LDW system enters the curve cut-in mode on a curve (125 m < lane curvature < 250 m), the warning will be given in a delayed manner.

2. LDW系统在 (2.5米 < 车道宽度 < 3.0米) 窄道下，进入窄道适应模式，预警会延迟发出。

2. When the LDW system enters the narrow

lane adaptation mode under the narrow lane (2.5m < lane width < 3.0m), the warning will be given in a delayed manner.

满足以下任意条件，车道偏离辅助系统退出激活状态：

The lane departure assist system will be deactivated if any of the following conditions is met:

1. 车速小于70km/h.
1. The vehicle speed remains under 70 km/h.
2. 两侧车道线消失。
2. The lane lines on both sides disappear.



● 车道线检测状态不能用来判断车辆是否处于车道内，驾驶员需自行控制车辆行驶方向。

● The lane line detection status cannot be used to judge whether the vehicle is in the lane, and the driver needs to control the driving direction of the vehicle by himself.



- LDW 系统只是辅助提醒系统，任何时候驾驶员都需要注意周边驾驶环境，自行判断是否需要变换车道。
- The LDW system is only an auxiliary warning system. The driver should pay attention to the surrounding driving environment at any time and decide whether to change lanes.

LDW 系统在如下条件可能会受到限制：

The LDW system may be limited under the following conditions:

1. 迎向强光行驶时。
1. When driving towards strong light;
2. 车道线被其它障碍物遮挡时。
2. When the lane line is blocked by other obstacles;
3. 在有雨雪覆盖的路面行驶时。
3. When driving on a road covered with rain and snow;
4. 车道线模糊或者夜晚光线较弱时。
4. When the lane line is blurred or the light is weak at night;
5. 大雾或雨雪等能见度较低的天气时。
5. When in heavy fog, rain, snow and other weather with low visibility;
6. 车道线宽度过窄或弯道曲率过大时。
6. When the lane line width is too narrow or the curve curvature is too large;
7. 与前车距离过近导致前视摄像头视线被遮挡时。
7. When the sight of the front-view camera is blocked due to too close distance from the front vehicle;
8. 前挡风玻璃上有冰雪或灰尘污渍挡住前视摄像头时。
8. When the front-view camera is blocked by ice, snow or dust stains on the front windshield;
9. 车道线分叉、交汇、人行道或施工区域等复杂道线情况下行驶时。
9. When driving under complex road lines

such as lane line bifurcation, intersection, sidewalk or construction area.

10. 路面有栏杆、树木或其它物体形成的阴影时可能会造成误识别。

10. Misidentification may occur when the road surface is shaded by railings, trees or other objects.

远光灯自动控制 (IHC) *

Automatic High Beam Control (IHC)

*

行驶过程中，车辆根据行车环境自动切换远近光灯，行车环境包括车辆和路灯等环境光因素。

During driving, the vehicle automatically switches between high and low beams according to the driving environment, which includes ambient light factors such as vehicles and street lamps.

功能开启

Function ON



点击显示屏上的【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【远光灯自动控制IHC】开关可开启或关闭。

Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Driver Assistance]-[Automatic Control of High Beam IHC] on the display screen to turn on or off.

开关开启的前提下，当车速于45km/h时，车辆灯光控制处于AUTO档且近光灯开启前提下，IHC功能开启。

With the switch turned on, when the vehicle speed is at 45 km/h, the IHC function is turned on on the premise that the vehicle light control is in AUTO position and the low beam is turned on.

功能触发

Function triggering

近光切远光：外界环境昏暗，车辆自动从近光切远光灯。

Low beam to high beam: When the external environment is dark, the vehicle automatically switches from low beam to high beam.

远光切近光：外界环境光源充足，车辆自动从远光切到近光灯。

Switching from high beam to low beam: The external ambient light source is sufficient, and the vehicle automatically switches from high beam to low beam.

系统中断

System interrupted

IHC系统满足以下任意条件，系统退出：

The IHC system will exit if any of the following conditions are met:

1. 近光灯关闭。
1. The low beam is turned off.
2. IHC系统关闭。
2. The IHC system shuts down.
3. 车速降到25km/h以下。
3. The vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h.
4. 灯光控制为超车灯档。
4. The light control is in the overtaking lamp position.
5. 灯光控制未处于AUTO档。
5. The light control is not in AUTO position.



注意



Attention

- 雨、冰雪、浓雾、污浊可能会导致IHC系统性能下降。
- Rain, ice, snow, dense fog and dirt may cause performance degradation of the IHC system.
- 前方来车的灯光被挡住时（例如防撞栏），可能会导致IHC系统不能正常工作。
- The IHC system may not work normally when the light of the vehicle ahead is blocked (such as the crash barrier).
- 道路附近有高反光物体时（例如交通标志），可能会导致IHC系统不能正常工作。
- When there are highly reflective objects near the road (such as traffic signs), the IHC system may not work normally.
- 路况恶劣路段（例如湿滑路面、斜坡上或凹坑中、急转弯等）行驶时，可能会由于车身不稳定导致IHC系统不能正常工作。
- The IHC system may not work normally due to the instability of the vehicle body when the vehicle is running on a bad road section (such as slippery road, slope or pit, sharp turn, etc.).

侧后向辅助驾驶 *

Lateral rear-facing driver assistance

*

侧后辅助系统通过后保险杠两侧的传感器，可对车辆后方或相邻车道上的车辆进行探测，若存在碰撞风险时，系统发出报警，以提示驾驶员安全驾驶。

The rear side assist system can detect vehicles behind the vehicle or in the adjacent lane through sensors on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a risk of collision, the system will issue an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

侧后向辅助系统主要功能包括：

The main functions of the side rear-facing assist system include:

1. 变道辅助。
1. Lane change assist
2. 开门预警。
2. DOW
3. 后方横穿预警。
3. Rear crossing warning

传感器

Sensors

雷达传感器位于后保险杠内侧。

The radar sensor is located inside the rear bumper.



注意



Attention

● 后向毫米波雷达安装在后保险杠内，为避免影响毫米波雷达性能，严禁私自对保险杠进行喷漆、加装包围等操作。

● The rear millimeter-wave radar is installed in the rear bumper. In order to avoid affecting the performance of the millimeter-wave radar, it is strictly prohibited to spray paint on the bumper or install surrounds without permission.

● 牵引其他车辆行驶时，请关闭侧后辅助系统。

● Please turn off the rear side assist system when towing other vehicles.

● 请保持后保险杠两侧清洁，请勿粘贴任何物体，不得有冰雪、泥浆等异物覆盖，以免影响传感器正常工作。

● Please keep both sides of the rear bumper clean, and do not paste any objects and have any ice, snow, mud and other foreign coverage, so as not to affect the normal work of the sensor.

● 不恰当的维修或改装车辆可能导致传感器错位，影响侧后辅助系统的正常工作。因此，建议您联系东风风行特约服务站。

● Improper maintenance or modification of the vehicle may cause sensor misalignment, affecting the normal operation of the rear side assist system. Therefore, it is recommended that you contact Dongfeng Forthing Special Service Station.



警告



Warning

● 当雷达无法正常工作，依赖于雷达提供探测信息的功能会受限，导致这些功能工作异常。同时，雷达的探测范围是有限的，无法探测在探测极限以外的目标。

● When the radar cannot work normally, the functions that rely on the radar to provide detection information will be limited, resulting in abnormal operation of these functions. At the same time, the radar has limited detection range and cannot detect targets beyond the detection limit.

● 雷达所处的环境状况不良时，会影响雷达的正常工作，此外，雷达所探测的目标状态异常时，也会影响雷达的探测结果。

● When the radar is in a poor environment, it will affect the normal operation of the radar. In addition, when the target detected by the radar is in an abnormal state, it will also affect the detection results of the radar.

以下情况会导致雷达无法探测到目标、探测延迟或探测错误:

The following conditions will cause the radar to fail to detect the target, detect the delay or detect the error:

1. 气候条件不良 (如大雨、大雪、浓雾等)。

1. Poor climatic conditions (such as heavy rain, heavy snow, dense fog, etc.).

2. 雷达表面被冰雪、积水、尘土等异物附着。

2. The radar surface is attached by foreign matters such as ice, snow, accumulated water and dust.

3. 雷达所探测的目标附着吸收声波的物质, 如: 雪花、泡沫、棉质物体等或者车辆附近有能够导致声波错误反射的物体。

3. The target detected by the radar is attached with substances that absorb sound waves, such as snowflakes, foam, cotton objects, etc., or objects near the vehicle that can cause wrong reflection of sound waves.

4. 道路凹凸不平或其它原因造成本车颠簸或晃动。

4. The vehicle bumps or shakes due to uneven road or other reasons.

5. 被探测物体体积过小。

5. The detected object is too small.

6. 周围有相同频率的声波音源干扰。

6. There is interference from acoustic wave sources of the same frequency around.

以上示例、警告、限制未尽述影响雷达传感器正常工作的所有情况。

The above examples, warnings and restrictions do not cover all situations that affect the normal operation of the radar sensor.

为保护工作在同频段的射电天文业务, 装载汽车雷达的车辆不得驶入我国相关射电天文台的干扰保护距离内。

Vehicles equipped with automotive radar are not allowed to enter the interference protection distance of the relevant radio observatories in China to protect radio astronomy services operating in the same frequency band.

报警灯

Alarm lamp



报警灯位于左、右外后视镜的镜壳处。

The alarm lamps are located at the mirror housings of the left and right exterior rearview mirrors.



请勿在报警灯上粘贴任何物体, 以免影响系统报警功能。

Please do not paste any objects on the alarm lamps to avoid affecting the system's alarm function.

变道辅助（LCA）系统

Lane change assist (LCA) system

LCA系统包含盲区监测系统和车道变换辅助，可检测到从侧后方接近本车的车辆并提供预警信息，避免发生碰撞。

LCA system includes blind spot monitoring system and lane change assistance, which can detect vehicles approaching the vehicle from the rear side and provide early warning information to avoid collision.

功能开启

Function ON



点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【变道辅助LCA】可选择【关闭】、【显示】或【声音+显示】，车辆出厂默认【显示+声音】。

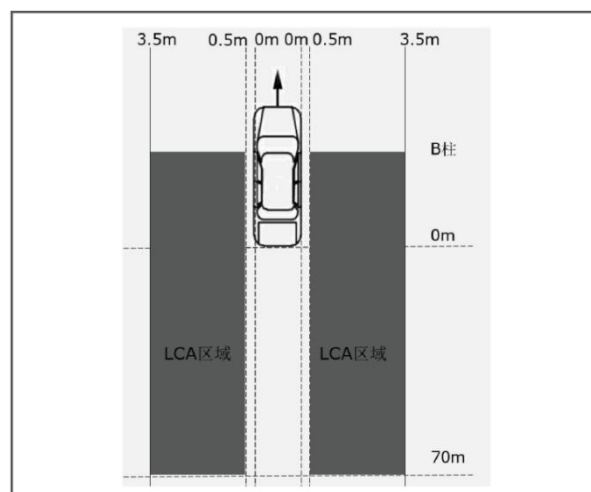
Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Driver Assistance]-[Lane Change Assist (LCA)] on the display screen to select [Off], [Display] or [Sound + Display]. The factory default is [Display + Sound].

变道辅助LCA选择【显示】或【声音+显示】前提下，当车速大于18km/h时功能开启，实时监测车辆侧后方车况，保障用户变道安全。

On the premise that [Display] or [Sound + Display] is selected for lane change assist (LCA), the function is turned on when the vehicle speed is greater than 18 km/h, so as to monitor the vehicle conditions behind the vehicle in real time and ensure the lane change safety of the user.

变道辅助范围

Lane change assist range



LCA系统的报警区域为车辆左右两侧横向从0.5米到3.5米、纵向从车辆B柱位置到车尾后方70米，如图所示。阴影区域为预警区域，左右对称。

The alarm area of the LCA system is 0.5 m to 3.5 m horizontally on the left and right sides of the vehicle and 70 m longitudinally from the B-pillar position to the rear of the vehicle, as shown in the figure. The shaded area is the warning area, which is bilaterally symmetrical.

功能触发

Function triggering

一级报警:

Level 1 alarm:

目标接近本车触发一级报警，同侧后视镜盲区灯长亮。

When the target approaches the vehicle, the level 1 alarm will be triggered, and the blind spot light of the rearview mirror on the same side will be always on.

二级报警:

Level 2 alarm:

目标接近本车触发一级报警，同侧转向灯开启时触发二级报警，同侧后视镜盲区灯闪烁，伴随声音报警。

When the target approaches the vehicle, the level 1 alarm will be triggered. When the turn signal lamp on the same side is turned on, the level 2 alarm will be triggered. The blind spot lamp of the rearview mirror on the same side will flash, accompanied by an audible alarm.

系统中断

System interrupted

满足以下任意条件，系统退出:

The system will exit if any of the following conditions are met:

1. LCA系统选择【关闭】。
1. Select [Close] for the LCA system.
2. 启动开关处于OFF状态。
2. The ignition key is at OFF.
3. 档位处于非D档，车速小于15km/h。
3. The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h when the gearshift lever is not in D position.



注意



Attention

- 急转弯情况下，LCA系统不起作用。
- The LCA system does not work in case of sharp turns.
- LCA系统在倒车时不工作。
- The LCA system does not work during

reversing.

- LCA系统是辅助驾驶功能，并非在所有情况下都工作。
 - The LCA system is a driving assistance function and does not work in all cases.
 - LCA系统不能取代安全驾驶以及内外后视镜的使用。
 - The LCA system cannot replace safe driving and the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors.
- 变道辅助并非总能在各种情况下工作，多种原因都可能导致发生不必要、不准时或无效的警告或遗漏警告，比如：
- 雷达受限。

Lane change assist is not always able to work under various circumstances, and various reasons may lead to unnecessary, inappropriate or invalid warnings or omitted warnings, such as:

- Radar is limited.
- 盲区中存在体积较大的运动的金属物体。
- There are large moving metal objects in the dead zone.

当行驶在弯道较大、车道较宽或者高低不平的路上时，LCA系统可能无法对旁边车道行驶的车辆进行报警。

When the vehicle is running on a road with large curves, wide lanes or uneven height, the LCA system may not be able to give an alarm to the vehicle running on the lane next to it.

LCA系统可能会在如下情况误报警:

The LCA system may give false alarms in the following cases:

1. 行驶地离防护栏比较近的时候。
1. When the driving ground is close to the guardrail;
2. 行驶在桥上，桥下或隧道中。
2. When driving on a bridge, under a bridge or in a tunnel;

3. 行驶在灌木，树木等旁边。
3. When driving beside shrubs, trees, etc.
4. 行驶路旁有电线杆，路灯或者水泥矮墙等。
4. When there are electric poles, street lamps or concrete low walls beside the driving road;
5. 行驶在建筑区域如工厂厂房，港口等附近。
5. When driving near construction areas such as factory buildings, ports, etc.
6. 行驶在城市道路或者多车道路口转弯时。
6. When driving on urban roads or turning at multi-lane intersections.

上述警告和限制并未表述出所有可能干扰LCA系统的情况。有多种因素可导致LCA系统的失灵，为避免碰撞，驾驶车辆时驾驶员需保持警惕，时刻关注道路情况，以便在安全的情况下变换车道。

The above warnings and limitations do not address all situations that may interfere with the LCA system. There are many factors that can lead to LCA system failure. In order to avoid collision, the driver needs to be vigilant when driving the vehicle and always pay attention to the road conditions so as to change lanes when it is safe to do so.

开门预警（DOW）系统

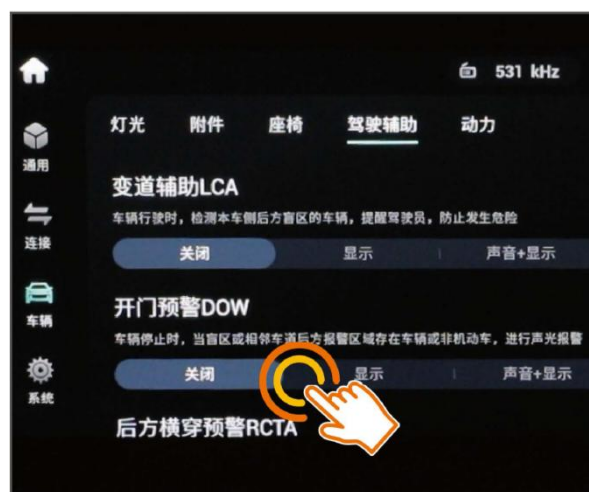
Door open warning (DOW) test

车辆静止时，DOW系统可检测从后方接近本车的车辆、骑行者或行人等。当检测到有目标接近时，驾驶员或乘客打开车门，DOW系统会发出预警信息，避免发生碰撞危险。

When the vehicle is stationary, the DOW system can detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians approaching the vehicle from the rear. When a target is detected to be approaching, the driver or passenger opens the door and the DOW system sends out a warning message to avoid the risk of collision.

功能开启

Function ON



点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【开门预警DOW】可选择【关闭】、【显示】或【声音+显示】，车辆出厂默认是【声音+显示】。

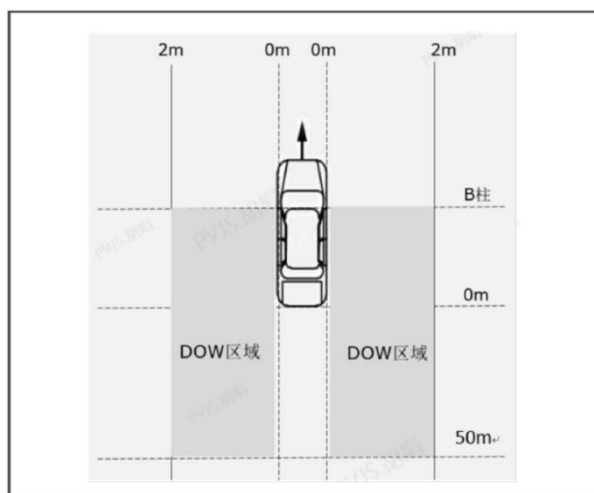
Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Driver Assistance]-[Door Opening Warning DOW] on the display screen to select [Close], [Display] or [Sound + Display]. The default value of the vehicle is [Sound + Display].

开门预警DOW选择【显示】或【声音+显示】的前提下，车速为0km/h时功能开启，实时监测车辆侧后方车况，保障用户下车安全。

On the premise that [Display] or [Sound + Display] is selected for the door opening warning DOW, the function is turned on when the vehicle speed is 0 km/h, so as to monitor the vehicle conditions behind the vehicle in real time and ensure the safety of users getting off the vehicle.

开门预警范围

Door opening warning range



DOW系统的报警区域为车辆左右两侧横向从0米到2米、纵向从车辆B柱的位置到车尾后方50米，如图所示。阴影区域为预警区域，左右对称。

The alarm area of the DOW system is from 0 m to 2 m horizontally on the left and right sides of the vehicle, and from the B-pillar position to 50 m behind the rear of the vehicle longitudinally, as shown in the figure. The shaded area is the warning area, which is bilaterally symmetrical.

功能触发

Function triggering

一级报警:

Level 1 alarm:

目标接近本车触发一级报警，报警灯长亮。

When the target approaches the vehicle, the level 1 alarm will be triggered, and the alarm lamp will be always on.

二级报警:

Level 2 alarm:

目标接近本车触发一级报警，同侧车门开启时触发二级报警，同侧后视镜盲区灯闪烁，伴随声音报警。

When the target approaches the vehicle, the level 1 alarm will be triggered. When the door on the same side is opened, the level 2 alarm will be triggered. The blind spot light of the rearview mirror on the same side will flash, accompanied by an audible alarm.

系统中断

System interrupted

1. 车速大于0km/h。
1. The speed is over 0km/h.
2. 发动机关闭超过3分钟。
2. The engine is cold for more than 3 minutes.



- 仅在本车静止时，DOW系统才是有效的，车辆移动时，该功能不会工作。
- The DOW system is effective only when the vehicle is stationary, and this function will not work when the vehicle is moving.
- 即使本车静止时，DOW系统也无法在所有情况下都工作，不能取代驾驶员和乘客的目视观察，以及内外后视镜的作用，请勿过度依赖DOW系统。
- Even when the vehicle is stationary, the DOW system cannot work under all circumstances and cannot replace the visual observation of the driver and passengers and the function of the interior and exterior rearview mirrors. Please do not rely too much on the DOW system.



注意



Attention

- DOW系统旨在提醒驾驶员和乘客在打开车门时注意开门的环境安全，受限于传感器的性能和交通环境的复杂程度，有可能发出不必要的报警或不报警，下车前主动观察开门环境是驾驶员和乘客保证人身安全最有效的措施和责任。
- The DOW system is designed to remind the driver and passengers to pay attention to the environmental safety when opening the door. Limited by the performance of the sensor and the complexity of the traffic environment, unnecessary alarms or no alarms may be given. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off the vehicle is the most effective measure and responsibility for the driver and passengers to ensure personal safety.

DOW系统并非总能在各种情况下工作，多种原因都可能导致发生不必要、不准时、无效的警告或遗漏警告，比如：

The DOW system is not always able to work under various circumstances, and various reasons may lead to unnecessary, inappropriate and invalid warnings or omitted warnings, such as:

1. 雷达受限。
1. Radar is limited.
2. 较小的目标或静止的目标。
2. Smaller targets or stationary targets

3. 目标速度太快，或有转向行为。例如：目标车辆换道至本车正后方、其它车辆在本车正后方突然变道出现在检测区域中。

3. The target speed is too fast, or there is steering behavior. For example, when the target vehicle changes lane to the right rear of the subject vehicle, other vehicles suddenly change lane right rear of the subject vehicle and appear in the detection area.

4. 本车正后方的其它车辆、骑行者。

4. Other vehicles and cyclists directly behind the vehicle

5. 本车在转弯处或墙体旁等位置停留。

5. The vehicle stays at a turning or beside a wall.

上述警告和限制并未表述出所有可能干扰开

门预警的情况。有多种因素可导致开门预警的失灵，为避免在开门时发生刮碰危险，请谨记观察开门环境是否安全、适合。

The above warnings and restrictions do not address all situations that may interfere with the door opening warning. There are many factors that can lead to the failure of door opening warning. In order to avoid the risk of scratching when opening the door, please remember to observe whether the door opening environment is safe and suitable.

后方横穿预警（RCTA）系统

Rear Crossing Alert (RCTA) System

RCTA系统可检测横穿本车后方的车辆、骑行者或行人等。当车辆倒车时，系统检测到有目标接近，车辆存在碰撞风险，RCTA系统将发出预警信息，避免发生碰撞危险。

The RCTA system can detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians crossing the rear of the vehicle. When the vehicle is reversing, the system detects that there is a target approaching and the vehicle has a collision risk, and the RCTA system will send out an early warning message to avoid collision risk.

功能开启

Function ON



点击显示屏【设置】-【车辆】-【驾驶辅助】-【后方横穿预警RCTA】开关可开启或关闭。

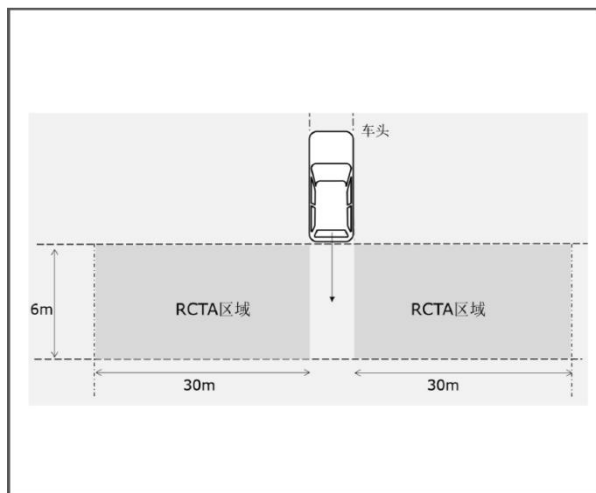
Click [Settings]-[Vehicle]-[Driver Assistance]-[RCTA] on the display screen to turn on or off.

后方横穿预警RCTA开关开启前提下，车辆处于R档且车速小于10km/h时功能开启，实时监测车辆后方横穿车辆，保障倒车安全。

On the premise that the RCTA switch is turned on, the function is turned on when the vehicle is in R gear and the vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h, so as to monitor the rear crossing vehicle in real time and ensure reversing safety.

后方横穿预警范围

Rear crossing warning range



RCTA系统报警区域为车辆左右两侧横向从0米到30米、后向从车尾到后方6米，如图所示。

阴影区域为预警区域，左右对称。

The alarm area of RCTA system is from 0m to 30m laterally on the left and right sides of the vehicle, and from the rear to 6m rearward, as shown in the figure. The shaded area is the warning area, which is bilaterally symmetrical.

功能触发

Function triggering

当车辆倒车时有目标接近车辆后方，报警灯闪烁，同时伴有声音提示和泊车辅助界面显示。

When a target approaches the rear of the vehicle during reversing, the alarm lamp flashes, accompanied by sound prompt and parking assist interface display.

系统中断

System interrupted

1. 档位处于非R档。
1. The gear is at R position.
2. 车速大于10km/h。
2. Vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.



注意



Attention

- RCTA系统是一项辅助驾驶功能，并非在所有情况下都工作。
- The RCTA system is an assisted driving function and does not work in all situations.
- RCTA系统不能取代安全驾驶以及内外后视镜的使用。
- The RCTA system cannot replace safe driving and the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors.
- 使用RCTA系统绝不代表驾驶员可以无所作为并松懈。以安全方式倒车始终是驾驶员的职责。
- The use of the RCTA system does not in any way mean that the driver can do nothing and relax. It is always the responsibility of the driver to reverse in a safe manner.

多种原因都可能导致RCTA系统发生不必要、不准时或无效的警告和遗漏警告，比如：

There are a number of reasons that can lead to unnecessary, untimely, or ineffective warnings and missed warnings in the RCTA system, such as:

1. 雷达受限。
1. Radar is limited.
2. 探测对象速度过快。
2. The detection object is too fast.
3. 盲区中存在体积较大的、运动的金属物体。
3. There are large moving metal objects in the blind spot.

以下情况可能导致雷达识别障碍，影响RCTA系统的性能，包括但不限于：

The following conditions may cause obstacles to radar identification and affect the performance of

the RCTA system, including but not limited to:

1. 雷达错位或被遮挡，或覆盖有泥土、冰雪、金属板、胶带、标签、树叶等。

1. The radar is misaligned or blocked, or covered with soil, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.

2. 由于车辆碰撞、刮蹭等导致雷达或者周围区域受到撞击驾驶。

2. The radar or the surrounding area is hit and driven due to vehicle collision or scratch.

3. 雨、雪、雾、霾等极端天气情况下，可能会影响雷达的性能。

3. Extreme weather conditions such as rain, snow, fog and haze may affect the performance of the radar.

4. 由于雷达识别目标特性限制，在极少特殊情况下，可能会对部分金属防护栏、绿化带、水泥墙等产生误报警。

4. Due to the limitation of radar identification target characteristics, false alarms may be generated for some metal protective fences, green belts, concrete walls, etc. under very few special circumstances.

上述警告和限制并未表述出所有可能干扰RCTA系统的情况。有多种因素可导致RCTA系统的失灵，为避免碰撞，驾驶车辆时驾驶员需保持警惕，时刻关注道路情况，以便在安全的情况下倒车。

These warnings and limitations do not address all situations that could interfere with the RCTA system. There are many factors that can lead to the failure of the RCTA system. In order to avoid collision, the driver needs to be vigilant when driving the vehicle and always pay attention to the road conditions so as to reverse the vehicle when it is safe to do so.

定期保养 215

Regular maintenance 215

日常检查项目 215

Daily inspection items 215

清洁和养护 216

Cleaning and maintenance 216

外部保养 216

Exterior Maintenance 216

前舱流水槽 217

Front compartment gutter channel 217

整车密封条 217

Sealing strip of complete vehicle 217

内部保养 218

Interior Maintenance 218

自行维护 220

Self-maintenance 220

发动机舱 221

Engine compartment 221

发动机舱布置 222

Layout of engine compartment 222

发动机机油 224

Engine oil 224

装配GPF（汽油颗粒捕集器）的国六车辆对于润滑油的技术要求 224

Technical requirements for lubricating oil of China VI vehicles equipped with GPF (gasoline particulate filter) 224

发动机机油液位检查 225

Inspection of engine oil level 225

发动机机油补充 226

Engine oil supplement 226

机油更换 226

Oil replacement 226

车辆冷却液 227

Vehicle coolant 227

制动液 228

Brake fluid 228

玻璃洗涤液检查 229

Inspection of glass washer fluid 229

空调滤清器 230

A/C Filter 230

空气滤清器 231

Air filter 231

燃油滤清器 231

Fuel filter 231

12V低压蓄电池 232

12V Low-voltage battery 232

轮胎 233

Tire 233

主动进气格栅（AGS） 237

Active air intake grille (AGS) 237

发动机在暖风开启时的工作状态237

Working state of engine with warm air on
..... 237

定期保养

Regular maintenance

日常检查项目

Daily inspection items

项目 Project	检查内容 Inspection
发动机机油液位 Engine oil level	应在每次加油时检查发动机机油液位。 The engine oil level should be checked at each refueling.
发动机冷却液液位 Engine coolant level	应在每次加油时检查冷却液液位。 The coolant level should be checked at each refueling.
动力电池冷却液液位 Power battery coolant level	日常保养中需检查冷却液膨胀罐液位，不能低于min线。 During daily maintenance, check the coolant expansion tank level, which shall not be lower than the min mark.
制动踏板 Brake pedal	每次开车前检查制动踏板是否操作自如。 Check the brake pedal for its maneuverability before driving each time.
喇叭 Horn	每次开车前检查喇叭是否正常。 Check whether the horn is normal before driving each time.
车门 Doors	检查后背门及其他所有的车门（包括后车门）是否开闭自如、上锁牢固。 Check if the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened/closed freely and locked firmly.
空调系统 A/C system	每周都应检查空调装置的运转情况。 The operation of the air conditioning unit shall be checked weekly.
洗涤液 Washing liquid	应每月检查一次洗涤液的存量。 The stock of washing liquid

	should be checked once a month.
雨刮器 Wiper	每月检查一次雨刮器状况。 Check the wiper once a month.
制动器 Brake	每月检查一次制动液液位。 Check the brake fluid level once a month.
轮胎 Tire	每月检查一次轮胎胎压。 Check the tire pressure once a month. 检查胎面的磨损状况及是否嵌有异物。 Check the tread for wear and foreign matters.
12V低压蓄电池 12V low-voltage battery	每月检查一次12V低压蓄电池的状况以及端子的腐蚀状况。 Check the condition of 12V low-voltage battery and the corrosion of terminals once a month.
前挡风玻璃除霜装置 Front windshield defrosting device	每月都应在使用暖风装置和空调时，检查除霜装置出风口。 Check the air outlet of defroster every month when using the heating device and the A/C.
车灯 Lights	每月检查一次前大灯、小灯、尾灯、高位制动灯及牌照灯的状况。 Check the front headlamp, side light, tail lamp, high mount stop lamp and license plate lamp for their states once a month.

清洁和养护

Cleaning and maintenance

外部保养

Exterior Maintenance

定期专业的养护可使车辆保持较好的状态。下文将介绍如何保持车辆外观的清洁，其中包括：洗车、油漆、抛光与车轮等，以及有关防腐的措施。

Regular and professional maintenance can keep the vehicle in good condition. The following will describe how to keep the appearance of the vehicle clean, including car washing, paint, polishing and wheel cleaning, as well as anti-corrosion measures.

洗车

Vehicle washing

经常洗车，有助于保护车辆的外观。灰尘和砂砾会划伤漆面，树叶和鸟粪会永久性损坏车身表面的光洁度。建议在阴凉处清洗车身。

Frequent washing helps preserve your car's appearance. Dust and grit will scratch the paint surface, and leaves and bird droppings will permanently damage the surface finish of the vehicle body. It is recommended to clean the vehicle body in a cool place.

只能使用《使用手册》中所推荐的溶剂和清洁剂。在擦干车身的同时，要检查车身有无掉漆或划痕。如果有发现，则要用修补漆将其修补完好。

Use only solvents and cleaning agents recommended in the User Manual. As drying the vehicle, check it for chips or scratches. If found, repair it with touch-up paint.



注意



Attention

● 清洗车辆时使用化学溶剂和强力清洁剂会损坏车身的油漆、金属和塑料零部件。建议使用凉水彻底冲洗车辆，以清除浮尘。

● Using chemical solvents and strong detergents when cleaning the vehicle will damage the paint, metal and plastic parts of the vehicle body. It is recommended to wash the vehicle thoroughly with cold water to remove floating dust.

● 检查车身有无沥青、树叶等污物，可用沥青

清除剂或松节油清除此类污物，然后立即用清水冲洗，以免损坏车身表面的光洁度。

● Check the vehicle body for asphalt, leaves and other dirt, which can be removed with asphalt remover or turpentine, and then wash it with clean water immediately to avoid damaging the surface finish of the vehicle body.

● 清洗完整个车身外表后，应用软毛巾将其擦干。在空气中自然晾干会导致车身外表失去光泽或形成水渍。

● After cleaning the entire body surface, wipe it dry with a soft towel. Natural drying in the air will cause loss of luster or formation of water stains on the exterior of the vehicle body.

打蜡

Waxing

车辆打蜡有利于防止粘附灰尘和道路上的化学物质。在清洗和擦干车辆后，才可以进行打蜡作业，至少每三个月打一次蜡，这样有助于保护车身。应使用优质液体蜡或糊状蜡。使用时，应参照包装上的说明进行操作。

Vehicle waxing is helpful to prevent adhesion of dust and chemicals on the road. Wax the vehicle only after cleaning and drying, and wax it at least once every three months, which helps to protect the body. Use high-quality liquid or pasty wax. When using the wax, read the descriptions on the package. Generally, there are two kinds of waxes as follows: When using, follow the instructions on the packaging.

一般有以下两类产品：

There are generally two types of products:

车身蜡

Body wax

车身蜡是一种敷在漆面上用以保护其免受阳光照射、空气污染等损坏的蜡。建议新车使用半年左右再打车身蜡。

Body wax is a kind of wax applied on the paint surface to protect it from sunlight, air pollution and other damages. It is recommended to wax the vehicle body after the new vehicle is used for about half a year.

抛光蜡

Polishing wax

抛光蜡可以修复已经被氧化或者失去光泽的漆面，使其重放光彩。此类蜡一般含有柔和的研磨料和溶剂，可以除去被氧化的漆面表层。如果打了车身蜡后漆面未能恢复原来的光泽，应该涂上抛光蜡。

Polishing wax can repair the paint that has been oxidized or lost its gloss, making it glossy again. Such waxes generally contain soft abrasives and solvents to remove oxidized paint surfaces. If the original gloss cannot be restored after the body wax is applied, polishing wax shall be applied.



注意



Attention

用清洗剂清除沥青、昆虫等污物时，会造成脱蜡。因此，需要在脱蜡位置补蜡。

When the detergent is used to remove such pollutants as pitch and insects, dewaxing may occur. Therefore, it is necessary to replenish wax in the dewaxing position.

漆面的修补

Refinishing

油漆涂层上出现小的裂纹和划痕时，应立即使用专用修补涂膜或修补漆进行修补，以防止腐蚀。

Small cracks and scratches on the paint coating shall be repaired immediately with a special repair film or repair paint to prevent corrosion.

铝合金车轮

Aluminum alloy wheel

在清洗车身外部时，应同时清洗车辆的铝合金车轮。清洗完成后，再用水彻底冲洗铝合金车轮。

When cleaning the exterior of the vehicle body, the aluminum alloy wheels of the vehicle shall be cleaned at the same time. After cleaning, rinse the aluminum alloy wheel thoroughly with water.

前舱流水槽

Front compartment gutter channel

前舱流水槽位于前挡风玻璃前方，雨刮盖板下方，是车辆前部非常重要的水路通流结构。

The front compartment gutter channel is located in front of the front windshield and below the wiper cover plate, which is a very important water passage structure in front of the vehicle.

应每5000公里检查一次前舱流水槽的排水状况，尽量保证雨刮盖板的干净整洁，避免流水槽内部排水孔堵塞或积水导致相关用电设备损坏。如果发现有堵塞和积水现象，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

Check the drainage condition of the front compartment gutter channel every 5,000 km, and try to ensure that the wiper cover plate is clean and tidy, so as to avoid damage to relevant electrical equipment caused by blockage or water accumulation in the gutter channel. In case of blockage and water accumulation, please contact Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in time.

整车密封条

Sealing strip of complete vehicle

密封条是安装在车门或车身上的橡胶密封零部件，是保证车门防水密封的零部件之一，属于其他部件。

The sealing strip is a rubber sealing part installed on the door or vehicle body. It is one of the parts that ensure the waterproof sealing of the door and belongs to other parts.

车辆使用过程中应及时清理密封条表面，避免砂砾或硬质颗粒在密封条表面造成过度磨损。如发现密封条表面有磨损损坏的现象，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

During the use of the vehicle, the surface of the sealing strip shall be cleaned in time to avoid excessive wear caused by gravel or hard particles on the surface of the sealing strip. If the sealing strip surface is found to be worn or damaged, please contact Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in time.

内部保养

Interior Maintenance

地毯

Carpet

应经常用吸尘器吸去地毯上的灰尘。积尘过多会加快地毯的损坏。定期用洗涤剂洗刷，可使地毯保洁如新。

The dust on the carpet should often be cleaned by a vacuum cleaner. Excessive dust accumulation will accelerate the damage of the carpet. Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition.

编织物

Fabric

应经常用吸尘器吸去编织物上的灰尘及污物。可使用低温的中性肥皂水清洗，然后在空气中晾干。

The dust and dirt on the textile fabrics would often be cleaned by a vacuum cleaner. Wash with low-temperature neutral soapy water and dry in the air.

维尼龙

Vinylon

用吸尘器除去灰尘和污物。用浸有中性肥皂水的软布擦洗维尼龙，除去难以清除的污渍，也可以使用喷雾型或泡沫型维尼龙清洁剂。

Use a dust collector to remove the dust and pollutants. Use soft cloth with mild soap solution to wipe the vinylon. Use a bristle brush with the same soap solution to remove the stains difficult to be cleared. The spray-type or foam type vinylon detergent shall also be a good choice. Scrub the vinylon with a soft cloth soaked in neutral soapy water to remove stains that are difficult to remove, or use a spray or foam type vinylon cleaner.

皮革

Leather

要经常用吸尘器吸去皮革上的灰尘及污物，尤其是皱折和接缝处。可以用柔软的布沾上清水来清洁皮革，然后再用另一柔软的干布将其擦干。如果需要进一步清洗，可以使用清洗皮革专用的肥皂。

Frequently use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt from the leather, especially at wrinkles and joints. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dipped in clean water, and then wipe it dry with another soft dry cloth. If further cleaning is required, soap for leather cleaning can be used.

车窗

Windows

用玻璃洗涤剂清洗车窗内外侧。用软布或纸巾擦干所有的玻璃和塑料表面。

Use the glass detergent to clean both interior and exterior sides of the windows. Use soft cloth or tissue to wipe all glass and plastic surfaces clean. Dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

座椅安全带

Seat belt

如果座椅安全带变脏，可用软刷蘸中性温肥皂水擦洗。不要使用漂白粉、染料或清洁剂，此类物品会降低座椅安全带的耐用性。安全带未干之前，不得使用。

If the seat belts are dirtied, use a soft brush with mild soap solution to wipe the seat belts clean. Do not use bleaching powder, dye or detergent because such things will reduce the durability of the seat belts. Before driving, dry the seat belts in the air. Do not use bleach, dyes or cleaning solvents. Such products reduce the durability of seat belts. Do not use the seat belt before it becomes dry.

座椅安全带出口处搭环积尘太多会导致座椅安全带收缩迟缓，可用干净软布蘸中性温肥皂水或异丙基酒精擦洗搭环内侧。不建议对座椅安全带进行拆解清洗，如必须通过拆解才能清洗，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Too much dust accumulated at the loop at the seat belt outlet will lead to slow contraction of the seat belt. The inner side of the loop can be scrubbed with a clean soft cloth dipped in neutral warm soapy water or isopropyl alcohol. It is not recommended to disassemble and clean the seat belt. If the seat belt must be disassembled before cleaning, please

contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

空气清新剂

Air freshener

如需在车内使用空气清新剂或除臭剂，建议选用固体型，有些液体空气清新剂中含有的化学成分，会引起车内饰物和编织物的纤维断裂或褪色。

If it is necessary to use air freshener or deodorant in the vehicle, it is recommended to select solid type. Some chemical components contained in liquid air freshener will cause fiber breakage or fading of interior trims and braided fabrics.

如果使用液体空气清新剂，应确保将其固定妥当，以免行车时溅出。

Make sure that liquid air freshener is properly fixed if used, so as not to spill when the vehicle is running.

防腐蚀

Corrosion resistance

车辆底部容易积聚盐、污物和湿气。车辆油漆被刮除或被石头、沙砾磨损等会导致金属失去保护，暴露在外从而致使车辆生锈。预防生锈通常的措施有：

Salt, dirt and moisture can easily accumulate under the vehicle. Scraping off the vehicle paint or wearing off by stones and grit will cause the metal to lose protection and be exposed, thus causing the vehicle to rust. Common measures to prevent rusting include:

1. 保持车辆清洁。

1. Keep the Vehicle Clean.

2. 保持车库干燥。

2. Keep the garage dry.

3. 保持漆面和装饰物处于良好状态。

3. Keep paint and decorations in good condition.

4. 定期做车内保养等。

4. Regularly carry out interior maintenance, etc.

自行维护

Self-maintenance

每次行车后，先使发动机怠速运转1～3分钟再熄火，让发动机得到充分冷却，延长发动机的使用寿命。发动机初次启动后会自动进入暖机，

让发动机的运转部件得到润滑，水温适宜后可随驾驶需求改变发动机转速。建议驾驶时保持轻缓的驾驶习惯。

After each driving, idle the engine for 1-3 minutes before shutting down the engine, so that the engine can be fully cooled and the service life of the engine can be prolonged. After the engine is started for the first time, it will automatically warm up to lubricate the running parts of the engine. After the water temperature is appropriate, the engine speed can be changed according to the driving requirements. It is recommended to keep a gentle driving habit when driving.

发动机舱

Engine compartment

打开发动机舱盖

Opening of the engine hood



1. 拉动位于仪表台左侧下方的发动机舱盖开启手柄，发动机舱盖会稍微弹起。

1. Pull the engine hood opening handle at the lower left side of the dashboard, and the engine hood will pop up slightly.



2. 向左拨动保险锁杆并抬起发动机舱盖。

2. Pull the safety lock lever to the left and lift the engine hood.

关闭发动机舱盖

Closing of engine Hood



未配备发动机舱盖气撑杆的车型，将发动机舱盖抬升至距离关闭位置30厘米左右的高度，然后释放，使其自由下落即可关闭。配置发动机舱盖气撑杆的车型，将发动机舱盖下拉至距离关闭位置30厘米左右的高度，然后下推至关闭即可，并确认锁止到位。如果未锁止到位，请用力按压发动机舱盖前端中部直至其完全合上。

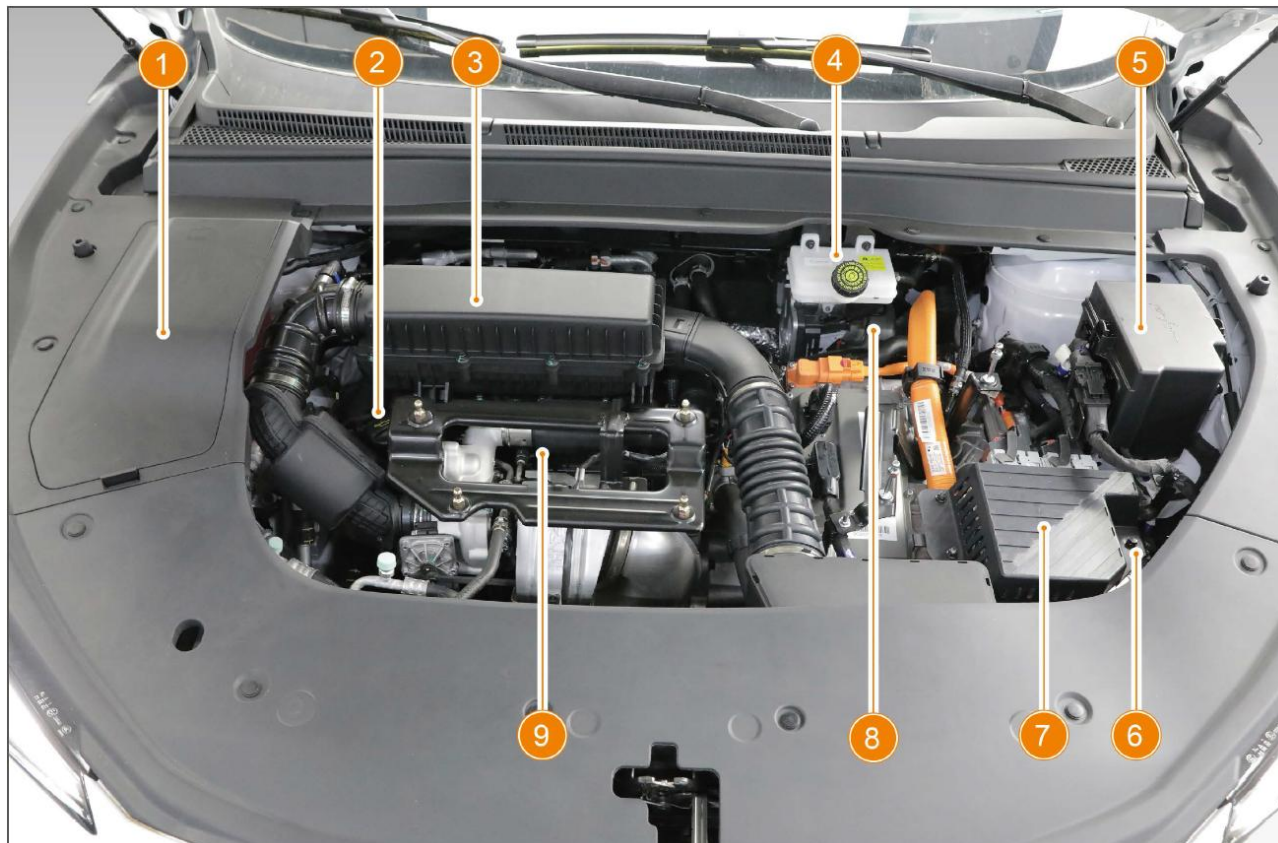
For models without engine hood pneumatic stay, lift the engine hood to a height of about 30 cm from the closing position, and then release it to allow it to fall freely to close. For models equipped with engine hood pneumatic rods, pull down the engine hood to a height of about 30 cm from the closed position, then push it down to close it, and confirm that it is locked in place. If it is not locked in place, please press the middle part of the front end of the engine hood until it is fully closed.

发动机舱布置

Layout of engine compartment

图片仅供参考，具体以实车为准。

The picture is for reference only, and the actual vehicle shall prevail.



1. 洗涤剂储液罐 + 冷却液膨胀罐
1. Washer fluid reservoir + coolant expansion tank

6. 二合一 (PDU+DCDC)
6. Two-in-one (PDU+DCDC)

- 2. 发动机机油加注口盖
- 2. Engine oil filler cap
- 3. 空气滤清器
- 3. Air filter
- 4. 制动液储液罐
- 4. Brake fluid reservoir
- 5. 发动机舱保险丝盒
- 5. Engine compartment fuse box

- 7. ECU
- 8. 助力器
- 8. Booster
- 9. 发动机
- 9. Engine

发动机机油

Engine oil

请选择适合您车辆的发动机机油。

Please select the engine oil suitable for your vehicle.

适用条件 Applicable conditions	发动机型号 Engine model	机油牌号 Engine oil grade	加注量 Filling amount
四季通用 Universal in all seasons	4E15T	SP 5W-30	3.5L

本车无需任何机油添加剂。添加剂不能改善发动机的性能。

This vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives do not improve the performance of the engine.



注意



Attention

因使用添加剂而对发动机造成的不良后果，东风柳州汽车有限公司将不承担任何责任。

Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. will not bear any responsibility for the adverse consequences of the engine caused by the use of additives.

装配GPF（汽油颗粒捕集器）的国六车辆对于润滑油的技术要求

Technical requirements for lubricating oil of China VI vehicles equipped with GPF (gasoline particulate filter)

GPF的主要作用就是过滤尾气中的颗粒物，减少尾气中颗粒物的浓度和数量。

The main function of GPF is to filter the particulate matter in the tail gas and reduce the concentration and quantity of particulate matter in the tail gas.

随着使用时间增加，GPF收集的颗粒物会越来越多，累积到一定程度就会堵塞GPF颗粒捕集器，导致排气不畅，影响发动机动力。

With the increase of service time, more and more particulate matters collected by GPF will accumulate to a certain extent, which will block the GPF, resulting in poor exhaust and affecting the engine power.

润滑油在参与发动机润滑的过程中，会有部分进入燃烧室被燃烧，并随发动机排气进入三元催化和GPF颗粒捕集器等排放处理装置，由于润滑油燃烧后形成的灰分为金属盐物质，无法通过再生清除，逐渐累积在GPF中，进而造成GPF堵塞。

In the process of engine lubrication, some lubricating oil will enter the combustion chamber for combustion, and enter the emission treatment devices such as three-way catalytic converter and GPF along with the engine exhaust. As the ash formed by lubricating oil combustion is metal salt, it cannot be removed by regeneration and gradually accumulates in GPF, resulting in GPF blockage.

灰分的形成和润滑油添加剂物质有很大关系，为了减少灰分，要使用低灰分和高级别的机油，东风风行专用的“统一石化低灰分SP5W-30（LA）”机油，灰分低，能够有效减少GPF阻塞，保障发动机正常有效工作，进而降低养护成本。

The formation of ash is closely related to the lubricant additives. In order to reduce ash, low ash and high-grade engine oil should be used. The "Unified Petrochemical Low Ash SP5W-30(LA)" engine oil specially used by Dongfeng Forthing Petrochemical Co., Ltd. has low ash content, which can effectively reduce GPF blockage, ensure the normal and effective operation of the engine, and thus reduce the maintenance cost.

发动机机油液位检查

Inspection of engine oil level

发动机机油是保证发动机正常运转的消耗品，应定期检查其液位。例如，每次长途旅行前，应将车辆停放水平路面上并预热发动机几分钟后关闭发动机，等待约5分钟后，再检查发动机机油液位。检查前需要先将发动机装饰罩拆除。

Engine oil is a consumable to ensure the normal operation of the engine, and its liquid level should be checked regularly. For example, before each long-distance trip, park the vehicle on a level road and warm up the engine for a few minutes before turning off the engine. Wait for about 5 minutes before checking the engine oil level. Remove the engine trim cover before inspection.



1. 取出机油尺。

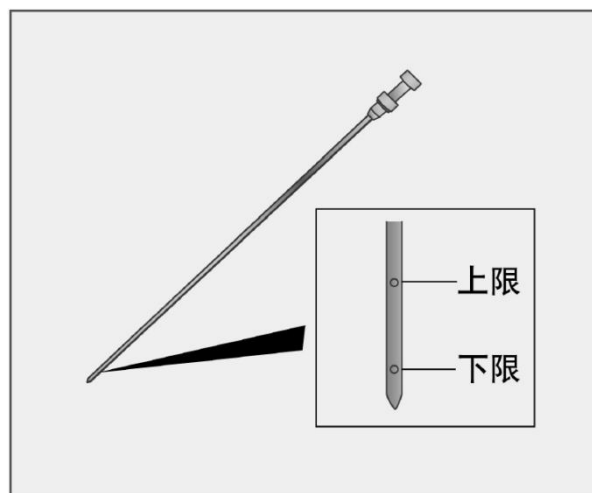
1. Take out the engine oil dipstick.

2. 用干净的布或纸巾擦净机油尺。

2. Wipe clean the engine oil dipstick with a piece of clean cloth or paper.

3. 将机油尺全部插回管套。

3. Insert the engine oil dipstick fully back into the pipe sleeve.



4. 再次取出机油尺，检查发动机机油液位。液位必须处于上下限的标记之间。如果低于下限标记，应该及时补充发动机机油，使油位处于正常范围内。

4. Take out the oil dipstick again and check the engine oil level. The fluid level must be between the upper and lower limit marks. If it is lower than the lower limit mark, replenish the engine oil in time to make the oil level within the normal range.



警告



Warning

需经常检查发动机机油液位。如发动机机油不足会损坏发动机，而这种损坏不属于保修范围。

Check the engine oil level frequently. Insufficient engine oil will damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by the warranty.

发动机机油补充

Engine oil supplement



1. 拧开发动机机油加注口盖，补充发动机机油。

1. Unscrew the engine oil filler cap and replenish the engine oil.

2. 扣上发动机机油加注口盖并拧紧。预热发动机几分钟后关闭发动机，大约5分钟后，再次查看机油尺上的发动机机油液位。

2. Install the engine oil filler cap and tighten it. Warm up the engine for a few minutes and then shut down the engine. After about 5 minutes, check the engine oil level on the oil dipstick again.

3. 任何情况下，发动机机油液面不得超过机油尺的上限位置，否则发动机机油会经曲轴箱通风口吸入进气系统，参与燃烧后通过排气系统排入大气中。发动机机油可能在三元催化净化器中燃烧并损坏三元催化净化器。还可能会造成发动机缸内火花塞积碳。

3. In any case, the engine oil level shall not exceed the upper limit of the oil dipstick, otherwise the engine oil will be sucked into the intake system through the crankcase vent and discharged into the atmosphere through the exhaust system after

participating in combustion. The engine oil may burn in the three-way catalytic converter and damage the three-way catalytic converter. It may also cause carbon deposition on the spark plug in the engine cylinder.



警告



Warning

应缓慢倒入发动机机油，以免溢出。如果溢出应立即清理，以免损坏发动机。

Engine oil shall be poured slowly to avoid overflow. In case of spillage, clean it up immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

机油更换

Oil replacement

发动机机油对发动机的运转和使用寿命起重要作用，必须定期进行更换。更换发动机机油请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Engine oil plays an important role in the operation and service life of the engine and must be replaced regularly. Please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for engine oil replacement.



警告



Warning

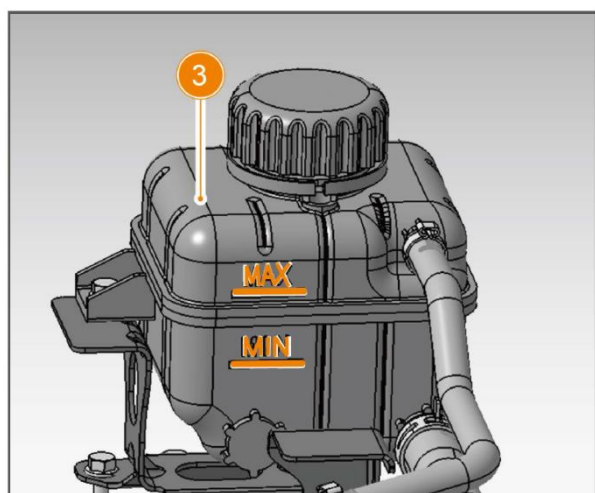
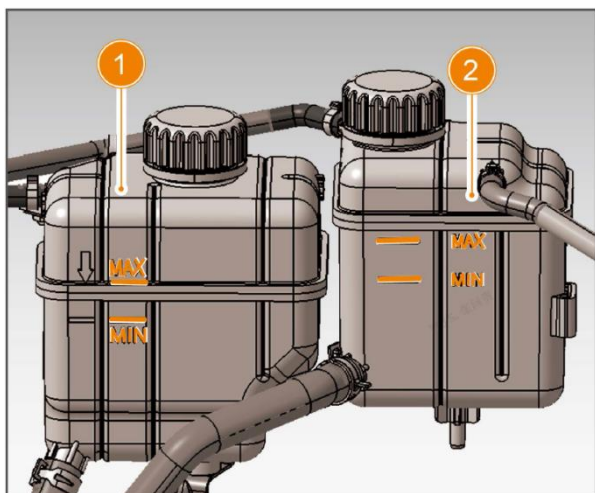
- 如果皮肤不小心接触到了发动机机油，必须彻底清洗干净。
- If the skin accidentally contacts the engine oil, it must be thoroughly cleaned.
- 请遵照相关环境保护法处理使用过的发动机机油。
- Please dispose the used engine oil according to the relevant environmental protection law.

车辆冷却液

Vehicle coolant

冷却液液位检查

Coolant level inspection



1. 发动机冷却液膨胀罐
1. Engine coolant expansion tank

2. 电机电控冷却液膨胀罐
2. Motor electronic control coolant expansion tank
3. 动力电池冷却液膨胀罐
3. Power battery coolant expansion tank

查看冷却液液位是否处于上限（MAX）与下限（MIN）刻度线之间，如果低于下限位置，应向冷却液膨胀罐中添加冷却液至上限位置附近。

Check whether the coolant level is between the upper limit (MAX) and the lower limit (MIN) scale marks. If it is lower than the lower limit, add coolant to the coolant expansion tank to the position near the upper limit.

冷却液补充

Coolant refilling

打开冷却液膨胀罐盖即可添加冷却液，添加结束后将盖子拧紧。不同品牌的冷却液不能混用，否则容易发生化学反应，影响驱动电机的使用寿命，请使用东风风行指定的四季防冻冷却液。请勿用防冻液与水代替四季防冻冷却液。

Open the cover of fluid reservoir to add the coolant. After adding the coolant, put on the cover and tighten it. You shall always employ the year-round antifreeze coolant designated by the Dongfeng Forthing. Do not use antifreeze coolant and water to replace the year-round antifreeze coolant. Do not mix coolants of different brands; otherwise, chemical reactions may easily occur, affecting the service life of the drive motor. Please use the four-season antifreeze coolant designated by Dongfeng Forthing. Please do not replace antifreeze coolant with antifreeze and water.



在发动机未完全冷却时，打开冷却液膨胀罐盖，可能会导致冷却液喷出，造成严重烫伤。在打开冷却液膨胀罐盖之前，必须确认发动机及散热器均已冷却。

When the engine is not completely cooled, opening the coolant expansion tank cover may cause the coolant to eject, resulting in serious scald. Before opening the coolant expansion tank cap, make sure that the engine and radiator have cooled down.

冷却液更换

Replacement of coolant

正常情况下，每2年或2万公里需要更换一次冷却液，先到先得。

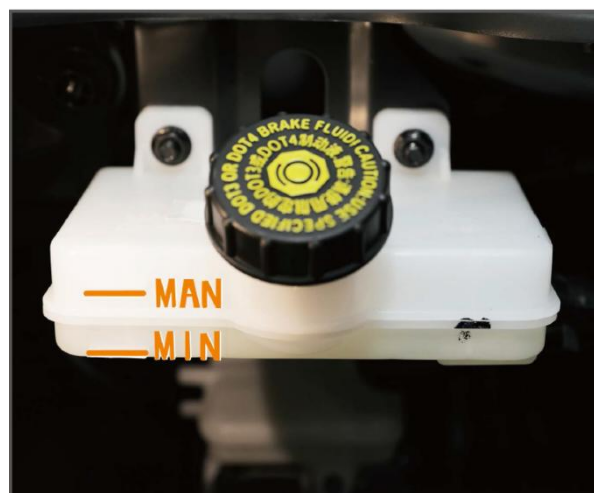
Under normal circumstances, the coolant needs to be replaced every 2 years or 20,000 km, whichever comes first.

制动液

Brake fluid

制动液液位检查

Inspection of brake fluid level



1. 应每月检查一次储液罐内的液位。

1. Check the fluid level in the fluid reservoir once a month.

2. 液位应处于储液罐罐壁上的下限（MIN）与上限（MAX）刻度线之间。如果液位处于或者低于下限（MIN）刻度线，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站进行检查。

2. The fluid level should be between the lower limit (MIN) and the upper limit (MAX) marks on the reservoir wall. If the fluid level is at or below the lower limit (MIN) scale mark, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing Automobile Co., Ltd. for inspection in time.

制动液更换

Brake Fluid Replacement

制动液会吸收空气中的水分，过高的含水量会导致制动系统受腐蚀而损伤，制动液的沸点也会明显下降，应按照定期保养表的要求及时更换制动液。更换制动液请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The brake fluid will absorb water in the air. Excessive water content will cause damage to the brake system due to corrosion, and the boiling point of the brake fluid will also drop significantly. Please replace the brake fluid in time according to the requirements of the regular maintenance table. Please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for brake fluid replacement.



警告



Warning

- 务必使用东风风行指定的制动液或东风风行认可的密闭容器所封装的DOT4同等级产品，不同制动液不可以混用。
- Be sure to use the brake fluid designated by Dongfeng Forthing or DOT4 products of the same grade packaged in closed containers approved by Dongfeng Forthing. Do not mix different brake fluids.
- 请勿将制动液与含矿物油的液体混合，矿物油会损坏制动装置的密封件和密封塞。
- Please do not mix the brake fluid with the fluid containing mineral oil, as the mineral oil will damage the seals and sealing plugs of the brake rigging.
- 制动液是有毒的，应放在儿童触及不到的地方，一旦误食，应立即到医院检查。
- The brake fluid is toxic and should be kept out of the reach of children. Once swallowed by mistake, go to the hospital immediately for examination.
- 制动液有腐蚀性，不允许与车辆油漆接触，一旦溢出到车辆油漆上，需用大量的水清洗。
- The brake fluid is corrosive and is not allowed to contact the vehicle paint. Once it overflows on the vehicle paint, it needs to be cleaned with plenty of water.
- 制动液会损伤皮肤，如果不慎溅到皮肤或眼睛，需要大量清水清洗，如感觉到不适，应立即到医院检查。
- Brake fluid may damage the skin. If it accidentally splashes on the skin or eyes, wash with plenty of water. If you feel unwell, go to the hospital immediately for examination.

制动液保养及技术要求

Maintenance and Technical Requirements of Brake Fluid

1. 制动液保养周期为每2年或4万公里更换，年限或公里数以先到者为准。

1. The brake fluid shall be replaced every 2 years or 40,000 km, whichever comes first.

2. 制动液技术要求应符合GB12981相关规定。

2. The technical requirements for brake fluid shall comply with the relevant provisions of GB12981.

玻璃洗涤液检查

Inspection of glass washer fluid



1. 查看洗涤液储液罐中是否有足量的洗涤液。

1. Check whether there is enough washer fluid in the washer fluid reservoir.

2. 使用雨刮喷水功能发现未喷水时，说明玻璃洗涤液不足，可以适当添加洗涤液。

2. If no water is sprayed by using the wiper spraying function, it indicates that the glass washer fluid is insufficient and can be added appropriately.

3. 若使用乙醇基洗涤液，洗涤液的乙醇含量应不高于24%。

3. If ethanol based detergent is used, the ethanol content of the detergent should not exceed 24%.



注意



Attention

● 优质玻璃洗涤液可提高除污能力，并能防止在寒冷天气中冻结。

● High-quality glass washing liquid can improve the decontamination ability and prevent freezing in cold weather.

● 建议使用东风风行指定的玻璃洗涤液。防冻剂会损坏车辆的表面喷漆，醋水溶剂会损坏前挡风玻璃洗涤器水泵。

● It is recommended to use the glass washer fluid specified by Dongfeng Forthing. Antifreeze will damage the paint sprayed on the surface of the vehicle, and vinegar solution will damage the water pump of the front windshield washer.

2. 挤压空调滤清器上下两侧，使之脱开两侧的凸舌，拆出滤清器。

2. Squeeze the upper and lower sides of the A/C filter to disengage the tabs on both sides and remove the filter.

3. 插入新的空调滤清器。

3. Insert a new A/C filter.

4. 关闭手套箱。

4. Close the glove box.

长期不使用空调时

When the air conditioner is not used for a long time

即使在天气寒冷的月份也应至少每两周开启一次空调，每次至少5分钟。这是为了防止压缩机内部的零件润滑恶化，以使空调保持最佳的运转状态。

Turn on the air conditioner at least once every two weeks for at least 5 minutes even in cold months. This is to prevent the lubrication of parts inside the compressor from deteriorating, so as to keep the air conditioner in the best operating state.

空调滤清器

A/C Filter

空调滤清器能除去空调系统从外界带入的花粉和灰尘。

The A/C filter can remove pollen and dust brought in by the A/C system from the outside.

空调滤清器在每隔2万公里的定期保养时必须更换。

The A/C filter must be replaced during regular maintenance every 20,000 km.

更换空调滤清器

Replacing A/C Filter

空调滤清器位于手套箱内。

The A/C filter is located in the glove box.

1. 打开手套箱。

1. Open the glove box.

空气滤清器

Air filter



应依照定期保养表规定的时间与里程数更换空气滤清器。如果空气滤清器安装不当，容易使空气粉尘进入发动机，造成缸体的异常磨损。如需更换空气滤清器，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Replace the air filter according to the time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance table. If the air filter is installed improperly, air dust will easily enter the engine, resulting in abnormal wear of the cylinder block. If you need to replace the air filter, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

燃油滤清器

Fuel filter

应依照定期保养表中规定的时间与里程数更换燃油滤清器。建议每3年或6万公里，或者发现燃油受污染时，更换燃油滤清器。在多尘地区行驶，会更容易堵塞滤清器，请适当缩短更换周期。如需更换燃油滤清器，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and mileage specified in the periodic maintenance table. It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 3 years or 60,000 km, or when the fuel is contaminated. If the vehicle is driven in a dusty area, the filter will be more likely to be blocked. Please shorten the replacement cycle appropriately. If you need to replace the fuel filter, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

加油管灰滤

Ash filter of the refueling pipe

每1年或2万公里检查一次，如果灰滤发生堵

塞，必要时需要调整或更换。在多尘地区行驶，灰滤会更容易被堵塞，请适当缩短检查 / 更换周期。如需更换加油管灰滤，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

Check once every 1 year or 20,000 km. If the ash filter is blocked, adjust or replace it if necessary. When the vehicle is running in a dusty area, the dust filter will be more likely to be blocked. Please shorten the inspection/replacement cycle appropriately. If you need to replace the ash filter of the refueling pipe, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

12V低压蓄电池

12V Low-voltage battery



本车配有免维护型12V低压蓄电池，蓄电池位于行李箱右侧，主要是为车辆启动及车上电器提供电能。如果12V低压蓄电池严重亏电，则会造成车辆无法启动。

This vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free 12V low-voltage battery, which is located on the right side of the trunk and mainly provides electric energy for vehicle starting and on-board electrical appliances. If the 12V low-voltage battery is seriously undervoltage, the vehicle will not be able to start.

使用和注意事项

Use and precautions

1. 请勿在车辆停止后长时间打开车灯、音响、雨刮器等电器。

1. Do not turn on electrical appliances such as lamps, audio and wipers for a long time after the vehicle stops.

2. 如需停车超过五天以上，建议将12V低压蓄电池负极端子拔下，防止车上电器消耗12V低压蓄电池电量。

2. If the vehicle needs to be parked for more than five days, it is recommended to unplug the negative terminal of the 12V low-voltage battery to prevent the on-board electrical appliances from consuming the 12V low-voltage battery.

3. 车辆停止后，要注意灯光、音响、空调等电器是否已关闭。

3. After the vehicle stops, pay attention to whether the lights, audio, air conditioner and other electrical appliances are turned off.

4. 尽量避免长时间连续使用车辆，长时间工作可能会致12V低压蓄电池温度过高，影响车辆性能。

4. Avoid using the vehicle continuously for a long time as far as possible. Long-time operation may cause the temperature of the 12V low-voltage battery to be too high, affecting the performance of the vehicle.

5. 应每月检查一次12V低压蓄电池状况。检查端子是否被腐蚀（有白色或淡黄色的粉末）。如有腐蚀，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

5. The condition of the 12V low-voltage battery should be checked once a month. Check the terminals for corrosion (white or yellowish powder). In case of corrosion, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

接触电解液的应急处理

Emergency Treatment for Contacting Electrolyte

12V低压蓄电池电解液有强腐蚀性和剧毒，如不慎接触，请按以下方式处理：

The electrolyte of 12V low-voltage battery is highly corrosive and toxic. In case of accidental contact, please handle it as follows:

眼睛接触：用杯子或其它容器盛水冲洗至少15分钟，并立即就医。

Eye contact: Rinse with water in a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes, and seek medical advice immediately.

皮肤接触：脱掉被污染的衣物，用大量清水冲洗皮肤，并立即就医。

Skin contact: Take off contaminated clothes, wash skin with plenty of water, and seek medical advice immediately.

误饮电解液：喝水或牛奶，并立即就医。

Drink electrolyte by mistake: Drink water or milk and seek medical advice immediately.



警告



Warning

- 如果需要将12V低压蓄电池连接到其它充电器上，应将正负极电缆都断开，以免损坏车上的电器设备。应先断开负极电缆，重新装接时，需要先连接正极电缆，然后连接负极电缆。

- If it is necessary to connect the 12V low-voltage battery to other chargers, disconnect the positive and negative cables to avoid damaging the electrical equipment on the vehicle. The negative cable shall be disconnected first, and the positive cable shall be connected first, and then the negative cable.

- 车辆正常行驶时，12V低压蓄电池会产生可爆性氢气。火星或明火会引起12V低压蓄电池爆炸，其爆炸能量足以造成严重伤害，请避免在附近有火星和明火的地方行驶。

- When the vehicle is running normally, the 12V low-voltage battery will produce explosive hydrogen. Sparks or open flames will cause the 12V low-voltage battery to explode, and its explosion energy is enough to cause serious injury. Please avoid driving in a nearby place with sparks and open flames.

- 必须遵守本《使用手册》中关于轮胎充气及保养的所有说明。

- All descriptions about tire inflation and maintenance in the Manual must be complied with.

胎压标签

Tire pressure label



本车贴有胎压标签。该标签位于主驾车门框下方，标明了车辆前后轮气压。

Tyre pressure labels are attached on the vehicle. This label is located below the driver's door frame and indicates the air pressure of the front and rear wheels of the vehicle.

轮胎

Tire

为安全驾驶车辆，轮胎的型号和尺寸必须适合，并具有状态良好的胎纹和适当胎压。

In order to drive the vehicle safely, the model and size of the tires must be suitable, and the tires must have good tread pattern and appropriate tire pressure.



注意



Attention

- 使用过度磨损或胎压不足的轮胎将会引发事故，造成人身伤害。

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient tire pressure will cause accidents and personal injury.

对于胎压，需注意以下几点：

For tire pressure, pay attention to the following points:

1. 每次开车前，建议目视检查一下轮胎。

1. It is recommended to visually inspect the tires before driving each time.

2. 如有必要，应给轮胎充气或放气，使胎压达到标签上所推荐的冷态胎压。

2. If necessary, inflate or deflate the tire to the cold tire pressure recommended on the label.

如果在轮胎处于热态时（行驶数公里后）检查胎压，压力读数将比冷态时的读数高30至40kPa，此类现象是正常的，请勿为了达到规定的冷态胎压读数而放气，这将导致轮胎胎压不足。

If the tire pressure is checked when the tire is hot (after several kilometers of driving), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the reading in cold state. This phenomenon is normal. Do not deflate to reach the specified cold tire pressure reading, which will cause insufficient tire pressure.

胎压监测系统

Tire pressure monitoring system

胎压监测系统用于动态监测轮胎的压力及温度，当轮胎压力等出现异常时，组合仪表会出现相应的报警信息（详见第三章“组合仪表”中的“警告灯”部分）。

The tire pressure monitoring system is used to dynamically monitor the tire pressure and temperature. When the tire pressure is abnormal, the combination instrument will display corresponding alarm information (see "Warning Lamp" in Chapter III "Combination Instrument" for details).



注意



Attention

● 请保持胎压在标准压力值附近，当胎压显示“--”且指定轮胎点亮时，表明胎压监测系统丢失信号，请及时联系东风风行特约服务站。

● Please keep the tire pressure near the standard pressure value. When the tire pressure is displayed as "--" and the designated tire is on, it indicates that the tire pressure monitoring system loses its signal. Please contact the Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in time.

● 无需因安装、拆卸轮胎而重新匹配胎压传感器。但如果轮胎位置调换，胎压传感器的位置产

生变化，则需要重新进行胎压匹配，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

● There is no need to re-match the tire pressure sensor due to installation and removal of tires. However, if the tire position changes and the tire pressure sensor position changes, it is necessary to re-match the tire pressure. Please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

● 在静止情况下显示的胎压信息为车辆最后运行时的信息。因此轮胎在进行放气或充气操作后，如需更新胎压数据，需将车辆以30km/h以上的速度行驶1分钟，胎压信息界面才会更新数据。

● The tire pressure information displayed when the vehicle is stationary is the information when the vehicle is last running. Therefore, if it is necessary to update the tire pressure data after the tire is deflated or inflated, it is necessary to drive the vehicle at a speed of more than 30 km/h for 1 minute before the tire pressure information interface updates the data.

轮胎充气

Tire inflation

保持适当的胎压，可使车辆操纵性、驾乘舒适性和胎面寿命三者达到最佳状态。

Maintaining proper tire pressure can make the vehicle maneuverability, driving comfort and tread life reach the best state.

充气不足的轮胎会导致磨损不均匀，影响操纵性、增加电耗。

Underinflated tires will cause uneven wear, affecting maneuverability and increasing power consumption.

充气过度的轮胎会降低乘坐舒适性，也更容易因路面不平而受损，并且导致轮胎磨损不均匀。

Over-inflated tires will reduce riding comfort, and are more likely to be damaged due to uneven road surface, resulting in uneven tire wear.

轮胎检查

Tire check

在每次检查轮胎充气状态时，还应该同时检查轮胎有无外伤、有无异物刺入及磨损情况。具体检查如下：

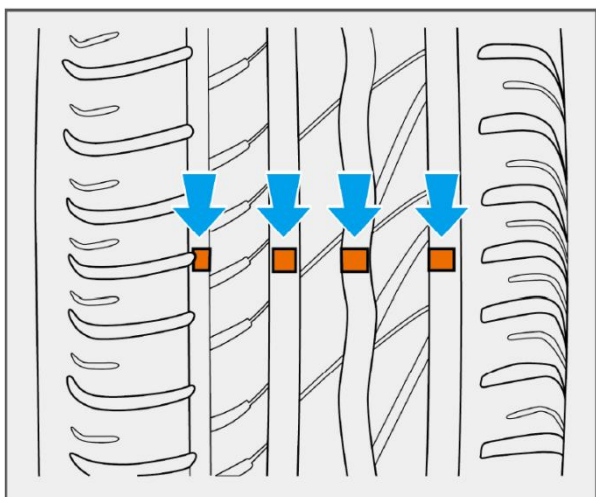
Every time when checking the inflation state of the tire, check whether the tire is damaged, punctured by foreign matters and worn. The specific inspection is as follows:

1. 轮胎侧面刮伤、裂缝或断裂。如能看到轮胎布或帘线，则应更换轮胎。

1. Scratches, cracks or fractures on the side of the tire. If the tire fabrics or cords are exposed, replace the tire.

2. 过度的胎面磨损。

2. Excessive tread wear



必须使轮胎保持良好的状况，轮胎表面花纹应有足够深度。可以用轮胎行驶带里面的凸起点来测量轮胎磨损程度。若胎纹厚度小于1.6毫米，就必须更换轮胎，这样的轮胎在湿滑路面上行驶时缺乏附着力。

The tire must be kept in good condition, and the tread pattern on the tire surface shall be deep enough. The tire wear degree can be measured by the raised points in the tire driving belt. If the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm, the tire must be replaced. Such tire lacks adhesion when driving on a slippery road.

轮胎保养

Tire maintenance

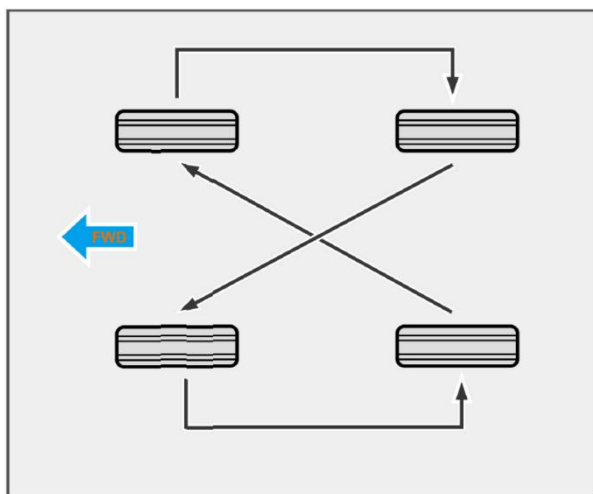
除适当充气外，正确的车轮定位也有助于减少胎面磨损。如果发现轮胎磨损不均或在驾驶时感觉到某种连续震动，请联系东风风行特约服务

站。

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment also helps to reduce tread wear. If you find that the tires are worn unevenly or you feel some continuous vibration during driving, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

轮胎换位

Tire rotation



为延长轮胎使用寿命并使轮胎磨损均匀，应每行驶1万公里调换一次轮胎位置。每次换位时，都应按上图所示方法进行操作。

In order to prolong the service life of the tire and make the tire wear evenly, the tire position shall be changed every 10,000 km. Each time of transposition, the operation shall be carried out according to the method shown in the above figure.

车轮与轮胎规格

Specifications of wheels and tires

轮辋规格：19×7J

Rim specification: 19×7J

轮胎规格：235/55 R19

Tire specification: 235/55R19

关于适合本车使用的轮胎尺寸，以贴在主驾车门框下方的轮胎标牌为准，或者联系东风风行特约服务站。

As for the tire size suitable for this vehicle, please refer to the tire nameplate pasted under the driver's door frame, or contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

更换轮胎与车轮

Replace tires and wheels

应选用尺寸、负荷范围、额定转速以及最大冷胎气压（标记在轮胎的侧面）相同的子午线轮胎进行更换。混合使用子午线轮胎和斜纹轮胎，会降低车辆的制动能力、驱动力（地面附着力）以及转向精确度。使用不同尺寸或结构的轮胎会导致ABS系统无法正常工作。

Replace with radial tires having the same size, load scope, rated speed and maximum cold tire pressure (indicated on the tire wall). Mixed use of radial and diagonal tires may reduce the vehicle's braking capacity, driving force (ground adhesive force) and steering accuracy. Using tires of different sizes or structures will cause the ABS system to fail to work normally.

ABS系统是通过比较车轮的转速而工作的，所以更换轮胎时，必须使用与车辆原装轮胎尺寸一致的轮胎，否则会影响车轮转速，并可能导致系统动作不协调。只更换一个轮胎会严重影响车辆的操纵性。如需更换轮胎，建议将两个前胎或后胎成对更换，如有必要，可将四个轮胎同时更换。

The ABS system works by comparing the wheel speeds. Therefore, when replacing the tires, the tires with the same size as the original tires of the vehicle must be used. Otherwise, the wheel speeds will be affected and the system may act inconsistently. Replacing only one tire will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle. If it is necessary to replace tires, it is recommended to replace two front tires or rear tires in pairs. If necessary, replace four tires at the same time.

如需更换车轮，应确保新车轮的规格与原装车轮的规格一致。在更换车轮之前，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

If the wheel needs to be replaced, make sure that the specification of the new wheel is consistent with that of the original wheel. Before replacing the wheel, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

冬季轮胎

Winter tire

由于夏季轮胎在冬季使用时其适用性有限，建议在冰雪路面上使用冬季轮胎。安装冬季轮胎，应四个车轮同时安装，以确保安全驾驶。只可使用同品牌，同外形的轮胎。购买时，应注意轮胎的尺寸、载重能力和速度等级。遵照登记卡上的标记安装冬季轮胎。

It is recommended to use winter tires on icy and snowy roads due to the limited applicability of summer tires in winter. When installing winter tires, four wheels shall be installed at the same time to ensure safe driving. Only tires of the same brand and shape can be used. When purchasing, pay attention to the tire size, load capacity and speed grade. Install the winter tires according to the marks on the registration card.

如果您选用额定速度较低的冬季轮胎，行驶时，请勿超过轮胎的最大额定速度。

If you use winter tires with a lower rated speed, do not exceed the maximum rated speed of the tires when driving.

防滑链

Anti-skid chain

雪地防滑链只能在紧急情况或者在驾车驶经法律上有明文规定的特定地区时使用。雪地防滑链应安装在驱动轮上，最好四个轮均安装。

Snow anti-skid chains can only be used in emergency situations or when driving through specific areas expressly stipulated by law. Snow anti-skid chains shall be installed on the driving wheels, preferably all four wheels.

应选用和车辆轮胎匹配的防滑链，安装防滑链后车辆的操纵性能较差，应低速行驶，避免满载。请仔细阅读部件组装图以及防滑链厂家的其它说明。

The anti-skid chains matching the vehicle tires shall be selected. After the anti-skid chains are installed, the maneuverability of the vehicle is poor, so the vehicle shall run at a low speed to avoid full load. Please read the component assembly drawing and other instructions of the anti-skid chain manufacturer carefully.

主动进气格栅（AGS）

Active air intake grille (AGS)

该车型配备有主动进气格栅（AGS）控制系

统，在发动机暖机时关闭此系统能加快暖机的效率，使车辆更加节能。如果主动进气格栅被杂物、泥土或结冰卡住，可能造成车辆散热不良，请定期检查并清洁此格栅。在车辆启动时AGS系统自动进行至少1次标定自检，会有呜呜的电机工作声音，此为正常现象。

This model is equipped with an active air intake grille (AGS) control system, which can be turned off when the engine is warmed up to speed up the warm-up efficiency and make the vehicle more energy-saving. If the active air inlet grille is stuck by sundries, dirt or ice, it may cause poor heat dissipation of the vehicle. Please check and clean the grille regularly. When the vehicle is started, the AGS system will automatically carry out calibration and self-inspection at least once, and there will be working sound of the motor, which is normal.

发动机在暖风开启时的工作状态

Working state of engine with warm air on

车辆的暖风由发动机启动后的余热提供，因此开启暖风后发动机会开始工作。动力电池电量低的时候，发动机会进入发电状态，给动力电池充电；当动力电池充满后，发动机进入怠速模式，发动机负荷和能量转化发生改变，此时发动机的声音会略有差异。随着整车各电器件的消耗，动力电池电量降低，发动机再次进入发电控制。发动机随着动力电池电量变化在发电和怠速之间切换，发动机声音会随之变化。

The warm air of the vehicle is provided by the waste heat after the engine is started, so the engine will start to work after the warm air is turned on. When the power battery is low, the engine will enter the power generation state to charge the power battery. When the power battery is fully charged, the engine will enter the idle mode, and the engine load and energy conversion will change. At this time, the engine sound will be slightly different. With the consumption of various electrical parts of the vehicle, the power battery decreases, and the engine enters the power generation control again. As the power battery changes, the engine switches between power generation and idling, and the engine sound will change accordingly.

危险警告装置	240
Hazard warning device	240
危险警告灯	240
Hazard warning lamp	240
三角警告牌	240
Warning triangle	240
随车工具及反光背心	241
Tools and reflective vests	241
轮胎更换 *	241
Tire replacement *	241
更换轮胎前的准备工作	241
Preparations before tire replacement	241
更换备胎	241
Replacement of spare tire	241
轮胎修补 *	243
Tire repair *	243
车用补胎应急工具使用方法	243
Usage of Emergency Tools for Vehicle Tire Repair	243
更换灯泡	248
Replace the bulb	248
灯泡规格	248
Bulb specifications	248
前大灯校准	248
Headlamp calibration	248

雨刮的维护与养护	249
Maintenance of wiper	249
雨刮维修模式	249
Wiper maintenance mode	249
前雨刮片更换	249
Front wiper blade replacement	249
后雨刮片更换	250
Replace rear wiper blade	250
更换保险丝	251
Replace the fuse	251
保险丝盒位置	251
Positions of fuse boxes	251
室内保险丝盒	252
Interior fuse box	252
检查保险丝	252
Check the fuse	252
更换保险丝	253
Replace the fuse	253
发动机舱保险丝盒布置	254
Engine compartment fuse box layout	254
室内保险丝盒布置	257
Interior Fuse Box Layout	257
车辆牵引	259
Vehicle Towing	259
前部牵引点	259
Front towing point	259

后部牵引点	259	Suggestions on Vehicle Use	265
Rear towing point	259	混合动力车辆特有的声音和振动	265
牵引方法	260	Sound and vibration specific to hybrid vehicles	265
Traction method	260	动力电池冷却系统说明	265
牵引注意事项	260	Description of Power Battery Cooling System	265
Precautions for traction	260	动力电池冷却后运行	266
跨接启动	260	Operation of power battery after cooling	266
Jump Start	260	车辆停放时的电量保持	266
操作步骤	260	Power retention when the vehicle is parked	266
Operation steps	260	长期停放车辆	266
发动机过热	261	Vehicle parked for a long time	266
Engine Overheating	261	车辆未启动时12V低压蓄电池电量低	267
应对措施	262	12V low-voltage battery low when the vehicle is not started	267
Countermeasures	262		
动力电池	263		
Power battery	263		
动力电池电缆	263		
Power battery cable	263		
如果车辆发生碰撞	264		
Vehicle Collision	264		
高压电系统的紧急切断系统	264		
Emergency cut-off system for high-voltage electrical systems	264		
当车辆报废时	265		
When the vehicle is scrapped	265		
车辆使用建议	265		

危险警告装置

Hazard warning device

危险警告灯

Hazard warning lamp

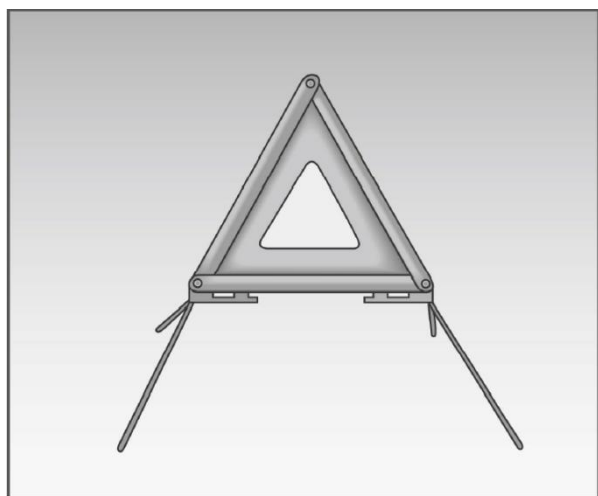


按下空调控制面板上方的危险警告灯开关，转向灯及组合仪表上的转向和危险信号警告灯开始闪烁，提醒行人和过往车辆注意避让本车。

Press the hazard warning lamp switch above the A/C control panel, and the turn signal lamp and the turn signal and hazard warning lamp on the combination instrument will start to flash to remind pedestrians and passing vehicles to avoid the vehicle.

三角警告牌

Warning triangle



三角警告牌放置在行李箱左侧。

The warning triangle is placed on the left side of the trunk.

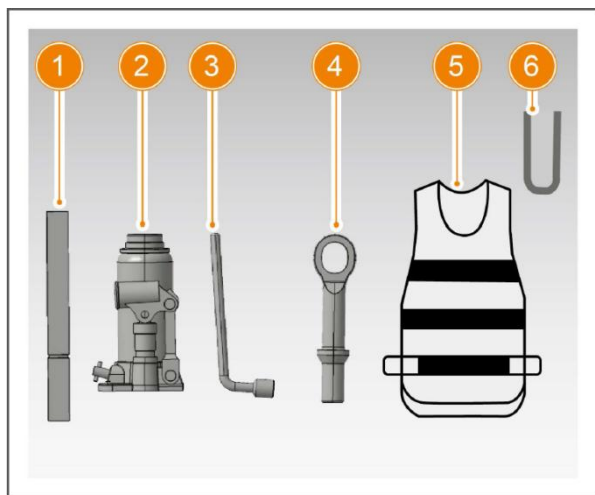
当车辆在行驶途中发生意外，应尽量靠右停

车，取出三角警告牌，把反光片背对车辆并立于车辆正后方100 ~ 200米的位置提醒后方来车，同时开启危险警告灯。

In case of an accident during driving, stop the vehicle on the right side as far as possible, take out the warning triangle, turn the reflector back to the vehicle and stand 100 ~ 200 m behind the vehicle to remind the vehicle coming behind, and turn on the hazard warning lamp at the same time.

随车工具及反光背心

Tools and reflective vests



1. 三角警告牌
1. Warning triangle
2. 千斤顶 *
2. Jack *
3. 车轮螺母扳手 *
3. Wheel nut wrench *
4. 牵引钩
4. Towing hook
5. 反光背心
5. Reflective vest
6. 车轮螺母盖夹子
6. Wheel nut cover clamp

随车工具存放在行李箱储物槽中。反光背心放置在手套箱内。

The on-board tools are stored in the trunk storage slot. The reflective vest is placed in the glove box.

轮胎更换 *

Tire replacement *

原车未配备备胎，部分车辆未配备千斤顶等备胎安装工具，您在更换轮胎时可参考以下操作步骤。

The original vehicle is not equipped with spare tires, and some vehicles are not equipped with spare tire installation tools such as jacks. Please refer to the following operation steps when replacing tires.

更换轮胎前的准备工作

Preparations before tire replacement

将车辆停放在不影响交通，且便于安全更换车轮的平地上。应急更换车轮前，应先开启车辆危险警告灯，在合适的距离放置三角警告牌，以免发生交通事故。

Park the vehicle in a place where the traffic flow is little and it is convenient to replace the wheel safely. Before emergency replacement of wheels, turn on the vehicle hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle at an appropriate distance to avoid traffic accidents.

取出备胎及更换轮胎的工具。

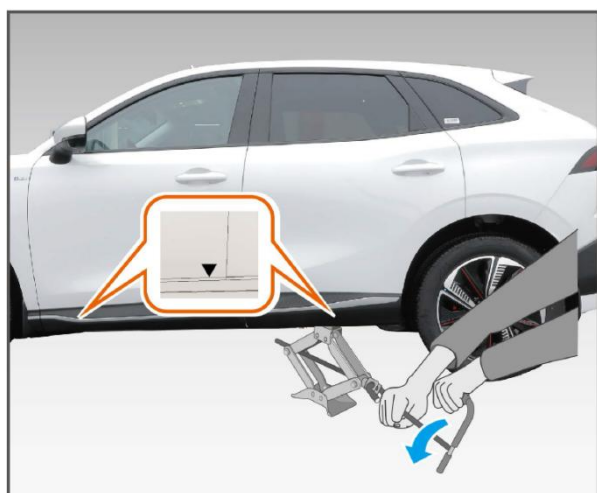
Take out the spare tire and tools for tire replacement.

更换备胎

Replacement of spare tire

顶升车辆前，在与更换轮胎呈对角线的车轮前后各放置一块塞木，然后用扳手将所换车轮螺母拧松半圈。

Before jacking the vehicle, place a stopper in front of and behind the wheel diagonally opposite to the replaced tire, and then loosen the replaced wheel nut by half a turn with a wrench.



左右车门外侧板上，各有两个千斤顶顶升位置标识点。将千斤顶放置于三角形标识点对应的凹槽处，然后顶升车辆。

There are two jacking position identification points on the outer panels of the left and right doors respectively. Place the jack in the groove corresponding to the triangle mark point, and then jack up the vehicle.



注意



Attention

请勿把千斤顶顶在除规定处以外的任何位置，如果顶起位置不正确，可能发生车身凹陷或在车体下落时造成事故。

Do not jack the car at any position other than the specified position. If the jacking position is incorrect, the vehicle body may be sunken or accidents may occur when the vehicle body falls.



用车轮螺母扳手拆下车轮螺母，然后取下轮胎。清理轮毂表面内的所有污泥，然后安装上备

胎。按如图所示的交叉顺序拧紧车轮螺母，直至车轮紧靠制动轮毂为止，将车辆降到地面，取出千斤顶。用同样的十字交叉方式，拧紧车轮螺母。拧紧车轮螺母时应使用规定的扭矩。

Remove the wheel nuts with a wheel nut wrench, and then remove the tire. Remove all sludge from the hub surface and install the spare tire. Tighten the wheel nuts in a crossed sequence as shown in the figure until the wheel is close to the brake hub. Lower the vehicle to the ground and take out the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the same cross manner. The specified torque shall be used when tightening the wheel nuts.

车轮螺母拧紧扭矩：130N·m

The tightening torque of the wheel nuts are 130 N·m.



- 要经常检查备胎的充气压力，使备胎充气压力保持在规定值范围内，以便在任何时候都能应急使用。当备胎经多年没有使用后，请联系东风风行特约服务站以确保您的备胎还可以安全使用。
- Frequently check the inflation pressure of the spare tire to keep the inflation pressure within the specified range, so that it can be used in an emergency at any time. If the spare tire has not been used for many years, please contact Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station to ensure that your spare tire can still be used safely.
- 备胎只能用来应急，不允许长期使用。
- The spare tire can only be used for emergency and is not allowed to be used for a long time.
- 备胎不允许装在转向轮（即前轮）上，如需更换转向轮，应先将备胎更换到后轮上，再将换下的车轮装到转向轮。
- The spare tire is not allowed to be installed on the steering wheel (i.e. front wheel). If the steering wheel needs to be replaced, the spare tire shall be replaced on the rear wheel first, and then the replaced wheel shall be installed on the steering wheel.

轮胎修补 *

Tire repair *



您的车辆配备有车用补胎应急工具。轮胎胎面的轻微损坏可使用车用补胎应急工具进行修理。车用补胎应急包位于行李箱盖板下方。

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency tools for tire repair. Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with a vehicle tire repair emergency tool. The emergency tire repair kit is located under the trunk cover.

车用补胎应急工具使用方法

Usage of Emergency Tools for Vehicle Tire Repair

1. 如果轮胎被戳穿，请将车辆停靠在远离车流且坚实平坦不湿滑的路面上。将车辆停稳后，关闭电源，向上拉起EPB开关。打开危险警告灯，在合适的距离放置三角警告牌。

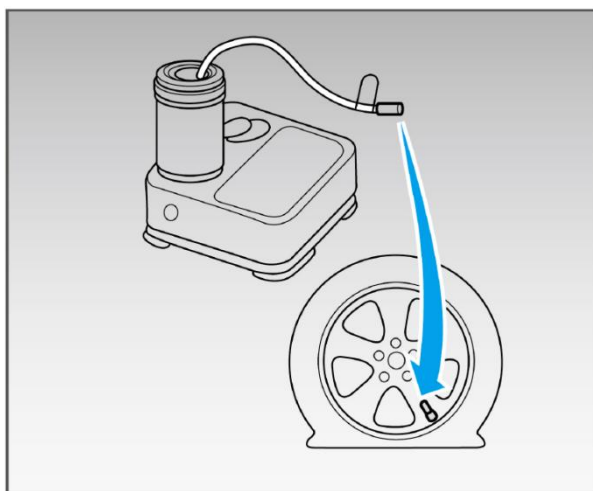
1. If the tire is punctured, please park the vehicle on a solid, flat and non-slippery road away from traffic flow. After the vehicle is parked stably, turn off the power supply and pull up the EPB switch. Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

2. 从行李箱储物槽中取出车用补胎应急工具包，拿出充气泵和补胎液瓶。

2. Take out the emergency kit for vehicle tire repair from the trunk storage tank, and take out the inflation pump and the tire repair liquid bottle.

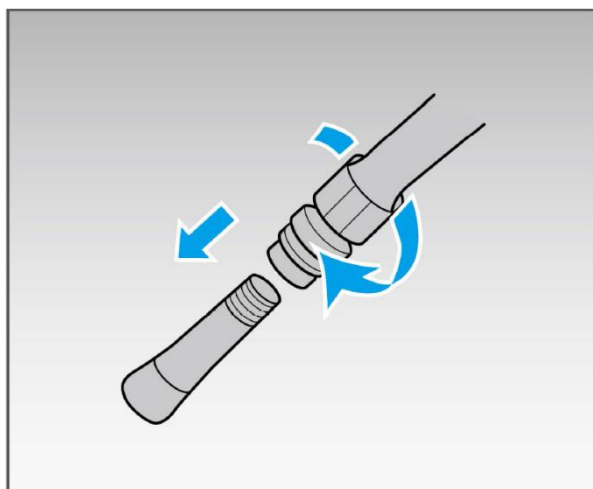
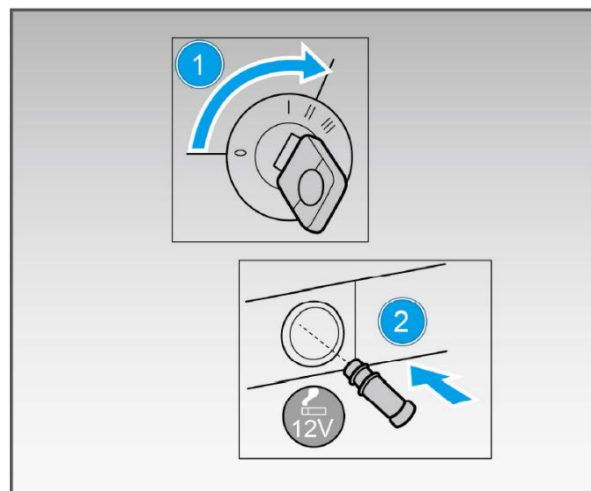
3. 将充气泵软管和电源线抽出，连接充气泵软管与补胎液瓶的进气口，然后拧紧。将补胎液瓶插入充气泵上的固定槽内，呈直立状态。

3. Pull out the inflation pump hose and power cord, connect the inflation pump hose with the air inlet of the tyre repair fluid bottle, and then tighten it. Insert the tire repair solution bottle into the fixing groove on the inflation pump and keep it upright.



4. 拧下故障轮胎的气门嘴防护帽，将补胎液的软管与轮胎气门嘴连接，并拧紧。

4. Unscrew the protective cap of the valve of the faulty tire, connect the hose of the tire repair fluid with the tire valve, and tighten it.

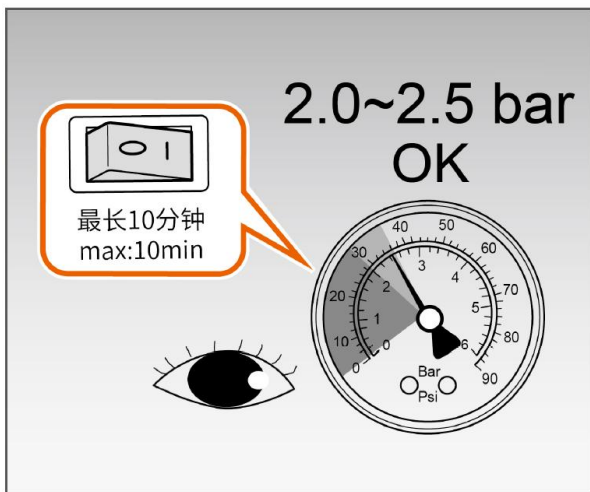


5. 启动车辆，将充气泵电源接头插入12V电源处，开启充气泵开关。

5. Start the vehicle, insert the power connector of the inflation pump into the 12V power supply, and turn on the inflation pump switch.

6. 轮胎的胎压升到2.0 ~ 2.5bar范围内，关闭充气泵开关，拧开充气泵软管将充气泵收好。如果充气超过10分钟后，胎压仍未达到2.0 ~ 2.5bar，请立即停止修补，并参考第7.2.2项内容。

6. When the tire pressure rises to 2.0 ~ 2.5 bar, turn off the inflation pump switch, unscrew the inflation pump hose and put the inflation pump away. If the tire pressure does not reach 2.0 ~ 2.5 bar after more than 10 minutes of inflation, please stop repairing immediately and refer to 7.2.2.



7. 补胎完成后，拧开补胎液软管，断开电源接头，将车用补胎应急工具收入行李箱内。在1分钟内行驶，行驶第一个5公里后，请用充气泵检查胎压。

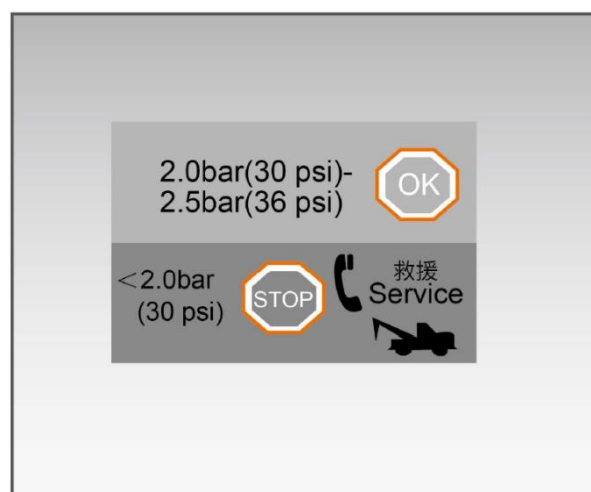
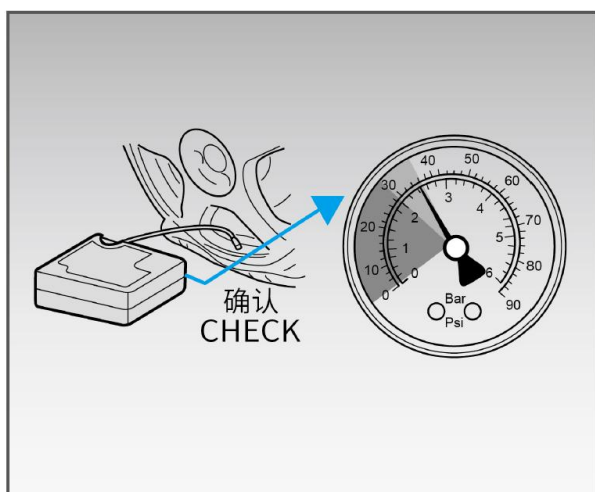
7. After the tire repair is completed, unscrew the tire repair fluid hose, disconnect the power connector, and put the emergency tools for vehicle tire repair into the trunk. After driving for the first 5 km within 1 minute, please check the tire pressure with the inflation pump.



续行驶约100公里，到最近的东风风行特约服务站寻求帮助，车速不得超过80km/h。

7.1 If the tire pressure is still within the range of 2.0 ~ 2.5 bar, continue to drive for about 100 km. Go to the nearest Dongfeng Forthing special service station for help. The vehicle speed shall not exceed 80 km/h.

7.1 胎压仍然在2.0 ~ 2.5bar范围内，可继



7.2 当胎压低于2.0bar时，请用充气泵再次充气至2.0～2.5bar范围内。行驶5公里后，再次用充气泵检查胎压。

7.2 When the tire pressure is lower than 2.0 bar, please inflate it again with an inflator pump to a range of 2.0～2.5 bar. After driving for 5 km, check the tire pressure with the inflation pump again.

7.2.1 胎压仍然在2.0～2.5bar范围内，可继续行驶约100公里，到最近的东风风行特约服务站寻求帮助，车速不得超过80km/h。

7.2.1 If the tire pressure is still within the range of 2.0～2.5 bar, continue to drive for about 100 km. Go to the nearest Dongfeng Forthing special service station for help. The vehicle speed shall not exceed 80 km/h.

7.2.2 当胎压低于2.0bar，请将车辆停放在远离车流的地方。打开危险警告灯，在合适位置摆放三角警告牌，联系东风风行特约服务站。

7.2.2 When the tire pressure is lower than 2.0 bar, please park the vehicle away from the traffic flow. Turn on the hazard warning lamp, place a warning triangle at an appropriate position, and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.



警告



Warning

- 车用补胎应急工具仅限于轮胎应急修补，适用于紧急情况下确保车辆行驶至最近的东风风行特约服务站的短程用途，操作前务必仔细阅读车用补胎应急工具的操作说明，并尽快更换新胎。
- The emergency tools for vehicle tire repair are limited to emergency repair of tires, and are suitable for short-distance use to ensure that the vehicle runs to the nearest Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in case of emergency. Before operation, be sure to carefully read the operating instructions of the emergency tools for vehicle tire repair and replace the tire as soon as possible.
- 使车辆尽可能远离车流停放，必要时打开危险警告灯和放置三角警告牌。
- Park the vehicle as far away from the traffic flow as possible, and turn on the hazard warning lamp and place the warning triangle when necessary.
- 胎压过低时行驶造成的轮胎损伤以及车轮损伤会显著降低车辆行驶的安全性，请勿继续行驶并立即联系东风风行特约服务站。
- Tire damage and wheel damage caused by driving under low tire pressure will significantly reduce the driving safety of the vehicle. Do not continue driving and immediately contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.
- 如果轮胎漏气点较大或损坏的位置靠近轮辋的胎壁上，则不可使用车用补胎应急工具进行修补，请立即联系东风风行特约服务站。
- If the tire leakage point is large or the damaged position is close to the tire wall of the rim, do not use the emergency tool for tire repair. Please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station immediately.
- 操作时请勿拔出造成轮胎损伤的物体（螺丝或铁钉等）。
- Do not pull out objects (screws or nails, etc.) that may cause tire damage during operation.
- 充气时，充气泵及其软管温度会升高，此为正常现象。
- During inflation, the temperature of the inflation pump and its hose will rise, which is normal.
- 补胎液的有效期为五年，使用前请确定生产

日期（生产日期打印在补胎液罐上）。

- The validity period of the tire repair fluid is five years. Please confirm the production date before use (the production date is printed on the tire repair fluid tank).
- 补胎液不得与皮肤或眼睛接触，并远离儿童存放。
- Do not allow tyre repair fluid to come into contact with skin or eyes, and store it away from children.
- 补胎液正常工作的外界温度范围为 -30℃~70℃。
- The external temperature range for normal operation of tyre repair fluid is -30℃~70℃.
- 补胎液为一次性使用物品，在完成车辆的应急补胎后或补胎液到期后，请尽快到东风风行特约服务站购买新的补胎液，保证车辆常备补胎液。成功使用车用补胎应急工具修补后请尽快自行前往东风风行特约服务站寻求帮助。
- The tire repair fluid is a disposable item. After emergency tire repair or expiration of the tire repair fluid, please go to a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station to purchase new tire repair fluid as soon as possible to ensure that the vehicle always has the tire repair fluid. After successful repair with emergency tools for tire repair, please go to Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for help as soon as possible.
- 用补胎液修补轮胎后，行驶时车速不得超过80km/h，并应避免急加速、急制动和快速转弯。
- After repairing the tire with tire repair fluid, the vehicle speed shall not exceed 80 km/h during driving, and sudden acceleration, sudden braking and rapid turning shall be avoided.

更换灯泡

Replace the bulb

更换灯泡通常需要拆除某些车辆部件，因此进行相关操作需要具备专业技能，否则可能损坏灯罩。如需更换，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The replacement of bulbs usually requires the removal of certain vehicle components, so professional skills are required for relevant operations, otherwise the lamp cover may be damaged. If replacement is required, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing Automobile Co., Ltd.

灯泡规格

Bulb specifications

名称 Description	灯泡规格 Bulb specifications	
	豪华型 Luxury	尊享型 Exclusive
近光灯 Passing beam	HB3	LED
远光灯 Driving beam	H7	LED
前转向信号灯 Front turn signal lamp	LED	
前位置灯 Front position lamp	LED	
日间行车灯 Daytime running lamp	LED	
后位置灯 Rear position lamp	LED	
后转向信号灯 Rear turn signal lamp	LED	
倒车灯 Reversing lamp	LED	
后雾灯 Rear fog lamp	P21W	
牌照灯 License plate light	W5W/LED	

前室内灯 Front interior lamp	LED
后室内灯 Rear interior lamp	LED
行李箱照明灯 Trunk lamp	W10W/LED
制动灯 Brake lamp	LED
高位制动灯 High-mounted brake lamp	LED

前大灯校准

Headlamp calibration

新车出厂时，前大灯已经校准。如果经常使用行李箱携带重物，则前大灯可能需要重新校准，请联系东风风行特约服务站进行前大灯校准。

When the new vehicle leaves the factory, the headlamp has been calibrated. If the trunk is frequently used to carry heavy objects, the headlamp may need to be re-calibrated. Please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for headlamp calibration.

常见问题解答

FAQ

为什么有时前大灯玻面会出现“起雾”现象？

Why does the headlamp glass surface fog sometimes?

一般情况下，所观察到的前大灯内雾气是由于灯体材料中的水分蒸发遇到温度较低的情况时凝结而成，这是正常的物理现象，雾气在每次形成后最终都是会消散的。

In general, the fog in the headlamp is formed by condensation when the moisture in the lamp body material evaporates and encounters a low temperature. This is a normal physical phenomenon, and the fog will finally dissipate after each formation.

消除雾气的方法如下：在行车过程中，点亮近光灯一段时间后，前大灯前方照射有效面积内的雾气便能够消散。

The method to eliminate fog is as follows: During driving, after the low beam is turned on for a period of time, the fog in the effective area irradiated in front of the headlamp can be dissipated.



- 前大灯打开时，大灯表面温度非常高，请勿直接接触灯具表面，以免烫伤。
- When the headlamp is turned on, the surface temperature of the headlamp is very high. Do not directly touch the surface of the lamp to avoid scalding.
- 为避免损坏车灯，请勿使用侵害性磨料或化学溶剂对车灯进行清洗。
- To avoid damaging the lamp, do not use invasive abrasives or chemical solvents to clean the lamp.
- 请勿在车灯灯罩干燥时擦拭或使用尖锐物品清洁灯罩。
- Do not wipe the lampshade or clean it with sharp objects when it is dry.



1. 开启雨刮维修模式后，拉起雨刮臂，按压雨刮片释放按钮。

1. After the wiper maintenance mode is activated, pull up the wiper arm and press the wiper blade release button.

雨刮的维护与养护

Maintenance of wiper

雨刮维修模式

Wiper maintenance mode

启动开关置于“OFF”档时，向上拨动一下雨刮控制手柄，前雨刮会停在接近最大高度的位置，便于保养维修雨刮片。将启动开关重新置于“ON”档时，前雨刮自动归位。

When the Start switch is turned to "OFF" position, pull the wiper control handle upwards, and the front wiper will stop at a position close to the maximum height, which is convenient for maintenance and repair of the wiper blade. When the Start switch is turned to "ON" position again, the front wiper will automatically return to its original position.

前雨刮片更换

Front wiper blade replacement



2. 将雨刮片沿着刮杆开口方向抽出，卸下雨刮片。

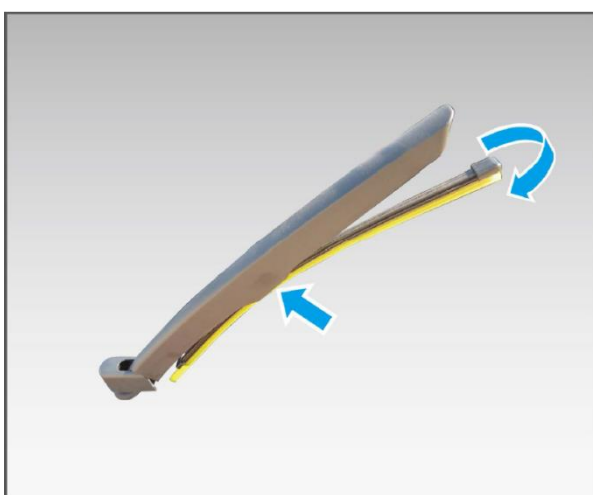
2. Pull out the wiper blade along the opening direction of the wiper rod and remove the wiper blade.

3. 换上新的雨刮片，按照相反的顺序操作，确保雨刮片正确安装到位。

3. Replace the wiper blade with a new one, and operate in the reverse order to ensure that the wiper blade is correctly installed in place.

后雨刮片更换

Replace rear wiper blade



检查后雨刮片是否磨损或断裂。

Check whether the wiper blades are worn or broken.

如需更换后雨刮片，请按照以下步骤操作：

To replace the rear wiper blade, please follow the steps below:

1. 将后雨刮片从后风窗上拉开。

1. Pull the rear wiper blade from the rear windshield.

2. 从后雨刮臂上拔出后雨刮片。

2. Pull out the rear wiper blade from the rear wiper arm.

3. 插入新的雨刮片，将其推入到位。

3. Insert a new wiper blade and push it in place.

4. 将后雨刮臂折回到后挡风玻璃上。

4. Fold the rear wiper arm back to the rear windshield.



警告



Warning

在对雨量传感器区域进行检查、清洁或者对雨刮进行更换维修时，请关闭自动雨刮功能，避免对人体造成伤害。

When checking, cleaning or replacing the wiper in the rain sensor area, please turn off the automatic wiper function to avoid injury to human body.



注意



Attention

请勿在雨刮臂被拉起时打开发动机舱盖，否则会损坏发动机舱盖和雨刮臂。

Do not open the engine hood when the wiper arm is pulled up; otherwise, the engine hood and the wiper arm will be damaged.

更换保险丝

Replace the fuse

保险丝盒位置

Positions of fuse boxes

发动机舱保险丝盒

Engine compartment fuse box



发动机舱保险丝盒位于发动机舱右上部。拆开保险丝盒左右两侧卡扣，打开盒盖即可查看保险丝。

The engine compartment fuse box is located in the upper right part of the engine compartment.

Remove the clips on the left and right sides of the fuse box, and open the box cover to check the fuse.

室内保险丝盒

Interior fuse box

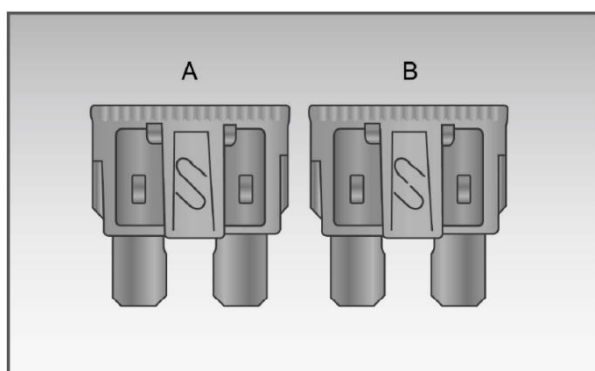


室内保险丝盒位于仪表台左下角，拆除盖板即可查看保险丝。

The interior fuse box is located in the lower left corner of the dashboard. Remove the cover plate to check the fuse.

检查保险丝

Check the fuse



A: 正常

A: Normal

B: 保险丝熔断

B: Fuse blown

保险丝通过防止车辆电器设备过载，来保护车辆电器设备。熔断的保险丝表明它所保护的电路发生故障并停止工作。如果怀疑保险丝有问题，可以用保险丝拉出器将其取出并查看是否熔断。

The fuse protects the vehicle electrical equipment by preventing the vehicle electrical equipment from overloading. A blown fuse indicates that the circuit it protects is faulty and stops working.

If the fuse is suspected to be faulty, remove it with a fuse puller and check whether it is blown.

更换保险丝

Replace the fuse



发动机舱保险丝盒内有保险丝拉出器，用拉出器把保险丝从保险丝盒内笔直拉出。如果保险丝没有熔断，则一定有其它原因导致了故障发生，

请尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse box. Pull the fuse straight out of the fuse box with the puller. If the fuse is not blown, there must be other causes causing the fault. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

查找保险丝中已熔断的金属丝，如果保险丝熔断，应使用安培值相同或较低的备用保险丝来更换。

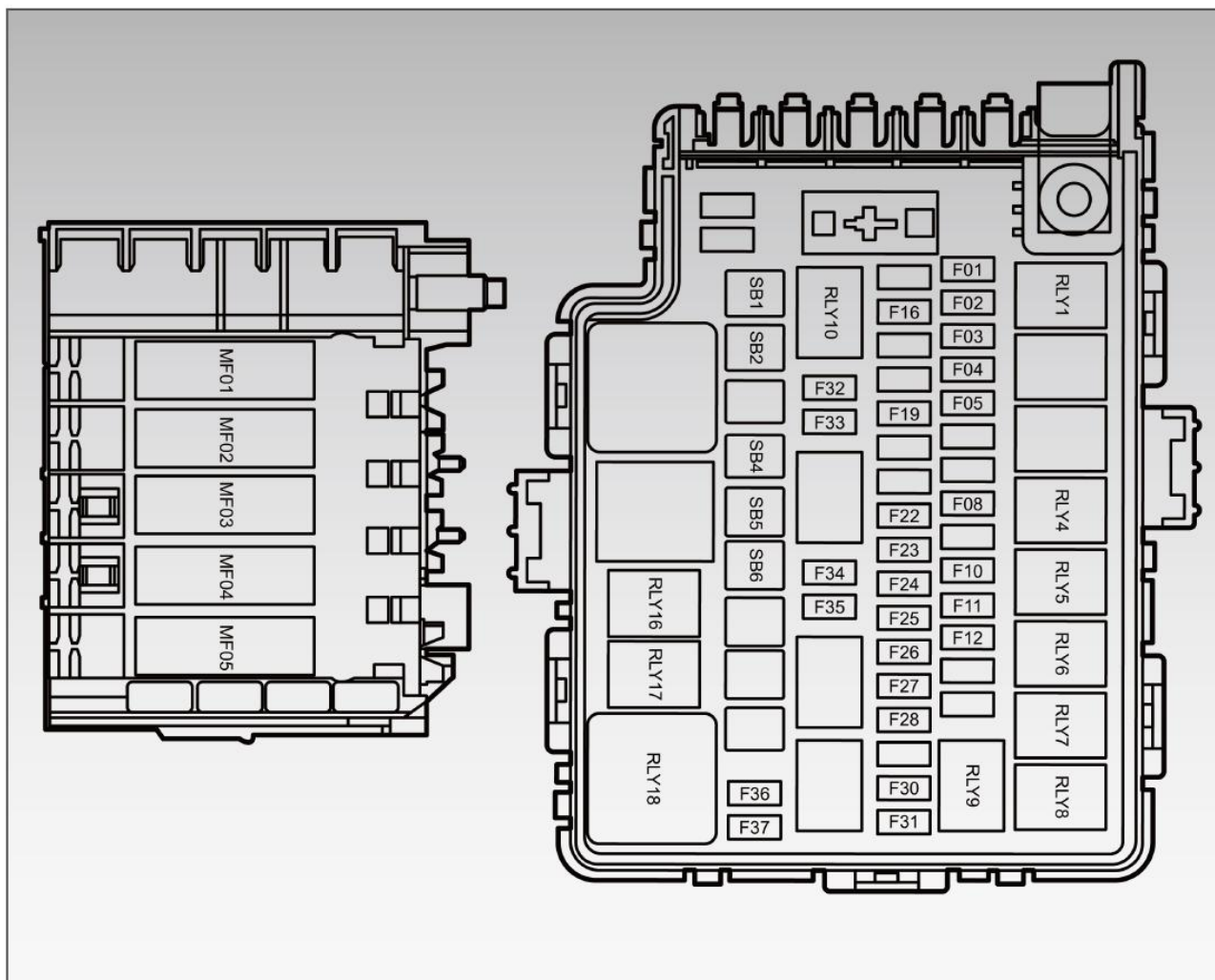
Find the blown metal wire in the fuse. If the fuse is blown, replace it with a spare fuse with the same or lower amperage.

如果额定值相同的替代保险丝在短时间内又熔断，则表明车辆可能存在严重的电器方面故障，请尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

If the replacement fuse with the same rating is blown again in a short time, it indicates that the vehicle may have a serious electrical fault. Please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

发动机舱保险丝盒布置

Engine compartment fuse box layout



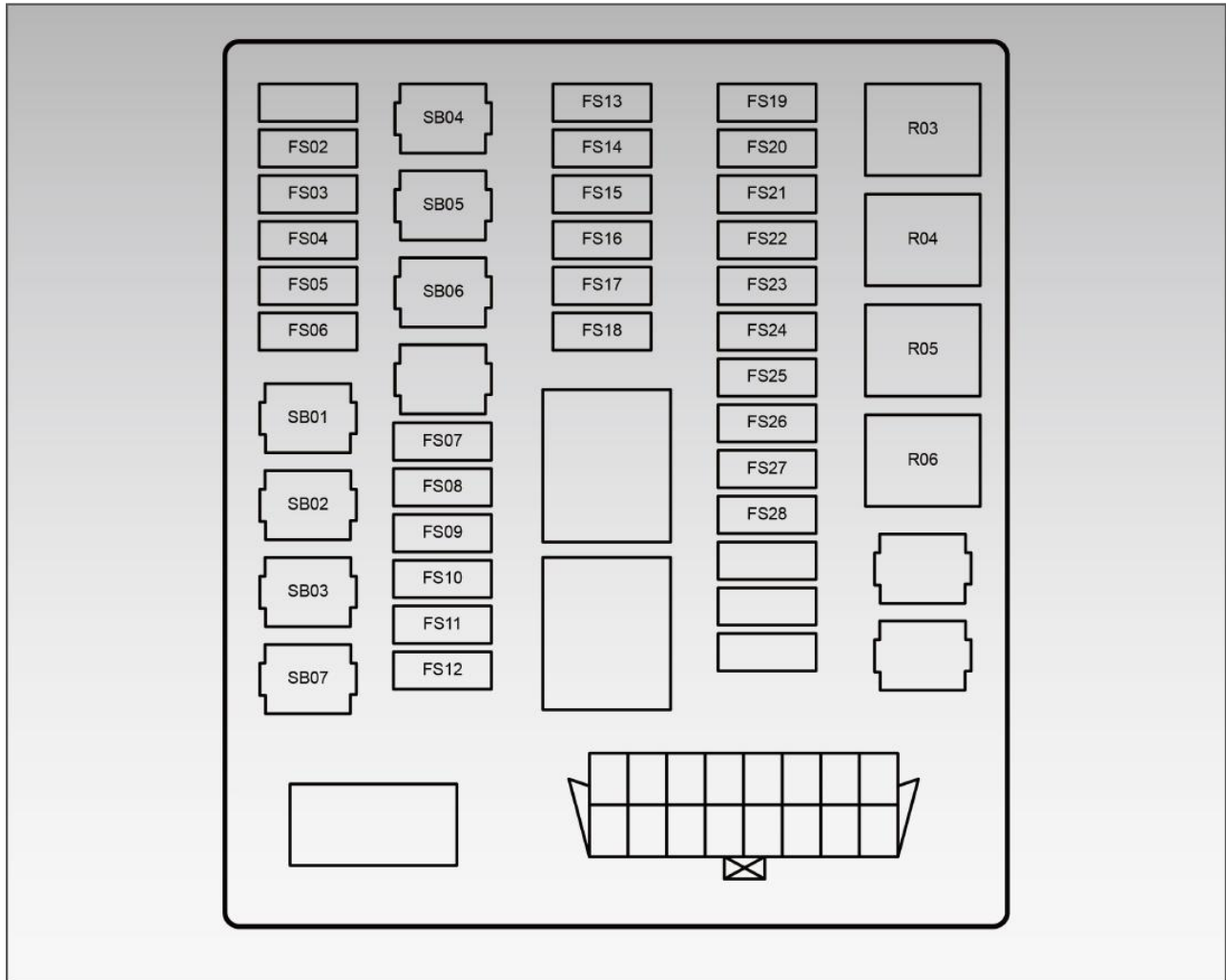
编号 No.	名称 Description	额定电流（安培） Rated current (A)	说明 Description
F01	油泵继电器保险丝 Fuel pump relay fuse	5A	-
F02	点火线圈保险丝 Ignition coil fuse	15A	-
F03	电喷执行器保险丝 Electronic fuel injection actuator fuse	15A	-
F04	电喷传感器 /DMTL保险丝 Electronic fuel injection sensor/DMTL fuse	15A	-
F05	增压水泵保险丝 Booster water pump fuse	15A	-
F08	燃油泵保险丝	15A	-

编号 No.	名称 Description	额定电流（安培） Rated current (A)	说明 Description
	Fuel pump fuse		
F10	EHB保险丝 EHB fuse	5A	-
F11	EMS&VLC IGN保险丝 EMS&VLC IGN fuse	10A	-
F12	HCU/ 鼓风机 /PDU保险丝 HCU/blower/PDU fuse	5A	-
F16	ECU B+ 保险丝 EPB B+ fuse	10A	-
F19	AGS保险丝 AGS fuse	5A	-
F22	继电器线圈保险丝 Relay coil fuse	5A	-
F23	雨刮间歇档保险丝 Wiper INT fuse	20A	-
F24	电机控制器保险丝 Motor controller fuse	10A	-
F25	HCU保险丝 HCU fuse	15A	-
F26	喇叭保险丝 Horn fuse	15A	-
F27	倒车灯保险丝 Reversing lamp fuse	10A	-
F28	M/C继电器保险丝 M/C relay fuse	20A	-
F30	压缩机保险丝 Compressor fuse	10A	-
F31	电池包 /CPD保险丝 Battery pack/CPD fuse	15A	-
F32	左近光灯保险丝 Left low beam fuse	7.5A	-
F33	右近光灯保险丝 Right low beam fuse	7.5A	-
F34	左远光灯保险丝 Left high beam fuse	7.5A	-
F35	右远光灯保险丝 Right high beam fuse	7.5A	-

编号 No.	名称 Description	额定电流（安培） Rated current (A)	说明 Description
F36	驱动冷却水泵保险丝 Drive cooling water pump fuse	15A	-
F37	BMS水泵保险丝 BMS water pump fuse	15A	-
SB1	UB_VR BAT+ 保险丝 UB_VR BAT+ fuse	60A	-
SB2	前鼓风机保险丝 Front blower fuse	40A	-
SB4	右电子卡钳保险丝 Right electronic caliper fuse	25A	-
SB5	左电子卡钳保险丝 Left electronic caliper fuse	25A	-
SB6	UBB BAT+ 保险丝 UBB BAT+ fuse	60A	-

室内保险丝盒布置

Interior Fuse Box Layout



编号 No.	名称 Description	额定电流（安培） Rated current (A)	说明 Description
FS02	T-BOX保险丝 T-BOX fuse	10A	-
FS03	无线充电保险丝 Wireless charging fuse	10A	-
FS04	诊断保险丝 Diagnosis fuse	10A	-
FS05	室外灯保险丝 Exterior lamp fuse	20A	-
FS06	组合仪表保险丝 Fuse of combination instrument	10A	-
FS07	室内顶灯保险丝 Interior roof-mounted lamp fuse	10A	-

编号 No.	名称 Description	额定电流（安培） Rated current (A)	说明 Description
FS08	天窗保险丝 Sunroof fuse	20A	-
FS09	座椅加热保险丝 Seat heater fuse	20A	-
FS10	音响主机保险丝 Audio host fuse	15A	-
FS11	空调控制器保险丝 A/C controller fuse	10A	-
FS12	前洗涤保险丝 Front washer fuse	10A	-
FS13	安全气囊保险丝 Airbag fuse	10A	-
FS14	空调控制器保险丝 A/C controller fuse	7.5A	-
FS15	组合仪表保险丝 Fuse of combination instrument	7.5A	-
FS16	发动机舱ICN1保险丝 Engine compartment ICN1 fuse	15A	-
FS17	顶棚ICN2保险丝 Roof ICN2 fuse	7.5A	-
FS18	仪表ICN2保险丝 Instrument ICN2 fuse	7.5A	-
FS19	背光灯保险丝 Backlight fuse	5A	-
FS20	右前左后位置灯保险丝 Right front left rear position lamp fuse	5A	-
FS21	左前右后位置灯保险丝 Front left/rear position lamp fuse	5A	-
FS22	VSP保险丝 VSP fuse	5A	-
FS23	12V电源保险丝 12V power fuse	15A	-
FS24	USB电源保险丝 USB power fuse	10A	-
FS25	仪表ACC保险丝 Instrument ACC fuse	7.5A	-

编号 No.	名称 Description	额定电流（安培） Rated current (A)	说明 Description
FS26	鼓风机信号反馈保险丝 Blower signal feedback fuse	5A	-
FS27	全景环视保险丝 Panoramic view fuse	5A	-
FS28	空调控制器保险丝 A/C controller fuse	7.5A	-
SB01	点火开关保险丝 Ignition switch fuse	30A	-
SB02	门锁保险丝 Door lock fuse	20A	-
SB03	左门控模块保险丝 Left door control module fuse	30A	-
SB04	右门控模块保险丝 Right door control module fuse	30A	-
SB05	电动座椅保险丝 Power seat fuse	25A	-
SB06	后除霜保险丝 Rear defroster fuse	25A	-
SB07	前后雨刮保险丝 Front and rear wiper fuse	20A	-

车辆牵引

Vehicle Towing

前部牵引点

Front towing point



后部牵引点

Rear towing point



如果车辆需要牵引，应联系专业车辆牵引服务部门。请勿仅用绳索或铁链来牵引车辆。

If the vehicle needs to be towed, please contact the professional vehicle towing service department. Do not tow the vehicle only with ropes or iron chains.

牵引方法

Traction method

平板式装置

Flatbed truck

可以将车辆装在卡车上，这是运送车辆的最佳方法。

Vehicles can be loaded on trucks, which is the best way to transport vehicles.

抬轮式装置

Wheel lifting device

牵引车用两根支臂插入车辆的前轮底部，将车轮托离地面，后轮仍然着地，这是牵引车辆可行的方法。

The tractor inserts two supporting arms into the bottom of the front wheels of the vehicle to lift the wheels off the ground, and the rear wheels are still on the ground. This is a feasible method to tow the vehicle.

牵引注意事项

Precautions for traction

采用抬轮式牵引时，牵引里程最好不要超过50公里，速度应保持在30km/h以下。

When wheel-lifting traction is adopted, the traction mileage should not exceed 50 km, and the speed should be kept below 30 km/h.

如果车身装有前扰流板，在牵引之前应先将其卸下，以免受损坏。请勿从保险杠处提起或牵引车辆，这会造成严重的损坏。安装牵引缆绳时，应特别注意，不要让钢索损伤车身。

If the body is equipped with a front spoiler, remove it before towing to avoid damage. Do not lift or tow the vehicle from the bumper, as this will cause serious damage. When installing the towing cable, pay special attention not to damage the vehicle body by the cable.

采用全轮着地式牵引，必须使用经合理设计并附有牵引杠的装置。将启动开关置于ACC档以解除方向盘的锁定状态，并将换挡杆挂入N档。

If all-wheel landing traction is adopted, a device that is reasonably designed and attached with a towing bar must be used. Turn the Start switch to ACC position to unlock the steering wheel, and turn the gearshift lever to N position.

如果无法换挡或无法启动车辆，只能采用前轮离地式拖运。

If it is impossible to shift gears or start the vehicle, only the front wheels can be towed off the ground.

跨接启动

Jump Start

如果因12V低压蓄电池电量不足导致车辆不能启动，可使用跨接电缆借助其他车辆上的12V低压蓄电池进行启动。跨接有危险，操作需谨慎。

If the vehicle cannot be started due to insufficient 12V low-voltage battery, jumper cables can be used to start the vehicle with the help of the 12V low-voltage battery on other vehicles. Jumpering is dangerous and should be operated with caution.

操作步骤

Operation steps

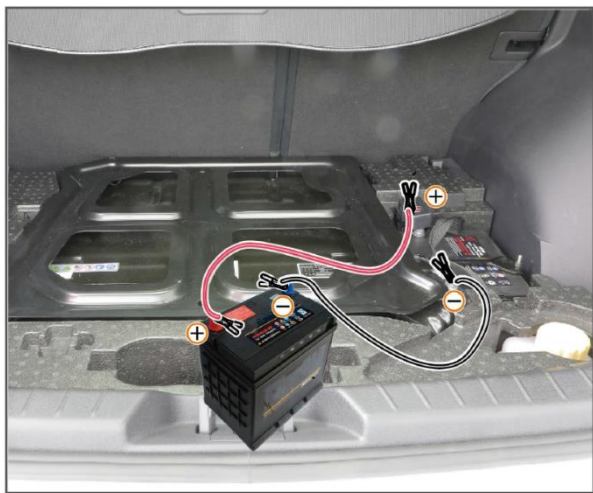
1. 打开行李箱。
1. Open the trunk.
2. 关闭所有的电气附件，档位切换至N档，向上拉起EPB开关。
2. Turn off all electrical accessories, switch to N position, and pull up the EPB switch.
3. 将跨接电缆正极卡夹连接至本车12V低压蓄电池的正极(+)端子。
3. Connect the positive clamp of the jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the 12V low-voltage battery of the vehicle.

4. 将正极电缆另一端的卡夹连接至救援车辆蓄电池的正极 (+) 端子。

4. Connect the clip at the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) terminal of the battery of the rescue vehicle.

5. 将负极电缆卡夹连接至救援车辆蓄电池的负极 (-) 端子。

5. Connect the negative cable clamp to the negative (-) terminal of the battery of the rescue vehicle.



6. 将跨接电缆的负极卡夹连接至本车12V低压蓄电池的负极 (-) 端子。

6. Connect the negative clip of the jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the 12V low-voltage battery of the vehicle.

7. 启动救援车辆并保持约5分钟，以便对本车12V低压蓄电池充电。

7. Start the rescue vehicle and hold it for about 5 minutes to charge the 12V low-voltage battery of the vehicle.

8. 保持救援车辆的转速并启动本车发动机。

8. Maintain the speed of the rescue vehicle and start the engine of the vehicle.

9. 本车运转后，请按与连接时完全相反的顺序拆下跨接电缆，并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站检修车辆。

9. After the vehicle is running, please remove the jumper cable in an order completely reverse to the connection, and contact Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for vehicle maintenance as soon as possible.



警告



Warning

用其它车辆上接出的跨接电缆跨接启动时，必须按照使用说明书进行正确的操作。不正确的操作步骤可能会导致火灾、爆炸或损坏车辆。

When jumper starting with jumper cables connected from other vehicles, correct operation must be carried out according to the operation manual. Incorrect operation steps may cause fire, explosion or damage to the vehicle.

发动机过热

Engine Overheating

车辆行驶一段时间后，水温表指示应稳定在中间刻度位置。如果水温指示指向红色标记，冷却液温度高警告灯点亮，发动机舱盖下冒出蒸汽，应立即关闭发动机，将车辆熄火。

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the coolant thermometer indication shall be stable at the middle scale position. If the coolant temperature indicator points to the red mark, the high coolant temperature warning lamp will illuminate, and steam will come out under the engine hood. In this case, immediately shut down the engine and shut down the vehicle.

应对措施

Countermeasures

1. 将车辆安全地开到路边，挂N档，向上拉起驻车制动开关。关闭所有的电器开关，打开危险警告灯。

1. Drive the vehicle safely to the roadside, engage the N gear, and pull up the parking brake switch. Turn off all electrical switches and turn on the hazard warning lamp.

2. 在发动机稳定运转的状态下，打开发动机舱盖，使发动机舱通风，确认散热器风扇是否旋转。如果风扇不转，应立即熄火，并尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

2. With the engine running stably, open the engine hood to ventilate the engine compartment and confirm whether the radiator fan rotates. If the fan does not rotate, shut down the engine immediately and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

3. 待冷却液温度降到正常的温度后，关闭启动开关。

3. After the coolant temperature drops to the normal temperature, turn off the start switch.

4. 检查储液罐中的冷却液液位。如果储液罐空了，一定要等发动机冷却后再打开储液罐盖。否则，加注口可能会喷出热蒸汽或沸腾水造成烫伤。

4. Check the coolant level in the reservoir. If the fluid reservoir is empty, be sure to wait until the engine cools down before opening the fluid reservoir cover. Otherwise, the filler may eject hot steam or boiling water, causing burns.

5. 必要时向储液罐内添加冷却液。在发动机温度高的状态下立即加入冷却液可能会使气缸盖或气缸体裂开，因此，在发动机运转时，应缓慢地加入冷却液。添加冷却液操作要求专业性较强，建议联系东风风行特约服务站。

5. Add coolant to the fluid reservoir if necessary. Adding coolant immediately when the engine temperature is high may cause cracking of the cylinder head or cylinder block. Therefore, coolant should be added slowly when the engine is running. The operation of adding coolant requires a high degree of professionalism. It is recommended to contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

6. 检查散热器软管是否有冷却液渗漏。若液位下降，则应添加冷却液至上限（MAX）标

记，然后安装并拧紧储液罐盖。

6. Check the radiator hose for coolant leakage. If the coolant level drops, add coolant to the MAX mark, and then install and tighten the reservoir cover.



如果蒸汽正在外泄，请勿打开发动机舱盖。接触从过热的发动机处冒出的蒸汽及喷雾会造成严重烫伤。务必等发动机和散热器冷却之后，再打开发动机舱盖。

Do not open the engine hood if steam is leaking. Contact with steam and spray from an overheated engine can cause severe burns. Be sure to wait until the engine and radiator cool down before opening the engine hood.

动力电池

Power battery



动力电池在行李箱处，打开后背门后掀开盖板即可看到。

The power battery is in the trunk. Open the trunk lid and open the cover plate to see it.

动力电池电缆

Power battery cable



车辆装备有连接到动力其他高电压组件的橙色电缆。

The vehicle is equipped with orange cables connected to other high-voltage components of the powertrain.

否则可能会引起电击造成人员重伤甚至危及生命。

- Do not touch or touch the orange cable or power battery electrode; otherwise, it may cause electric shock, resulting in serious injury or even life threat.
- 请勿试图拆装高压电系统部件或断开其中一根电缆，确保仅由东风风行特约服务站对高压电系统进行保养或维修。
- Do not attempt to remove or install any high-voltage system component or disconnect any cable. Make sure that the high-voltage system is maintained or repaired only by Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

⚠ 危险

⚠ Danger

- 请勿触摸或接触橙色电缆或动力电池电极，



- 请勿私自拆卸、拆解动力电池，否则由此导致的环境污染或安全事故，单位或个人将承担相应责任。
- Do not disassemble or disassemble the power battery without permission. Otherwise, the unit or individual will bear the corresponding responsibility for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused thereby.

如果车辆发生碰撞

Vehicle Collision

1. 注意触电危险

1. Beware of electric shock

如果重度碰撞损坏了车辆的高压电系统，可能会因高压部件或缆线暴露耐触电。如果出现这种情况，切勿触摸任何高压电系统或其橙色缆线。

If the high voltage system of the vehicle is damaged by a severe collision, the high voltage components or cables may be exposed to electric shock. If this occurs, do not touch any high voltage system or its orange cable.

2. 避免接触到动力电池电解液

2. Avoid contact with power battery electrolyte

动力电池含有易燃电解液，可能会因重度碰撞引起泄漏。避免皮肤或眼睛接触具有腐蚀性的电解液，如果不慎接触，请用大量清水冲洗相应皮肤部位或眼睛至少5分钟，并立即就医。

The power battery contains flammable electrolyte, which may cause leakage due to severe collision. Avoid skin or eye contact with corrosive electrolyte. In case of accidental contact, rinse the corresponding skin or eye with plenty of water for at least 5 minutes and seek medical attention immediately.



在动力电池包箱体表面、底部、水管等位置有液体出现时，切勿触摸！

Do not touch the surface, bottom, water pipe and other positions of the power battery pack case where

liquid appears!

3. 使用灭电气火灾的灭火器

3. Use fire extinguishers to extinguish electrical fires

图片 Picture	名称 Description	要求 Requirement
	灭火器 Fire extinguisher	Type ABC

4. 发生火灾时，需使用大量水进行灭火，请勿试图用小量水（如花园使用的水管）扑灭电气火灾。

4. In the event of a fire, use a large amount of water to extinguish the fire. Do not try to extinguish an electrical fire with a small amount of water (such as the water pipe used in the garden).

5. 车辆在事故中如有损坏，请立即到东风风行特约服务站进行维修。

5. If the vehicle is damaged in an accident, please go to a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for maintenance immediately.

高压电系统的紧急切断系统

Emergency cut-off system for high-voltage electrical systems

如果车辆发生碰撞，根据碰撞严重程度，紧急切断系统可能会激活。当此系统激活时，高压电系统自动切断，且车辆不能再靠自身动力行驶，如需高压系统恢复正常工作，请咨询东风风行特约服务站。

In the event of a vehicle collision, depending on the severity of the collision, the slam-shut system may be activated. When the system is activated, the high-voltage system will be automatically cut off and the vehicle cannot run on its own power. If the high-voltage system needs to resume normal operation, please consult a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

当车辆报废时

When the vehicle is scrapped

动力电池是锂离子蓄电池，对车辆进行报废处理时，请咨询东风风行特约服务站。

The power battery is a lithium-ion battery. Please consult a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station when scrapping the vehicle.

车辆使用建议

Suggestions on Vehicle Use

1. 如果长时间停放车辆，动力电池电量会因放电而逐渐变低。长时间处于电量低的状态将会缩短动力电池寿命。为了维持动力电池电量，请至少每三个月驾驶车辆30分钟以上。如果动力电池电量完全耗尽且不能启动混合动力系统，请联系东风风行特约服务站。由此情况导致的动力电池故障及损坏，将无法进行质保。

1. If the vehicle is parked for a long time, the power battery level will gradually decrease due to discharge. The service life of the power battery will be shortened if the power battery is in a low state for a long time. To maintain the power battery, please drive the vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least every three months. If the power battery is completely depleted and the hybrid power system cannot be started, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station. The power battery fault and damage caused by this situation will not be guaranteed.

2. 长期在高温 ($> 45^{\circ}\text{C}$) 或者低温 ($< -30^{\circ}\text{C}$) 环境下，会影响动力电池寿命及车辆行驶。夏季将车辆停在阴凉处和冬季将车辆停到室内车库中，可以最小化此影响。动力电池温度低于 -30°C 或高于 55°C 时，车辆将无法启动，请将车辆停在安全地点静置一会，待动力电池温度下降后再使用。

2. Long-term exposure to high temperature ($> 45^{\circ}\text{C}$) or low temperature ($< -30^{\circ}\text{C}$) will affect the service life of power battery and vehicle driving. This effect can be minimized by parking the vehicle in the shade in summer and in an indoor garage in winter. When the power battery temperature is lower than -30°C or higher than 55°C , the vehicle cannot be started. Please park the vehicle in a safe place for a while, and then use it after the power battery temperature drops.

3. 请勿让动力电池过度放电。若组合仪表电量指示将进入红色警戒格时，动力电池电量已不足，如果电量接近于零，则无法启动电力系统。

3. Do not over-discharge the power battery. If the power indicator of the combination instrument will enter the red warning bar, the power battery is insufficient. If the power is close to zero, the power system cannot be started.

4. 车辆使用时，应尽量避免反复急加速和急减速。

4. Avoid repeated rapid acceleration and deceleration during driving;

混合动力车辆特有的声音和振动

Sound and vibration specific to hybrid vehicles

混合动力系统启动或停止时，可能会听到混合动力电池的工作声音。

When the hybrid system is started or stopped, the working sound of the hybrid power battery may be heard.

混合动力系统启动或停止时，混合动力电池继电器会发出工作的声音，如急促或轻柔的叮当声。

When the hybrid system starts or stops, the hybrid power battery relay will make a working sound, such as a sharp or gentle jingle sound.

动力电池冷却系统说明

Description of Power Battery Cooling System

动力电池具备液冷冷却系统，当车辆发生碰撞或其他故障时，若发现动力电池底部或连接动力电池的水管出现液体时，应联系东风风行特约服务站进行维修。

The power battery is equipped with a liquid cooling system. In case of collision or other faults, if liquid is found at the bottom of the power battery or in the water pipe connected to the power battery, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for maintenance.

动力电池冷却后运行

Operation of power battery after cooling

车辆熄火后，为了延长动力电池的使用寿命，如动力电池温度较高，车辆会保持高压并使用空调给动力电池冷却，空调压缩机和电子扇会持续运转一段时间。

After the vehicle is shut down, in order to prolong the service life of the power battery, if the temperature of the power battery is high, the vehicle will maintain high voltage and use the A/C to cool the power battery, and the A/C compressor and electronic fan will continue to run for a period of time.

车辆停放时的电量保持

Power retention when the vehicle is parked

车辆长时间停放可能会造成动力电池亏电。在低温环境下用车后动力电池的温度会上升，但停放后动力电池的温度会降低，导致放电能力大幅下降，影响车辆启动甚至无法启动车辆。如在低温环境下用车后需停放车辆或长时间停放车辆，请将驾驶模式切换为SPORT模式，开启空调暖风后触发发动机启动给动力电池充电，待发动机自行停机后可关闭车辆，确保动力电池有较高的电量。

Long-time parking of the vehicle may cause power loss of the power battery. The temperature of the power battery will rise after the vehicle is used in a low-temperature environment, but the temperature of the power battery will drop after parking, resulting in a significant decrease in the discharge capacity, affecting the start of the vehicle or even the failure to start the vehicle. If the vehicle needs to be parked or parked for a long time after being used in a low-temperature environment, please switch the driving mode to SPORT mode, start the A/C heater and trigger the engine to start charging the power battery. After the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be shut down to ensure that the power battery has a high power.

长期停放车辆

Vehicle parked for a long time

如果需要长期停放车辆，应做好下列措施。适当的措施可以防止车况恶化，并易于重新启动车辆。建议将车辆停放在室内。

If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time, the following measures shall be taken. Appropriate measures can prevent deterioration of vehicle

conditions and make it easy to restart the vehicle. It is recommended to park the vehicle indoors.

1. 添加燃油，更换发动机机油及滤清器。
1. Add fuel and change engine oil and filter.
2. 清扫车辆内部，确保地毯、地席等完全干燥。
2. Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that the carpet and other trimmings are completely dry.
3. 向上拉起驻车制动开关。将换挡杆挂入R档，用障碍物挡住后轮。
3. Pull up the parking brake switch. Shift the gearshift lever to R position and block the rear wheels with obstacles.
4. 如果车辆需要停放较长的时间，应使用千斤顶支撑架将车身撑起，以使轮胎离开地面。
4. If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time, use a jack support frame to support the vehicle body so that the tires are off the ground.
5. 断开12V低压蓄电池负极接线。
5. Disconnect the negative cable of 12V low-voltage battery.
6. 将雨刮器用毛巾或布片垫起，使其不与前风窗玻璃接触。
6. Pad the wiper with a towel or cloth so that it does not contact the front windshield.
7. 为减少粘黏，应在所有车门及行李箱密封处喷上硅酮润滑剂，并且在车门及行李箱密封条相接触的油漆表面涂上车身蜡。
7. In order to reduce sticking, silicone lubricant shall be sprayed on all doors and trunk seals, and body wax shall be applied on the paint surface where the doors and trunk seals contact.
8. 使用由棉布之类的“多孔材料”制成的透气覆盖物覆盖车身。塑料布之类的无孔材料会积聚水汽，损坏车身表面漆。
8. Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of porous material such as cotton cloth. Non-porous materials such as plastic cloth will accumulate water vapor and damage the body surface paint.

9. 如有可能应定期启动车辆片刻使冷却风扇运转两次。

9. If possible, start the vehicle regularly for a moment to run the cooling fan twice.



注意



Attention

如果车辆停放一年或更长时间，车辆可能无法启动或操纵性变差，此时应尽快联系东风风行特约服务站。

If the vehicle has been parked for one year or more, it may not be able to start or its maneuverability may become poor. In this case, please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

车辆未启动时12V低压蓄电池电量低

12V low-voltage battery low when the vehicle is not started

车辆未启动且较长时间处于低压状态（显示屏点亮）时，车辆有部分系统正处于耗电状态，如12V低压蓄电池电量过低整车各系统将无法正常工作 and 启动车辆。当车辆处于低压状态且组合仪表被点亮后，电量较低时组合仪表会有电量低提示，此时请及时启动车辆，车辆启动后会自动给12V低压蓄电池充电。

When the vehicle is not started and in the low voltage state for a long time (the display screen is on), some systems of the vehicle are in the power consumption state. If the 12V low-voltage battery is too low, all systems of the vehicle will not work normally and the vehicle will not be started. When the vehicle is in low voltage state and the combination instrument is on, the combination instrument will give a prompt of low battery when the battery is low. At this time, please start the vehicle in time, and the 12V low-voltage battery will be automatically charged after the vehicle is started.

车辆信息	270	发动机参数	275
Vehicle Information	270	Engine Parameters	276
车辆识别信息	270	驱动电机参数	277
Vehicle identification information	270	Parameters of Drive Motor	277
车辆出厂铭牌	271	底盘主要总成	277
Vehicle's Factory Nameplate	271	Chassis main assembly	277
发动机号码	272	制动器的合理使用范围	278
Engine No.	272	Reasonable service range of brake	278
动力电池标签	272	车辆动力性	279
Power battery label	272	Vehicle power performance	279
安全警告标牌	272	车辆通过性	279
Safety warning sign	272	Vehicle trafficability	279
12V低压蓄电池警告标牌	272	油液列表	279
12V low-voltage battery warning sign ...	272	Fluid List	279
散热器警告标牌	273	综合油耗	280
Radiator warning lable	273	Comprehensive fuel consumption	280
动力电池警告标牌	273	车轮定位参数	280
Power battery warning sign	273	Parameters of Wheel Alignment	280
微波窗口	273	多连杆式独立后悬挂	280
Microwave window	273	Multi-link independent rear suspension .	280
车辆主要尺寸参数	275	轮胎规格	281
Main Dimensional Parameters of Vehicle	275	Tire Specification	281
整车质量参数	275	排放要求	281
Vehicle Weight Parameters	275	Emission Requirements	281
		规定排放维修技术要求	281

Maintenance technical requirements for
specified emission 281

排放控制关键零部件信息 284

**Information of key components and parts
for emission control 284**

车辆信息

Vehicle Information

车辆识别信息

Vehicle identification information

您的车辆上有数个车辆识别代码（VIN码），分别位于不同的位置。

There are several vehicle identification numbers (VINs) on your vehicle, which are located in different positions.



1. 打刻在副驾驶座椅下方车身横梁上，掀开地毯缺口可以看到。

1. It is engraved on the body crossmember under the front passenger seat and can be seen by lifting the carpet gap.



2. 粘贴在前挡风玻璃右侧。

2. It is pasted on the right side of the front windshield.

3. 粘贴在仪表台本体总成。

3. It is pasted on the dashboard body assembly.

4. 粘贴在储物箱内侧。

4. It is pasted on the inside of the storage compartment.

5. 粘贴在右B柱内板表面。

5. It is pasted on the surface of the right B-pillar inner panel.

6. 粘贴在右前围A柱内板表面。

6. It is pasted on the surface of A-pillar inner panel of right front wall.

7. 粘贴在发动机舱盖内板表面。

7. It is pasted on the surface of the inner panel of the engine hood.

8. 粘贴在后背门内板表面。

8. It is pasted on the surface of the trunk lid inner panel.

9. 粘贴在双电机混合动力总成表面。

9. It is pasted on the surface of the dual-motor hybrid powertrain.

使用OBD II 扫描工具，通过OBD诊断口读取车辆VIN码信息。

Use the OBD II scan tool to read the vehicle VIN information through the OBD diagnostic interface.



注意



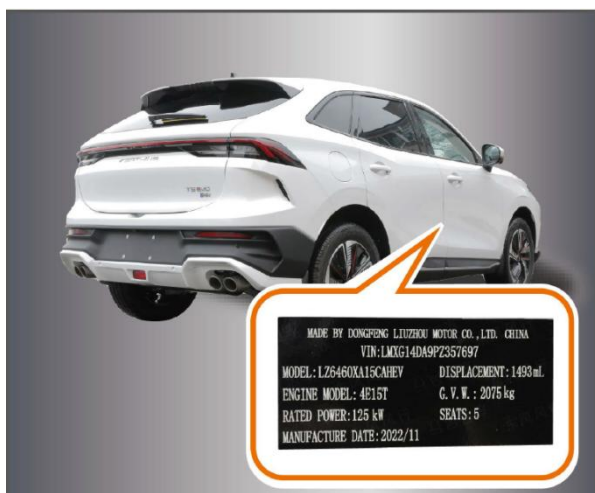
Attention

以上车辆识别代号读取工具均未随车配备，如需购买，请联系东风风行特约服务站。

The above VIN reading tools are not equipped with the vehicle. If you need to purchase them, please contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

车辆出厂铭牌

Vehicle's Factory Nameplate



车辆标牌位于右侧中柱下方，包含下列信息：

The vehicle sign is located under the right center pillar and contains the following information:

1. 生产国家

1. Country of manufacture

2. 生产厂家

2. Manufacturer

3. 品牌名称

3. Brand Name

4. 车辆识别代号

4. Vehicle identification number

5. 整车型号

5. Vehicle model

6. 发动机型号

6. Engine model

7. 发动机最大净功率

7. Maximum net power of engine

8. 制造年月

8. Manufacture date

9. 发动机排量

9. Engine displacement

10. 最大允许总质量

10. Maximum authorized total mass

11. 乘坐人数

11. Seating capacity

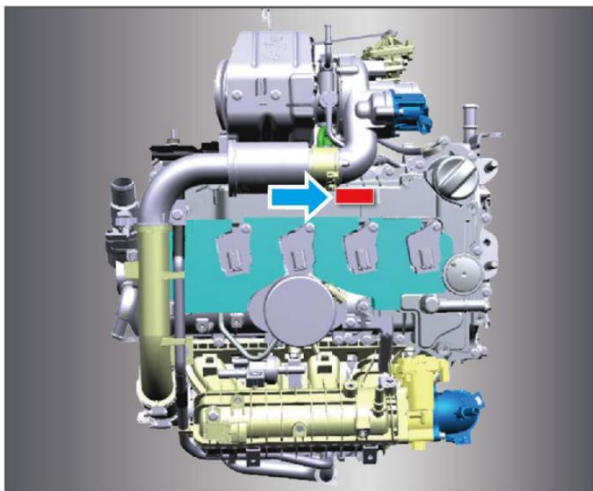
车辆规格 Vehicle Specifications

发动机号码

Engine No.

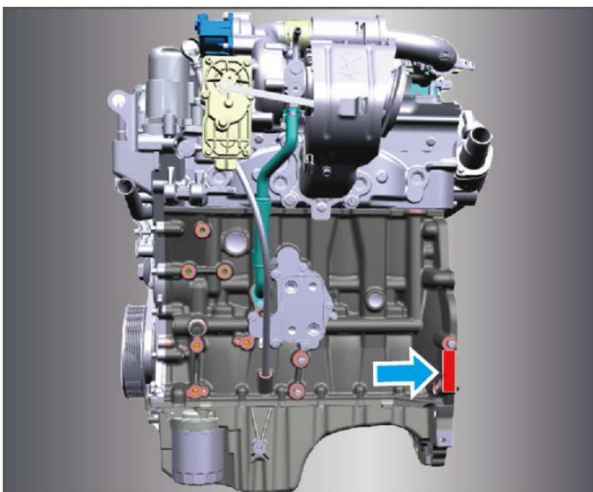
4E15T发动机号码标签位置

Position of 4E15T engine number label



4E15T发动机号码打刻位置

Engraving position of 4E15T engine number



动力电池标签

Power battery label



动力电池标签位于动力电池右侧。

The power battery label is located on the right side of the power battery.

安全警告标牌

Safety warning sign

12V低压蓄电池警告标牌

12V low-voltage battery warning sign



蓄电池警告标牌贴在蓄电池表面。提醒您蓄电池应远离热源和明火，充电及使用时应保持通风，以防事故发生。

The battery warning mark is stuck to the surface of the battery. Remind you to keep the battery away from heat sources and open flames, and keep it ventilated during charging and use to prevent accidents.

散热器警告标牌

Radiator warning lable



散热器警告标牌与空调制冷剂标牌贴在发动机舱盖内侧上方。更换冷却液时，应使用东风风行的冷却液，不同品牌冷却液不能混合使用。请勿触摸散热器，冷却风扇有可能会随时转动。

The radiator warning label and the A/C refrigerant label are pasted above the inner side of the engine hood. When replacing the coolant, use the coolant specified by Dongfeng Forthing. Do not mix coolants of different brands. Do not touch the radiator, as the cooling fan may rotate at any time.

动力电池警告标牌

Power battery warning sign



动力电池警告标牌位于动力电池左侧。请严格遵守标牌上的警告信息。

The power battery warning sign is located on the left side of the power battery. Please strictly observe the warning information on the label.

微波窗口

Microwave window



车辆的微波窗口位于前挡风玻璃水平居中、垂直靠上的位置。

The microwave window of the vehicle is located in the horizontal center and vertically upward position of the front windshield.

车辆电子标识宜安装在微波窗口居中靠左的位置。该标识中存储了车辆的相关信息，不能被内后视镜安装支架、传感器支架等遮挡。

The electronic identification of the vehicle should be installed in the middle and left of the microwave window. This sign stores relevant information of the vehicle and cannot be blocked by the interior rearview mirror mounting bracket, sensor bracket, etc.



- 请保持前挡风玻璃洁净、干燥。
- Please keep the front windshield clean and dry.
- 请勿在微波窗口位置贴膜或粘贴金属材料，确保车辆电子标识的规范安装和数据的有效读取。
- Do not paste film or metal materials on the microwave window to ensure the standard installation of vehicle electronic identification and effective reading of data.
- 请勿遮挡、挤压或拆卸车辆电子标识！该标识如有损坏，请及时到标识发行机构重新申请。
- Do not cover, squeeze or remove the vehicle

车辆规格

Vehicle Specifications

electronic identification! If the sign is damaged,

please apply again at the sign issuing agency in time.

车辆主要尺寸参数

Main Dimensional Parameters of Vehicle

项目 Project	单位 Unit	豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
车长 Vehicle length	mm	4595
车宽 Vehicle width	mm	1865
车高 Vehicle height	mm	1680
前轮轮距 Front wheel tread	mm	1590
后轮轮距 Rear wheel tread	mm	1595
轴距 Wheelbase	mm	2715

整车质量参数

Vehicle Weight Parameters

项目 Project	单位 Unit	豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
乘坐人数 Seating capacity	人 Person	5
整备质量 Kerb mass	kg	1700
前轴整备质量 Front axle kerb mass	kg	980
后轴整备质量 Rear axle kerb mass	kg	720
最大质量 Maximum mass	kg	2075
前轴最大质量 Maximum mass of front axle	kg	1193
后轴最大质量 Maximum mass of rear axle	kg	982

发动机参数

Engine Parameters

项目 Project	单位 Unit	豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
发动机型号 Engine model	-	4E15T
型式 Type	-	直列四缸、16气门、涡轮增压 In-line four-cylinder, 16-valve, turbocharged
排量 Displacement	L	1.493
缸径 × 冲程 Cylinder diameter × stroke	mm	φ75×84.48
压缩比 Compression ratio	-	9.7:1
额定功率 Rated power	kW/rpm	140/5500
最大净功率 Maximum net power	kW/rpm	125/5500
最大净扭矩 Maximum net torque	Nm/rpm	280/1500-3600
点火次序 Ignition sequence	-	1-3-4-2
整体排放水平 Overall emission level	-	国VI b China VI b

驱动电机参数

Parameters of Drive Motor

项目 Project	单位 Unit	参数 Parameters
驱电动机型号 Model of drive motor	-	TZ220XYL
型式 Type	-	永磁同步电机 Permanent magnet synchronous motor
额定功率 Rated power	kW	55
峰值功率 Peak power	kW	130
额定转速 Rated speed	rpm	5000
最高转速 Maximum rotation speed	rpm	16000
额定扭矩 Rated torque	N.m	105
最大扭矩 Maximum torque	N.m	300
主减速比 - Main reduction ratio -	-	11.734
防护等级 Protection grade	-	IP67

底盘主要总成

Chassis main assembly

项目 Project		豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
悬架系统 Suspension system	前悬架 Front suspension	麦弗逊式独立悬架 MacPherson independent suspension
	后悬架 Rear suspension	多连杆式独立后悬架 Multi-link independent rear suspension
转向系统 Steering system	助力形式 Power-assisted mode	电动转向 Electric power steering
制动系统 Brake system	结构型式 Structural type	"X" 型双管路液压布置型式 "X" type double-line hydraulic layout type
	前制动器	盘式制动器

	Front brake	Disc brake
	后制动器 Rear brake	盘式制动器 Disc brake
	制动踏板行程 Brake pedal travel	1mm ~ 12mm

制动器的合理使用范围

Reasonable service range of brake

项目 Project		豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
前轮制动盘 Front wheel brake disc	设定值 (mm) Setting value (mm)	25
	使用极限 (mm) Service limit (mm)	23
前轮摩擦片 Front wheel friction plate	设定值 (mm) Setting value (mm)	10.5
	使用极限 (mm) Service limit (mm)	2
后轮制动盘 Rear wheel brake disc	设定值 (mm) Setting value (mm)	14
	使用极限 (mm) Service limit (mm)	12
后轮摩擦片 Rear wheel friction plate	设定值 (mm) Setting value (mm)	10.2
	使用极限 (mm) Service limit (mm)	2
驻车蹄片 Parking brake shoe	设定值 (mm) Setting value (mm)	/
	使用极限 (mm) Service limit (mm)	/

车辆动力性

Vehicle power performance

项目 Project	单位 Unit	参数 Parameters
最高车速 Maximum speed	Km/h	180
最大爬坡度 Maximum gradeability	-	20%

车辆通过性

Vehicle trafficability

项目 Project	单位 Unit	豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
接近角（空载） Approach angle (no load)	°	17
离去角（空载） Departure angle (no load)	°	26
最小转弯直径 Minimum turning diameter	m	11.8
最小离地间隙（满载） Minimum ground clearance (full load)	mm	150±16

油液列表

Fluid List

项目 Project	规格 Specification	加注量 Filling amount
汽油 Gasoline	RON92# 或以上 RON92# or above	55L
发动机机油 (4E15T) Engine oil (4E15T)	SP 5W-30	4L
发动机冷却液 (4E15T) Engine coolant (4E15T)	OAT-35	8.5L
混动总成润滑油 Hybrid assembly lubricating oil	出光EHSF-1/EHSF-2 Idemitsu EHSF-1/EHSF-2	3.7L
制动液 Brake fluid	DOT4	0.6 ~ 0.8L
风窗玻璃洗涤液	NFC-60	2L

Windshield washing fluid		
空调制冷剂 A/C refrigerant	R134a	500g

综合油耗

Comprehensive fuel consumption

项目 Project	单位 Unit	LZ6460XA15CAHEV
油耗 Fuel consumption	L/100km	4.7

※ 注意：该燃油消耗量数值根据GB/T 19233-2020《轻型汽车燃料消耗量试验方法》测定。

※ Note: The fuel consumption value is determined according to GB/T 19233-2020 Measurement Methods of Fuel Consumption for Light-duty Vehicles.

车轮定位参数

Parameters of Wheel Alignment

多连杆式独立后悬挂

Multi-link independent rear suspension

项目 Project		参数 Parameters
车轮前束角 Wheel toe-in	前轮 Front wheel	$0.08^{\circ} \pm 0.04^{\circ}$
	后轮 Rear wheel	$0.08^{\circ} \pm 0.08^{\circ}$
车轮外倾角 Wheel camber	前轮 Front wheel	$-0.3^{\circ} \pm 0.5^{\circ}$
	后轮 Rear wheel	$-0.86^{\circ} \pm 0.5^{\circ}$
主销后倾角 Kingpin caster angle	前轮 Front wheel	$6.01^{\circ} \pm 0.5^{\circ}$

项目 Project		参数 Parameters
主销内倾角 Kingpin inclination angle	前轮 Front wheel	13.29° ±0.5°

轮胎规格

Tire Specification

项目 Project	豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive
轮胎规格 Tire Specification	235/55 R19
轮辋规格 Rim specification	19×7J
轮胎气压 Tire pressure	230kPa

排放要求

Emission Requirements

规定排放维修技术要求

Maintenance technical requirements for specified emission

发动机ECU

Engine ECU

发动机ECU的操作须遵守如下要求：

The operation of engine ECU must comply with the following requirements:

1. 连接ECU与线束接插器，务必要确保系统电源处于断开状态，即点火开关处于断电关闭状态。请勿在点火开关打开的状态下插拔ECU，避免在通电状态下，用身体的任何部位接触ECU管脚或ECU线束的裸露部分。

1. When connecting the ECU and the harness connector, make sure that the system power supply is disconnected, i.e. the ignition switch is powered off. Do not plug or unplug the ECU when the ignition switch is turned on, so as to avoid contacting ECU pins or exposed parts of ECU harness with any part of the body when the power is on.

2. 静电引发的火花可能导致ECU损坏，应尽量避免ECU与静电接触。

2. Sparks caused by static electricity may cause damage to the ECU. Try to avoid contact between the ECU and static electricity.

3. 请勿使ECU遭受超过16V以上的电压。

3. Do not subject the ECU to a voltage higher than 16V.

4. 得反向连接ECU电压正负极。

4. Connect the positive and negative poles of ECU voltage in the reverse direction.

5. 请勿使用外观有物理损伤的ECU。ECU的外壳表面不得出现任何划伤或涂敷任何未经认可的材料，不允许将油漆或其他绝缘类液体喷涂在ECU管脚上。

5. Do not use ECUs with physically damaged appearance. The surface of ECU housing shall not be scratched or coated with any unapproved material. It is not allowed to spray paint or other insulating liquid on ECU pins.

6. 请勿使用任何工具或物品敲击ECU的任何部位。

6. Do not use any tool or object to knock any part of the ECU.

7. 应避免电磁场及射频干扰源接近ECU。

7. Do not let an electromagnetic field or RF interferer to be close to the ECU.

8. 应确保ECU在安装时有效固定，并有效

接地。

8. It shall be ensured that the ECU is effectively fixed and effectively grounded during installation.

9. 避免在用电焊维修车辆时烧坏ECU，如有可能需把ECU断电拆除，远离电焊。

9. Do not burn out the ECU when repairing the vehicle by electrical welding. If necessary, power off the ECU, remove it, and put it far away from the electrical welding position.

10. 蓄电池用外接电源跨接时，电极要保持牢固接触。

10. When the battery is bridged with an external power supply, the electrodes shall be kept in firm contact.

氧传感器

Oxygen sensor

当发动机工作，空燃比变大时，排气中氧含量的浓度将会升高，此时，氧传感器的输出电压接近0V，空燃比变小时，排气中氧含量的浓度降低，传感器的输出电压接近1V。发动机氧传感器无需进行任何调整和修理。

When the engine works and the air-fuel ratio increases, the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust will increase. At this time, the output voltage of the oxygen sensor is close to 0V, the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust will decrease and the output voltage of the sensor is close to 1V. The engine oxygen sensor does not require any adjustment or repair.

出现以下情况时，氧传感器将会失效：

The oxygen sensor will fail in the following conditions:

1. 氧传感器电器接插件损坏。
1. The electrical connector of oxygen sensor is damaged.
2. 氧传感器内部锆元件碎裂，断裂损坏。
2. The Zr element inside the oxygen sensor breaks, ruptures or fails.
3. 氧传感器加热元件电路断路或短路。
3. The heating element circuit of the oxygen sensor is disconnected or short-circuited.
4. 氧传感器感应元件电路断路或短路。
4. The sensing element circuit of the oxygen sensor is disconnected or short-circuited.
5. 氧传感器热敏电阻对外壳短路。
5. The oxygen sensor thermistor is short-circuited to housing.
6. 氧传感器加热元件电路对外壳短路。
6. The heating element circuit of the oxygen sensor is short-circuited to housing.

使用氧传感器注意事项：

Precautions for using the oxygen sensor

1. 禁止氧传感器跌落或与坚硬物体表面撞击，避免损坏陶瓷元件或加热元件。
1. Do not drop the oxygen sensor or impact it with the surface of a hard object to avoid damaging the ceramic element or heating element.

2. 在装上氧传感器后，避免由于给发动机施加大的敲击力而损坏氧传感器。

2. After the oxygen sensor is installed, avoid damaging the oxygen sensor due to large knocking force applied to the engine.

3. 避免由于积碳、发动机机油、铅等有机物污染传感器，导致传感器输出信号不准确。

3. Prevent the sensor from being polluted by carbon deposits, engine oil, lead and other organic matters, resulting in inaccurate sensor output signal.

排放控制关键零部件信息

Information of key components and parts for emission control

车辆型式核准证书信息，排放控制关键零部件生产厂家、型号及有效使用寿命等信息。

Vehicle type approval certificate information, manufacturer, model and effective service life of key components for emission control, etc.

项目 Project	豪华 / 尊享型 Luxury/Exclusive		
排放控制关键零部件名称 Description of key components and parts for emission control	发动机ECU Engine ECU	氧传感器 Oxygen sensor	催化器总成 Catalytic converter assembly
排放控制关键零部件型号 Model of key components and parts for emission control	MG1US008	LSU/LSF4	SX5G-1205070
生产厂家 Manufacturer	联合汽车电子有限公司 United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.		浙江邦得利环保科技有限公司 Zhejiang Bangdeli Environmental Protection Technology Co., Ltd.
有效使用寿命 Effective service life	五年或十万公里 Five years or 100,000 km		